

R. S. MCGREGOR

---

OUTLINE OF  
HINDI GRAMMAR  
WITH EXERCISES



OXFORD

Oxford University Press, Walton Street, Oxford OX2 6DP

Oxford New York Toronto

Delhi Bombay Calcutta Madras Karachi

Petaling Jaya Singapore Hong Kong Tokyo

Nairobi Durban Salalah Cape Town

Melbourne Auckland

and associated companies in

Beirut Berlin Ibadan Nicosia

Oxford is a trade mark of Oxford University Press

Published in the United States  
by Oxford University Press, New York

© Oxford University Press 1972

Reprinted (with corrections) 1986  
Reprinted 1987

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior permission of Oxford University Press

This book is sold subject to the condition that it shall not, by way of trade or otherwise, be lent, re-sold, hired out or otherwise circulated without the publisher's prior consent in any form of binding or cover other than that in which it is published and without a similar condition including this condition being imposed on the subsequent purchaser

Printed in Great Britain by  
Billings & Son, Worcester

## PREFACE

THIS book is a revision of an *Outline of Hindi Grammar* which has been used in mimeographed form by my students over the past ten years. Many of these students, at London and Cambridge Universities, have been taking degrees in which the study of Hindi and its literature forms a major part; they required an adequate but concise presentation of the essential grammar of the language, with exercises, which would bring them as quickly as possible to the point where they could start the reading of modern Hindi prose texts with profit. Others had already worked through Hindi courses in which the chief emphasis was on conversation, but had done relatively little work with the written language. For different reasons both these types of student have found the *Outline* useful, and I have been asked for copies of it by a number of teachers at other universities. It therefore seemed desirable to publish it, keeping as close to the original, tried version as possible, and adding whatever extra material appeared necessary.

The book presupposes no knowledge of the language. The student should read through the introductory section before proceeding to the Lessons and Exercises. He should try to master the script as soon as possible. The transliteration used will allow him to work through the Lessons without being impeded by script problems, however, and will probably assist him throughout the entire period he is using the book. It is assumed that he will usually have the help of a Hindi speaker with pronunciation and the provision of phrase and sentence drills and suitable conversation material as he progresses; he should spend several hours a week if possible working with a native speaker or in the language laboratory. (It should be possible to use the book without access to a native speaker, but an effort should be made to obtain suitable tapes or records as quickly as possible.) On completing the Lessons and Exercises, the student should work through the Supplement and, as a revision of this, attempt the Reading Passages. With a good grasp of all this material he should be able to start reading modern Hindi literary prose very largely on his own, and to write the language correctly at a simple level. The Composition Passages have been added as a further exercise in control of grammar and idiom. The student could well delay attempting these until he has read two or three short stories on his own and begun to consolidate his grasp of grammar and command of simple spoken language.

It will be clear from the above that my aim has been to include most of what the student needs to know in the early stages of his study of Hindi and of what he needs to have accessible for easy reference while consolidating his grasp of the language. I hope that I shall be found to have struck a fair balance between inclusions and omissions of material. It should hardly be necessary to add that the material has been organized with the requirements of students in mind, and that its presentation inevitably differs, in varying degrees in different sections of the book, from that which might be expected in a reference grammar. I have added as an appendix a short list of some recent works on aspects of Hindi grammar which the student interested in grammatical questions may eventually wish to consult, and in which he will find references to other books and articles on the subject.

#### Acknowledgements

It is a pleasure to acknowledge my indebtedness in preparing this book to Dr. Yamuna Kachru, who commented on the text and examples of the original *Outline* in 1961 and on a draft of the third section of the Introduction in 1969, and wrote draft translations of four of the Composition Passages; to Dr. Lakshmisagar Varshneya, Professor of Hindi in the University of Allahabad, who commented on the Exercises, Key, Composition Passages, and many examples of the revised version in 1967; to Mr. A. S. Kalsi and Mr. J. N. Tiwari for comments on many points during the final revision; to Shri Upendranath Ashk for permission to use extracts from his novel *Barī barī āhkhēh*; to my students; and finally to my wife, for her great but unseen contribution to the production of the book.

### PREFACE TO SECOND EDITION

COLLECTED Hindi-English and English-Hindi Vocabularies have been added for the student's convenience, and some corrections made. Otherwise the first edition is reprinted unchanged.

June 1976

R. S. M.

## CONTENTS

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS . . . . .	ix
INTRODUCTION	
Modern standard Hindi, and its loanwords . . . . .	xi
The sound system of Hindi . . . . .	xii
The script . . . . .	xxii
Script exercise . . . . .	xxxii
LESSONS AND EXERCISES	
I Nouns; postpositions; simple sentences; order of words . . . . .	i
II Adjectives; demonstrative pronouns; the postposition का <i>kā</i> . . . . .	7
III Personal pronouns; honorific usages . . . . .	11
IV Verb structure and concord; present, past, and future tense forms of होना <i>honā</i> ; regular conjugational patterns; verbal concord with composite subjects; the post- position से <i>se</i> ; some expressions of motion . . . . .	16
V Regular conjugational patterns (contd.); the emphatic enclitics ही <i>hī</i> , भी <i>bhī</i> . . . . .	23
VI Further uses of से <i>se</i> , में <i>meṁ</i> , पर <i>par</i> ; the postposition तक <i>tak</i> ; some adverbial expressions; compound post- positions; some expressions of wishing . . . . .	30
VII Absolutes; imperative forms . . . . .	38
VIII The indefinite pronouns and adjectives कुछ <i>kuch</i> and कोई <i>koī</i> ; the interrogative pronouns and adjectives कौन <i>kaun</i> and क्या <i>kyā</i> ; the relative pronoun and adjective जो <i>jo</i> . . . . .	43
IX The postposition को <i>ko</i> ; the postposition के पास <i>ke pās</i> ; the postposition का <i>kā</i> (contd.) . . . . .	49
X The possessive adjective अपना <i>apnā</i> ; verbal expressions with करना <i>karnā</i> and होना <i>honā</i> . . . . .	55
XI Numerals; time . . . . .	61
XII Constructions with the postposition ने <i>ne</i> . . . . .	71
XIII The form चाहिए <i>cāhiē</i> ; the verbs पढ़ना <i>paṛnā</i> and होना <i>honā</i> expressive of obligation . . . . .	77

XIV	Relative-correlative constructions . . . . .	82
XV	The verbs सकना <i>sahnā</i> ; चुकना <i>cuknā</i> ; मिमना <i>milnā</i> . . . . .	88
XVI	Comparison; comparative and other expressions with ज्यादा <i>ṛjyādā</i> and अधिक <i>adhik</i> ; reports of statements and questions; indirect commands . . . . .	92
XVII	Compound verbs . . . . .	99
XVIII	Groups of verbs of related stem; causative verbs . . . . .	107
XIX	Passive forms; conjunct verbs not involving करना <i>karnā</i> , होना <i>honā</i> ; some uses of infinitives . . . . .	116
XX	Subordinate conjunctions and clauses . . . . .	123
XXI	Uses of the subjunctive; the verb लगना <i>lagnā</i> ; the verbs देना <i>denā</i> and पाना <i>pānā</i> with preceding oblique case infinitives . . . . .	130
XXII	Composite verbal expressions with रहना <i>rahnā</i> , जाना <i>jānā</i> (contd.), करना <i>karnā</i> , चाहना <i>cāhnā</i> . . . . .	136
XXIII	Reduplicative expressions; the conjunction तो <i>to</i> ; the emphatic enclitic ही <i>hī</i> (contd.) . . . . .	139
XXIV	The adjectival particle सा <i>sā</i> ; inverted compound post- positions . . . . .	147
XXV	Reflexive pronouns; the formative element -वाला <i>-vālā</i> . . . . .	151
XXVI	Non-finite participial constructions . . . . .	156
SUPPLEMENT		
I	Further aspects of the grammar of nominal forms . . . . .	163
II	Further aspects of the grammar of verbs . . . . .	170
III	Further aspects of the grammar of postpositions, adverbs, and conjunctions . . . . .	178
IV	<i>Sandhi</i> . . . . .	185
V	Formation of words . . . . .	190
VI	Compounding of words . . . . .	199
READING PASSAGES . . . . .		202
COMPOSITION PASSAGES . . . . .		209
KEY TO EXERCISES . . . . .		216
FAIR VERSIONS OF COMPOSITION PASSAGES . . . . .		227
APPENDIX . . . . .		230
Vocabularies . . . . .		231

## ABBREVIATIONS

adj.	adjective	m.	masculine
adv.	adverb	n.	note
Ar.	Arabic	obl.	oblique
conj.	conjunction	P.	Persian
dir.	direct	pl.	plural
f.	feminine	pron.	pronoun
H.	Hindi	sg.	singular
interj.	interjection	Skt.	Sanskrit
intr.	intransitive	trans.	transitive

Square brackets are used to indicate a few common alternative forms or spellings given in vocabularies.

## INTRODUCTION

### MODERN STANDARD HINDI, AND ITS LOANWORDS

WRITTEN Hindi, based on the *Kharī Bolī* dialect spoken to the north and east of Delhi, is relatively standardized over the whole of the Hindi language area (the area within which Hindi is the predominant language of administration and public life). One may thus speak of a written 'modern standard Hindi'. Furthermore, educated persons throughout the Hindi language area are able to conform to a large degree in their speech to the norm of *Kharī Bolī* grammatical usage and pronunciation, which can to this extent be called a spoken 'modern standard Hindi' usage and pronunciation. However, considerable variations can occur, especially if the speakers' native dialects are related only rather distantly to *Kharī Bolī*. This is particularly true of pronunciation, and as a result there cannot really be said to be any one 'standard' pronunciation of the standard language. Uneducated persons outside the *Kharī Bolī* area normally have little knowledge of *Kharī Bolī*. The forms used in this book are all of the *Kharī Bolī* dialect as used by educated persons very largely throughout the Hindi language area, but especially by those brought up in the western part of it.

During the Muslim period many Arabic and Persian loanwords found their way into Hindi dialects, especially into *Kharī Bolī*. Those that denote common objects or ideas are usually fully acclimatized in modern standard Hindi. More formal, literary Arabic and Persian loanwords (corresponding in style roughly to the *higher* range of Latinate vocabulary in English) are usually restricted to that form of Persianized *Kharī Bolī* known as *Urdū*, which is used chiefly in Muslim society or by persons familiar to some extent with that society. Almost no words of the latter kind are used in this book.

In addition to its Persian and Arabic loanwords, modern Hindi has loanwords of Sanskrit origin, either borrowings direct from Sanskrit or new formations on Sanskrit words. The more literary of these are restricted very largely to the written language, but increasing use is being made of simpler loanwords of Sanskrit origin in the spoken language.

Modern Hindi usage does not generally favour the use of Persian and Arabic loanwords in more formal contexts if equivalent words of Hindi origin, or loanwords of Sanskrit origin, are also generally current and can be used instead of them. As a result, Persian and Arabic loanwords for which such equivalents are current are more closely restricted

to informal use than other Persian and Arabic loanwords. Persian and Arabic loanwords whose use is restricted in this way have been marked for the student's convenience with † in the vocabularies and notes, and in some cases in the text of Lessons.<sup>1</sup> Loanwords of Sanskrit origin that are predominantly restricted to the written language or to more formal spoken use are similarly marked with \*.

English loanwords are, of course, also frequent in Hindi, often competing with Sanskrit, Persian and Arabic loanwords, or words of Hindi origin.

### THE SOUND SYSTEM OF HINDI<sup>2</sup>

The following outline description of the sounds of Hindi will assist the student to articulate and to distinguish them. Continuous practice and attention to the pronunciation of a native speaker are essential.

#### 1. Vowels

*a*

A low-mid or mid central unrounded vowel, similar to the first, de-stressed vowel in the English verb *subject*, or to the vowel in English *but*, articulated with the lips somewhat closer together than in southern standard English.

*ā*

A low central unrounded vowel, similar to the first vowel in English *father* (but in southern standard English pronunciation the vowel *ā* is articulated further back in the mouth than is the case with Hindi *ā*).

*i*

A quite high front unrounded vowel, rather like the vowel in English

<sup>1</sup> For instance, the word †*aurat* 'woman', of Arabic origin, which co-exists in Hindi with the common Sanskrit loanword *stri* and belongs characteristically to informal usage. A word such as *imārat* 'building', although also of Arabic origin, has no very commonly used equivalent of Sanskrit or Hindi origin and as a result is not restricted as specifically as †*aurat* to informal use, and so goes unmarked in the vocabulary.

<sup>2</sup> The question of how definitely a given Persian or Arabic loanword is restricted to informal use is of course one of opinion. The mark † has been used fairly sparingly, i.e. only with words about whose restriction to informal use there can be no real question. Some users of Hindi would restrict a greater proportion of Persian and Arabic loanwords to informal use than that indicated in this book.

<sup>3</sup> A number of sounds of relatively rare occurrence are not mentioned in this section. Those which will concern the student particularly are mentioned at suitable places elsewhere.

*sit* in southern standard English pronunciation. (In some pronunciations of English the vowel *i* is articulated rather lower in the mouth than is the case with Hindi *i*.)

Many speakers of Hindi often employ a higher, tenser, somewhat longer pronunciation of this vowel than that indicated here (in which it is less distinct from the following vowel, *ī*).

*ī*

A high front unrounded vowel, similar to the vowel in English *seat* in southern standard English pronunciation. (In some pronunciations of English the vowel *ī* is articulated lower in the mouth and more laxly than is the case with Hindi *ī*.)

*u*

A quite high back rounded vowel, rather like the vowel in English *put* in southern standard English pronunciation, though tending to be slightly higher. (In some pronunciations of English the vowel *u* is articulated distinctly lower in the mouth than is the case with Hindi *u*.)

Many speakers of Hindi often employ a higher, tenser, somewhat longer pronunciation of this vowel than that indicated here (in which it is less distinct from the following vowel, *ū*).

*ū*

A high back rounded vowel, rather like the vowel in English *food* in southern standard English pronunciation, but with slightly less lip rounding than this vowel sometimes receives in that pronunciation. (In some pronunciations of English the vowel *ū* is articulated with much less lip rounding than is the case with Hindi *ū*.)

*e*

A high-mid front unrounded vowel, similar to the first vowel in German *geben* or French *été*. This sound does not occur as a single vowel in most pronunciations of English, but is similar to the first component of the diphthong heard in the southern standard English pronunciation of the word *play*. Most English speakers need to take special care not to pronounce a diphthong for *e*.

*o*

A high-mid back rounded vowel, similar to the vowel in German *Sohn* or French *beau*. This sound does not occur as a single vowel in most

pronunciations of English, but is similar to the first component of the diphthong heard in Scottish or American pronunciations of the word *go*. Most English speakers need to take special care not to pronounce a diphthong for *o*.

### *ai*

The sound represented by the digraph *ai* is frequently a low to low-mid front unrounded vowel, rather like the vowel in English *had* in southern standard English pronunciation, but tending often to be pronounced with a slightly higher point of articulation (as in many other pronunciations of the word *had*). The student is recommended to adopt this monophthongal type of pronunciation, which is fairly normal in the western part of the Hindi language area. Elsewhere a diphthongal pronunciation of the sound is common (Hindi *a* + short *e* usually; sometimes *a* + *i*).

### *au*

The sound represented by the digraph *au* is frequently a low-mid to mid back rounded vowel, somewhat like the vowel in English *nod* in southern standard English pronunciation, but rather longer, and tending usually to be pronounced with a slightly higher point of articulation. The student is recommended to adopt this monophthongal type of pronunciation, which is fairly normal in the western part of the Hindi language area. Elsewhere a diphthongal pronunciation of the sound is common (Hindi *a* + short *o* usually; sometimes *a* + *u*).

### *Vowel nasality*

All vowels may be pronounced with or without nasality. The articulation of a vowel generally does not change when it is nasalized; note particularly that nasalized *ā* does not have the value of French nasalized [*ā*] in *enfant*, which shows low back, not low central, vowels. The point of articulation of *e* and *o*, however, tends to be slightly lowered when these vowels are nasalized.

## 2. Consonants

### (a) The voiceless unaspirated plosives *k*, *t*, *p*; affricate *c*

#### *k*

Velar plosive, similar to unaspirated *k* in English *skin* (but not to *k* in most English speakers' pronunciation of *kin*, *king*, etc., which is aspirated).

#### *t*

Retroflex plosive; the closest English equivalent is the unaspirated *t* in *steam*, *stop*, etc. The tongue tip is retroflexed so that its underside touches the roof of the mouth, usually further back than in the case of English *t* (in which the tip touches the alveolum or ridge behind the teeth). Note that *t* in most English speakers' pronunciation of *team*, *top*, etc., is aspirated, and is not a good model for the articulation of Hindi *t*.

#### *ʈ*

Dental plosive, in which the tongue tip touches the teeth, not the ridge behind the teeth. This articulation of *ʈ* is common in English before a word beginning with a dental fricative, e.g. in the sequence *at the* . . . It is most important that the student should master the pronunciation of *ʈ* and other dental sounds in Hindi and distinguish them from the corresponding retroflexes.

#### *p*

Bilabial plosive, similar to unaspirated *p* in English *spin* (but not to *p* in most English speakers' pronunciation of *pin*, *pat*, etc., which is aspirated).

#### *c*

Pre-palatal affricate; the closest English equivalent is *ch* in *church*, etc., but Hindi *c* has minimum aspiration, and is more tense in articulation than English *ch*. The student will be helped to avoid aspiration by keeping the tongue tip down in the mouth, behind the bottom teeth, and trying to say *ty* rather than *ch*.

### (b) The voiceless aspirated plosives *kh*, *ʈh*, *th*, *ph*; affricate *ch*

These aspirated consonants correspond to the above five unaspirated consonants. Their pronunciation will give no difficulty to most English speakers, except that *ʈh* and *th* must be carefully distinguished. The bilabial plosive *ph* is very frequently replaced by a bilabial fricative (in which the lips are very slightly parted from the beginning of articulation of the sound).

### (c) The voiced unaspirated plosives *g*, *ɖ*, *d*, *b*; affricate *j*

#### *g*

Velar plosive; as English *g* in the word *go*.

*ḍ, ḍ*

Retroflex and dental plosives, distinguished like *ṭ* and *ṭ*, above.

*b*

Bilabial plosive; as English *b*.

*j*

Pre-palatal affricate; similar to English *j*, but with a more tense articulation than that which is often shown by this sound. The student may produce a more Indian *j* by keeping the tongue tip down in the mouth and trying to say *dy* rather than *j*.

(d) *The voiced aspirated plosives gh, ḍh, dh, bh; affricate jh*

These sounds are difficult for non-Indian (and some Indian) learners of Hindi. The difficulty is to keep both plosive and aspiration voiced, (accompanied by vibration of the vocal chords), and at the same time to avoid allowing a vowel to intervene between them, i.e. to avoid saying either *khar* or *gahar* for *ghar*, etc. Constant practice of these sounds is necessary. It may be helpful at first to try repeating the sound-group *hāg-hāg-hāg* as quickly as possible, when *h* will probably coalesce with preceding *g* as voiced rather than voiceless aspiration (similarly with *hāj*, *hāḍ*, etc.).

Voiced aspirates before consonants and at the end of words tend to show reduced aspiration; thus *ghar* has more aspiration than *samajhnā*, *bāgh*.

(e) *The nasals ṇ, ñ, ṇ, n, m*

*ṇ*

Velar nasal; as the final consonant in southern standard English *sing*. Occurs chiefly before velar *k*, *g*, *kh*, *gh*, and glottal *h*.

*ñ*

Pre-palatal nasal; rather like the consonant in French *ignon*. Occurs only before *c*, *ch*, *j*, *jh*, and *ṭ*.

*ṇ*

Retroflex nasal. Occurs before retroflex *ṭ*, *ṭh*, *ḍ*, *ḍh*, and in Sanskrit loanwords (where it is often replaced by dental *n* or, where an effort is made to distinguish it from *n*, by a nasalized retroflex flap *ṇ̐*; for the flap *r* in Hindi see below).

*ṇ*

Dental nasal, distinguished from *ṇ* as *ṭ* from *ṭ*, etc., above.

*m*

Bilabial nasal; as English *m*.

Nasal consonants induce marked nasality in following vowels. There is thus a clear difference between the quality of the first and second vowels of such words as *ānā*, *khānā*, etc.

(f) *The semivowels y, v and the voiced alveolars r, l*

*y*

Palatal semivowel; somewhat like English *y* in the word *yard*, but more laxly articulated and vocalic in quality, especially when non-initial.

*v*

Labio-dental semivowel; upper teeth just touch lower lip, always with loose contact, and lips are unrounded. The effect is very different from that of English *v*, even when contact between teeth and lip is at its firmest (when the sound produced might be termed a fricative rather than a semivowel). Sometimes, especially following consonants, a bilabial rather than a labio-dental sound may be heard.

*r*

Voiced alveolar or post-dental with weak roll, or tap; usually like Scottish rolled *r* except that the roll is not so prolonged. In some pronunciations the tongue tip merely taps the alveolar ridge once.

*l*

Voiced alveolar or post-dental lateral, similar to 'clear' *l* in English *lick* (not *l* in English *kill*, which has a 'dark' or even vocalic quality).

(g) *The sibilants ṣ, ś, s*

*ṣ*

Voiceless pre-palatal fricative; similar to English *sh*, but often more tense in articulation.



§

Voiceless retroflex fricative. Can be practised by placing the tongue in the position to pronounce *ṛ*, then withdrawing it to allow the passage of breath. This sound only occurs in Sanskrit loanwords and is often replaced by *ṣ*.

§

Voiceless alvcolar or post-dental fricative; similar to English *s*.

(h) Other sounds

ṛ

Retroflex flap. The tongue is retroflexed as for pronouncing *ḍ*, but the tip, instead of making firm contact with the roof of the mouth, is flapped quickly forward, touching the roof of the mouth only lightly or not at all, and finishes behind the lower teeth. This sound does not occur initially in words. For nasalized *ṛ* see p. xvi, under *ṛ̃*.

ṛh

Aspirated retroflex flap.

h

Voiced glottal fricative. English *h* is not regularly voiced, and effort will usually be required by the student to make the vocal chords vibrate throughout the articulation of the Hindi sound. The expiration of air which accompanies the voice often gives an effect of breathiness in the pronunciation of a word containing *h*.

*h* is often followed by an unstressed vocalic sound not of full syllabic value, as an echo of a preceding vowel. This tends to happen wherever *h* is otherwise final in a word or precedes a consonant, e.g. in words which may be transcribed phonologically as /kah/, /śahr/, /bahn/, /mahī/, /sihr/, /pahntā/, etc. The prominence of such vocalic sounds varies in the speech of different individuals and is affected by their phonetic environment in words. For many speakers they are noticeably prominent before consonants, whether single consonants or consonant groups, in some cases sufficiently so to be analysed as having full syllabic value; this would produce phonological transcriptions such as /śahar/, /bahar/, /mahāl/, /sihar/, /pahantā/, etc., instead of those given above. The student is recommended to adopt a pronunciation in which they are not given full syllabic value. In the transliteration of Devanāgarī script

forms used in this book the sounds in question in this paragraph are not represented, except in a few cases where they occur with nasality.

*h*, if not followed by a vowel of full syllabic value, exercises a fronting effect on a preceding *a*, which is then pronounced as short [ɛ], i.e. rather like *e* in English *bet*, by very many Hindi speakers, more particularly if it is stressed; e.g. in *rahnā*, *kahtā*, *kah*, *śahr*, etc., much less commonly in *vajah*, *tarah*, etc.

*h* where followed by *u* in a few words exercises a retracting effect on a preceding *a*, which is then pronounced as short [ɔ], i.e. rather like southern standard English *o* in *nod*, but shorter; e.g. in *bahut*, *pahunchā*.<sup>1</sup>

Where *h* is preceded by unstressed *a* and is final, its articulation often weakens. This is so especially in speech of normal to fast tempo. Hence words which for Hindi in general are best transcribed phonologically as /vajah/, /tarah/, etc., might be transcribed on the basis of many utterances as /vaja/, /tara/, etc. A further variant pronunciation of such words is common, however, in which the breathiness of *h* is retained and is audible before the *a*, so that for some pronunciations the above words might be transcribed as /vajha/, /tarha/, etc.<sup>2</sup>

f

Voiceless labio-dental fricative; as English *f*. Occurs in loanwords from Persian, Arabic, and English, and chiefly in the speech of persons with some acquaintance with Urdu or English; but even in the speech of such persons *ph* tends to replace it.

z

Voiced alveolar or post-dental fricative; as English *z*. Occurs in the same circumstances as *f*; tends to be replaced with *j*.

kh

Voiceless velar fricative; as *ch* in Scottish *loch*, German *Bach*. Only in Persian and Arabic loanwords; tends to be replaced with *kh*. Can be practised by placing the tongue in the position to pronounce *k*, then withdrawing it to allow passage of breath.

<sup>1</sup> *h* in transliterated forms indicates nasality of a preceding vowel, as is explained in the following section.

<sup>2</sup> *a* is sometimes lengthened in these cases, giving /vajhā/, /tarhā/, etc. (A similar lengthening is common in variant pronunciations of some numerals, but here *h* is usually lost, see p. 61, n. 1.) The articulation of *h* described in the second part of the above paragraph is also sometimes found in a few words where *h* is not final, notably *bahut* (/bahut/, /bhaut/).

g

Voiced velar or post-velar fricative; similar to *g* in Dutch *negen*. The voiced correlate of *kh*, occurring in the same circumstances; more usually than not it is replaced with *g*. Can be practised in the same way as *kh*, but using *g* as starting-point.

q

Voiceless post-velar plosive, i.e. a *k* made as far back in the mouth as possible. Occurs in the same circumstances as *kh*, *g*; much more usually than not it is replaced with *k*.

### Lengthening of consonants

Lengthened consonants, in which the articulation of a consonant is prolonged, are common, and must always be distinguished from unlengthened consonants; *usse* is pronounced very differently from *use*, *pattā* from *patā*. (Cf. in English similar lengthened *n*, *b*, *k* in *unknown*, *lab-book*, *book-case*.)

### 3. Syllable division, stress, and intonation.

Syllable boundaries in Hindi words fall as follows:

- Between adjacent vowels, e.g. /pā-ī/; /ā-i-e/; /gu-ī/;
- Between vowels and following single consonants, e.g. /ā-uā/; /sa-kā/; /a-pa-ri-cit/;
- Between consonants, e.g. /sak-tā/; /vid-yā/; /hin-dū/; /gad-dī/; /abhi-yās/; /kah-nā/; /niś-cay/; /sans-thā/; /tum-hā-rā/.

In general Hindi words have a more level syllabic stress than English. Certain tendencies to the stressing or de-stressing of syllables operate, however, and some brief general guidance on these may be useful for reference. Syllables may be classified as of one of three grades of weight, as follows<sup>1</sup>:

- (a) Light: syllables ending in a short vowel.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> In this classification I follow a recent detailed analysis of word stress by A. R. Kelkar (see Appendix). The apportionment of syllable types to the grades that is made here and the interpretation of stress placement tendencies in individual words differs from his in some particulars.

<sup>2</sup> a i u.

- (b) Medium: syllables ending in a long vowel,<sup>1</sup> or a short vowel followed by a single consonant (these latter may also rank as light, however, especially when not preceding a consonant).

- (c) Heavy: other syllables.

The tendency for syllables ending in short vowel + single consonant to rank as light is implied by certain variations in stress placement which occur, especially in disyllabic words.

Where one syllable in a word is of greater weight than any other, it bears the main stress. Where more than one syllable is of maximum weight in a word, the last but one bears the main stress, e.g.

/u'cit/ or /'ucit/; /sa'majh/ or /'samajh/; /sa'ṛak/ or /'saṛak/; /ki'dhar/ or /'kidhar/; /'amal/ 'action'; /a'mal/ 'pure'; /'bartan/; /'bandar/; /'baccā/; /'hindī/; /san'dūq/; /pan'jāb/; /inti'zār/; /'muskārāḥ/ or /muskā'rāḥ/.

Inflexional endings, some other final syllables with long vowels, and prefixes sometimes do not influence stress placement<sup>2</sup>; e.g.

/ba'rā/ or /'baṛā/; /ṭa'kā/ or /'ṭakā/; /ni'kalnā/ or /'nikalnā/; /ka'hā/ but /'diyā/; /'liyā/; /pi'tā/ or /'pitā/; /'sansthā/ or /san'sthā/ (*sam* + *sthā*); /'sankat/ or /san'kat/ (*sam* + *kat*); /niś'cay/; /a'mal/ 'pure'.

Words which can show more than one stress placement when pronounced in isolation tend, on the whole, to be stressed on an earlier rather than a later syllable in connected utterances. Some other words also show this tendency, e.g. /pari'cit/ or /'paricit/; /pra'gati/ or /'pragati/. In connected utterances word stress is also influenced by other factors than those discussed above, such as speech tempo, and the style and emphasis of a given utterance.

It is less important that the beginner should try to stress isolated Hindi words in a particular way than that he should acquire good habits of intonation and distribution of stress in complete Hindi sentences. The best way of doing this is by listening to native speakers, or recordings of Hindi, and trying carefully to copy the stresses and intonation which one hears. Note especially the characteristic rising-falling intonation of

<sup>1</sup> ā, ī, ū, e, ai, o, au.

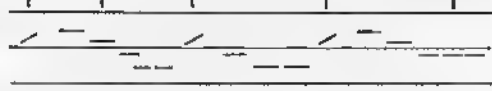
<sup>2</sup> This is especially so of prefixes. Of inflexional endings, perfective verb endings attract stress more strongly than others.

many sentences. Possible intonations for the following sentences, with chief sentence stresses, are:

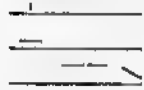
*aurtem apne baccon ko pyār se pālī hai*



*yah tasvīr ilāhābād kī ek bahut acchā nazārā*



*peś kartī hai*



## THE SCRIPT

Hindi is written in the Devanāgarī script as used for Sanskrit, with some minor modifications. The script is syllabic in that vowels are represented differently according as they comprise entire syllables or occur within syllables (i.e. immediately preceded by consonants). The script is written from left to right. The characters of the script are given below in their traditional order, accompanied by roman characters used to transliterate them in this book; these roman characters will be found on the whole to give a close indication of the sound values (phonemic values) which they represent.

### 1. Vowels

Syllabic forms.	Intra-syllabic forms.
अ अ <sup>1</sup>	a
आ आ <sup>1</sup>	ā
इ	i
ई	ī

<sup>1</sup> Alternative forms.

Syllabic forms.	Intra-syllabic forms.
उ	u
ऊ	ū
ऋ	r
ए	e
ऐ	ai
ओ ओ <sup>1</sup>	o
औ ओ <sup>1</sup>	au

<sup>1</sup> Alternative forms.

(a) The character ऋ *r* does not represent a single vocalic sound in Hindi, but is vocalic in terms of the script, having separate syllabic and intra-syllabic forms. It is pronounced [ri], and found only in Sanskrit loanwords.

(b) For the combining of the intra-syllabic vowel forms with preceding consonant characters see below.

### 2. Consonants

	Voiceless unaspirated plosives. <sup>1</sup>	Voiceless aspirated plosives. <sup>1</sup>	Voiced unaspirated plosives. <sup>1</sup>	Voiced aspirated plosives. <sup>1</sup>	Nasals.
Velars	क <i>ka</i>	ख <i>kha</i>	ग <i>ga</i>	घ <i>gha</i>	ङ <i>ṅa</i>
Pre-palatals	च <i>ca</i>	छ <i>cha</i>	ज <i>ja</i>	झ <i>ḥja</i> <sup>2</sup>	ञ <i>ña</i>
Retroflexes	ट <i>ṭa</i>	ठ <i>ṭha</i>	ड <i>ḍa</i>	ढ <i>ḍha</i>	ण <i>ṇa</i> <sup>3</sup>
Dentals	त <i>ta</i>	थ <i>tha</i>	द <i>da</i>	ध <i>dha</i>	न <i>na</i>
Labials	प <i>pa</i>	फ <i>pha</i>	ब <i>ba</i>	भ <i>bha</i>	म <i>ma</i>
Semivowels, etc.	य <i>ya</i>	र <i>ra</i>	ल, ल <sup>2</sup> <i>la</i>	व <i>va</i>	
Sibilants	श <i>śa</i>	ष <i>ṣa</i>	स <i>sa</i>		
Glottal		ह <i>ha</i>			
Flaps		ड़ <i>ṛa</i> <sup>3</sup>	ढ़ <i>ṛha</i> <sup>3</sup>		

<sup>1</sup> The consonants in the second horizontal row are affricates rather than plosives, but their behaviour as a class can be described in the same terms as that of plosives. Later references to plosives in this book apply equally to affricates unless the contrary is stated.

<sup>2</sup> Alternative forms.

<sup>3</sup> These characters are most conveniently placed last in setting out the syllabary, though in terms of dictionary order they follow ङ and ढ, of which they are modifications.

(a) Intra-syllabic vowel forms are combined with preceding consonant characters as follows:

। ी ो ौ follow the consonant character.

ि precedes it.

॒ ॒ ॒ are subscripts.

॑ ॑ ॑ are superscripts.

E.g.

का *kā*; की *kī*; को *ko*; कौ *kau*; कि *ki*;

कु *ku*; कू *kū*; कृ *kṛ*; के *ke*; कै *kai*.

(b) The vowel subscripts ॒ are written below the vertical stroke of a character if it has one running throughout its height, otherwise usually under the centre of the character. Thus बु *bu*; कू *kū*; तु *tu*; सु *su*; फु *phu*; गु *gu*; धू *dhū*, etc.

Note: रु *ru*; रू *rū*.

(c) Vowel superscripts are positioned in the same way as subscripts. Thus खे *khe*; से *se*; ने *ne*; टे *te*, etc.

(d) Note that there is no intra-syllabic form for the vowel *a*. The value of this vowel was taken to be inherent in a consonant character in the writing of Sanskrit, and this convention still obtains for the writing of Hindi (hence the characters are transliterated *ka*, *kha*, etc., not *k*, *kh*, etc., above). However, since *a* has become or tended to become mute finally, and in some phonetic contexts medially also in the modern language, the consonant characters have come to have not only syllabic but also purely consonantal values.

Finally:

अब *ab*; सब *sab*; तालाब *tālāb*; मिलन *milan*; अतुल *atul*; लगन *lagan*; कपट *kapat*, etc.

Medially:

लगना *lagnā*; समझा *samjhā*; मतलब *matlab*, etc.

The transliteration indicates whether a given 'inherent' *a* in a script form represents a normally pronounced vowel or not. Note particularly that where a word is written as three, or four, script syllables, an *a* in the penultimate script syllable is not pronounced in non-poetic style, or is only minimally pronounced,<sup>1</sup> where the final script syllable contains a

<sup>1</sup> Minimal realization of many such *a*'s will often occur, especially in more easterly parts of the Hindi language area.

vowel other than *a*; thus चलना *calnā*; समझा *samjhā*; समझी *samjhī*; समझना *samajhnā*, etc. Where the final script syllable contains *a* this will not be realized in pronunciation; the penultimate *a* will then represent a pronounced vowel, and if the word is of four script syllables the antepenultimate *a* will normally not do so. Thus कमल *kamal*; सर्पत *sarpat*; मतलब *matlab*, etc. These general principles do not apply fully in the case of words containing medial *h* (see p. xviii), nor always in the case of loanwords, compounded and derivative words, and variant grammatical forms of words. Note especially that Sanskrit loanwords such as अपवाद *apavād*, अवकाश *avakāś* often retain medial *a* (though they need not do so), and that a medial *a* is represented in transliterated forms of such loanwords wherever it is frequently pronounced in normal usage.

Component parts of script syllables are best written, at least at first, in the following order: first, those parts beneath the horizontal headstroke, working from left to right; next, any subscripts or superscripts; finally, the headstroke to the entire syllable. On a ruled page headstrokes are written on the ruled lines.

### 3. Conjunct consonants

The device of conjoining consonant characters was used in writing Sanskrit to indicate the pronunciation of consonants without an intervening 'inherent' *a*. Conjunct consonant characters are accordingly very common in Sanskrit loanwords, and are also used commonly (though there is some variation in practice) in writing successive consonants in most Persian and Arabic loanwords, as well as in English loanwords. In words of Hindi origin they are used chiefly to indicate lengthened consonants, and sequences of nasal and plosive consonants.

The commonest conjuncts are listed below in dictionary order.<sup>1</sup>

क *kka*, क्क *kkha*, क्त *kta*, क्म *kma*, क्य *kya*, क्र *kra*, क्ल *kla*,  
क्व *kva*, क्श *kṣa*, क्स *kṣa*, क्य *khyā*, ग्द *gda*, गध *gdha*, ग्न *gna*,  
ग्म *gma*, ग्य *gya*, ग्र *gra*, ग्ल *gla*, ग्व *gva*, घ्न *ghna*, घ्य *ghya*,  
घ्र *ghra*, ङ्क *ṅka*, ङ्क्क *ṅkha*, ङ्ग *ṅga*, ङ्ग *ṅgha*.

च्च *cca*, च्छ *ccha*, च्य *cya*, ज्ज *jja*, ज्ञ *jña*, ज्य *jya*, ज्र *jra*,  
ज्व *jva*, ज्व *jva*, ज्ञ *jña*.

<sup>1</sup> For some, more than one form is current. Variant forms are not given in the table.

टृ *tta*, ठृ *ttha*, टच *tya*, ट्र *tra*, डृ *dda*, डच *dya*, ड्र *dra*, डच *dhya*,  
एट *ṭa*, एठ *ṭha*, एटच *ṭya*, एट्र *ṭra*, एड *ḍa*, एडच *ḍya*, एड्र *ḍra*, एडच *ḍhya*.

त्क *tha*, त्त *tta*, त्व *tva*, तथ *ttha*, ल *ta*, त्प *tpa*, त्म *tma*,  
त्य *tya*, त्र *tra*, त्व *tva*, त्स *tsa*, त्स *tsa*, त्स *tsa*, त्स *tsya*, थ *tha*,  
थ्व *thva*, दृ *dda*, द्ध *ddha*, द्भ *dbha*, द्य *dya*, द्र *dra*, द्व *dva*,  
द्य *dhya*, ध्व *dhva*, न्त *nta*, न्य *ntha*, न्द *nda*, न्द्र *ndra*, न्य *ndha*,  
न्य *ndhya*, न्न *na*, न्म *ma*, न्य *nya*, न्व *nva*, न्त *nta*, न्ह *nha*.

प्ल *pta*, प्न *pna*, प्य *ppa*, प्फ *ppha*, प्य *pya*, प्र *pra*, प्ल *pla*,  
प्स *psa*, फ्र *phra*, ब्र *bja*, ब्त *bta*, ब्द *bda*, ब्य *bdha*, ब्भ *bba*,  
ब्भ *bbha*, ब्य *bya*, ब्र *bra*, भ्य *bhya*, भ्र *bhra*, म्न *mna*,  
म्य *mna*, म्व *mva*, म्म *mbha*, म्म *mma*, म्य *mya*, म्र *mra*,  
म्ल *mla*, म्ह *mha*.

य्य *yya*, ल्क *lka*, ल्द *lda*, ल्प *lpa*, ल्म *lma*, ल्य *lya*, ल्ल *lla*,  
ल्ह *lha*, व्य *vya*, व्र *vra*, व्व *vva*.

श्क *śka*, श्च *śca*, श्य *śya*, श्र *śra*, श्ल *śla*, श्व *śva*, श्क *śka*,  
ष्ट *ṣta*, श्ट्र *ṣtra*, श्ट *ṣtha*, श्ण *ṣṇa*, श्प *ṣpa*, श्म *ṣma*, श्य *ṣya*,  
श्च *śva*, श्क *śka*, श्ल *śka*, श्ट *ṣta*, श्त *ṣta*, श्र *śra*, श्य *śha*,  
स्थ *stha*, स्त *sna*, स्प *sna*, स्फ *spha*, स्म *sma*, स्य *sya*,  
स्र *sra*, स्व *sua*, स्स *ssa*.

ह्र *hna*, ह्र *hma*, ह्य *hya*, ह्र *hra*, ह्र *hla*, ह्र *hva*.

(a) The existence of conjunct characters in Devanāgarī script forms is not marked in the transliteration, since in this book transliterated forms are accompanied by the Devanāgarī forms themselves.

(b) Conjuncts involving initial *r* are written with a special superscript form for *r*: <sup>ṛ</sup>. Thus कं *rka*; मं *rma*; रं *rṣa*, etc. <sup>ṛ</sup> is written at the end of its syllable, thus र्थि *rthi*; र्शि *rṣi*, etc.

(c) The student will see that the learning of the conjuncts poses no new difficulty, the usual principle of composition being that where feasible the second character in the conjunct is combined with a truncated form of the first. The forms where this does not apply need special attention; note especially the form of conjuncts with *r* as final component.

Note also that the conjunct ञ, which represents a value /gy(ə)/ in Hindi but /jñə/ in Sanskrit, is transliterated *jña*, to avoid any confusion with the conjunct य *gya*. Its original value is reflected in the fact that vowels following /gy(ə)/ of this origin are often somewhat nasalized.

(d) The use of conjuncts, especially clumsy ones, is sometimes avoided by the use with the first character, written complete, of a subscript sign called *virāma*, ्, whose function is to indicate absence of an 'inherent' vowel; e.g. चिट्ठी = चिट्ठी *ciṭṭhī*. (This sign is sometimes also written finally with single consonants in some Sanskrit and other loanwords.)

(e) Note that the degree to which *a* is pronounced after consonant groups varies according to the phonetic form of the group (and according to the speech of different individuals and to different styles of speech). After the group /ud/ finally in a word, for instance, *a* will not be heard, but after /ṣṭr/ finally some trace of the vowel is often present. In the transliteration the 'inherent' vowel is not represented after conjuncts where an *a* would normally not be pronounced, e.g. in बन्द *band*; दत्त *datt*, or where, if indeed pronounced, it would most usually be extremely attenuated, e.g. in पत्र *patr*; मित्र *mitr*. Elsewhere it is written, e.g. in राष्ट्र *rāṣṭra*; उत्तरदायित्व *uttardāyitva*; साहित्य *sāhitya*; but note that even in these cases an *a* is by no means always pronounced, and does not have full syllabic value. The student should generally pronounce final *a* after consonant groups as lightly as the phonetic form of the group will allow.<sup>1</sup>

#### 4. Anusvāra

The superscript dot *anusvāra* is used:

(a) Preceding velar, pre-palatal, retroflex, dental or labial plosive consonant characters (see p. xxiii) to denote a preceding nasal consonant

<sup>1</sup> Many speakers simplify certain final consonant groups by introducing brief epenthetic vowels before the last consonant, and sometimes lengthen the preceding consonant, thus pronouncing पत्र *patr* as [pə:ṭr], [pə:ṭr] rather than [pə:ṭr<sup>(1)</sup>], सुक्ल *śukl* as [ʃuk<sup>(1)</sup>] rather than [ʃukl<sup>(1)</sup>], राष्ट्र *rāṣṭra* as [rəṣṭ<sup>(1)</sup>r] rather than [rəṣṭr<sup>(1)</sup>], etc. Pronunciations with epenthetic vowels are probably best avoided by the student. Words such as साहित्य *sāhitya*, उत्तरदायित्व *uttardāyitva* show devoicing of *y*, *v* if the final vowel is completely lost: [səhɪtɕ], etc. Similar devoicing sometimes occurs in words like पत्र *patr*.

sound of the class concerned, i.e. a 'homorganic' nasal. Thus

अंक	is an equivalent spelling to	अङ्क	<i>ank</i>
अञ्चल	" " " "	अञ्चल	<i>añcal</i>
अंदा	" " " "	अण्डा	<i>aṇḍā</i>
हिंदी	" " " "	हिन्दी	<i>hindī</i>
लंबा	" " " "	लम्बा	<i>lambā</i>

This use of *anusvāra* is, in other words, a shorthand device enabling the writing of a word containing nasal + plosive of similar articulation to be simplified, and is accordingly extremely common, even in Sanskrit loanwords. The student should familiarize himself with it from the outset, and use it freely. It is not expressed in the transliteration used in this book, however, in order to keep the latter as clear a guide to pronunciation as possible.

Where *anusvāra* is written over long vowels before plosive consonants in Sanskrit loanwords a degree of vowel nasality will usually be clearly heard preceding the homorganic nasal consonant, e.g. in एकांकी *ekāṅkī*; आंदोलन *āndolan*, etc.

(b) Preceding other consonant characters (chiefly in Sanskrit loanwords):

(i) Before *ya* and usually before *va* it denotes preceding vowel nasality<sup>1</sup>: e.g. संयम *saṁyam*; संवरण *saṁvaran*.

(ii) Before *ra*, *la*, and *sa* it denotes a preceding dental or post-dental nasal consonant *n* according to the usage of most Hindi speakers<sup>2</sup>: e.g. संरक्षण *saṁrakṣaṇ*; संलग्न *saṁlagn*; संसार *saṁsār*.

(iii) Before *śa* it denotes a preceding pre-palatal nasal consonant according to the usage of many Hindi speakers<sup>3</sup>: e.g. अंश *aṁś*.

(iv) Before *ha* it denotes a preceding velar nasal consonant *ṅ*: e.g. सिंह *siṁh*.

In all these positions *anusvāra*, however realized in pronunciation, is

<sup>1</sup> Often with a semivocalic nasalized glide *ṃ* to *y*, and *ṁ* to *v*. For some speakers it denotes bilabial *m* before the character *va*.

<sup>2</sup> For some speakers it denotes preceding vowel nasality; and in a few loanwords it does so for almost all speakers (cases mentioned on p. 195).

<sup>3</sup> For some speakers it denotes preceding vowel nasality, sometimes with semivocalic nasalized glide *ṃ* to *ś*; and in a few loanwords it denotes preceding vowel nasality for almost all speakers (cases mentioned on p. 195).

transliterated *m*, and there are no alternative spellings with conjuncts available.

(c) For the sign *candrabindu*; see below.

### 5. Candrabindu

The superscript sign called *candrabindu* is used to denote vowel nasality in its syllable. (It is rarely if ever used in Sanskrit loanwords.) It is transliterated *ṁ*: e.g.

हाँ	<i>hām</i>
बाँधना	<i>bāṁdhna</i>
रँगना	<i>raṁgnā</i>
हूँ	<i>hūṁ</i>

(a) Where a syllable contains superscript vowel signs, however, *anusvāra* is almost always written instead of *candrabindu*. *Anusvāra* used in this way is transliterated *m* like *candrabindu*: e.g.

खिचना	<i>khimcnā</i>
मँ	<i>maim</i>
में	<i>mem</i>
सींग	<i>sīng</i>
लोगों	<i>logom</i>

(b) In printed books especially, the use of *anusvāra* instead of *candrabindu* in conditions not covered by note (a) above is very common. e.g.

हाँ	for	हाँ	<i>hām</i>
रँगना	for	रँगना	<i>raṁgnā</i>
हूँ	for	हूँ	<i>hūṁ</i>
बाँधना	for	बाँधना	<i>bāṁdhna</i>

The majority of careful users of Hindi do not follow this usage in writing, and the student is therefore recommended not to adopt it himself.

### 6. Visarga

The sign : called *visarga*, written lineally and transliterated *ḥ*, denotes voiced aspiration in Hindi (identical with the sound denoted by the character ह). It occurs almost exclusively in Sanskrit loanwords: e.g.

प्रायः	<i>prāyaḥ</i>
स्वभावतः	<i>svabhāvataḥ</i>

## 7. Representation of some Persian, Arabic, and English sounds

A subscript dot is sometimes used with certain Devanāgarī characters to denote sounds of non-Indian origin in loanwords. This usage is common, but never obligatory, the more so since the great majority of Hindi speakers tend to replace these sounds (see pp. xix and xx) with sounds of Indian origin.

The sound *f* may be written फ़ (transliteration *f*)

"	"	z	"	"	"	ज <sup>1</sup>	(	"	z)
"	"	kh	"	"	"	ख	(	"	kh)
"	"	g	"	"	"	ग	(	"	g)
"	"	q	"	"	"	क़	(	"	q)

In writing English words in Devanāgarī the vowel sound in the English word *top* is sometimes denoted by using the superscript sign <sup>~</sup> over intra-syllabic *ā*; thus जॉन 'John'.

## 8. Punctuation

Sentences are concluded with the vertical mark । (*danṣā*). Other punctuation in prose is of Western origin, and apart from occasional minor deviations is used in the same way as in writing English.

## 9. Numerals

०	१	२	३	४	५	६	७	८	९
०	१	२	३	४	५	६	७	८	९, ९

## 10. Abbreviations

First syllables of words are used in abbreviations, punctuated with either ° or full-stop. Initials of names are usually given according to their English pronunciation: e.g.

उ० प्र०	Uttar Pradesh
म० प्र०	Madhya Pradesh
रा० कु०	Ram Kumar (e.g. in a signature)
टुंडला जं०	Tundla Junction
जी० पी० मेहरोत्रा	G. P. Mehrotra
डा० आर० जे० स्मिथ	Dr. R. J. Smith

<sup>1</sup> A homorganic nasal preceding the sound *z* in Persian loanwords is represented in the script by *amṣarā*, in exactly the same way as the nasal *m* preceding the sound *j* in words of Indian origin; e.g. मंज़िल *manzil*. (In English loanwords, however, it is more often represented by truncated *z* in a conjunct with ज (ज) or sometimes स; e.g. वर्मा ऐण्ड सन्स *varmā aiṇḍ sanz* 'Varma and Sons'; सिविल लाइन्स *sivil lāins* 'Civil Lines'.)

## SCRIPT EXERCISE

1. खा गि घी चौ छो जु भू टे ठा डे ढी रणी तृ ते थे दो  
khā gi ghī cau cho ju bhū ṭe ṭhā ḍe ḍhī ṛi ṭṛ tai the do

धू ना पौ फू बु भा भि ये रो ला वि शा पु सि है  
dhū nā pau phū bu bhā bhi ye ro lā vi śā pu si hai

2. कट काट खाट गत गात घट घाट धूत घात चप  
kaṭ kāt khāṭ gat gāt ghaṭ ghāt ghṛt ghāt cap

चिप चिक जन जान भील टोक ठान डाल ढाक बाण  
cip chik jan jān jhīl ṭok ṭhān ḍāl ḍhāk bāṇ

तुक धूक दिल दीन नीम पेट फोड़ बोझ भीख मेल  
tuk dhūk dil dīn nīm peṭ phoṛ bojh bhikh mel

यार राय लिप वर शत पट साथ शठ हित  
yār rāy līp var śat ṣaṭ sāth śaṭ hit

3. अब आशा आना इस ईख उन उन ऋषि ओट ओर  
ab āśā ānā is ikh un un ṛṣi oṭ aur

एक ऐन  
ek ain

4. कमल विमल अतुल ललित सुबोध राजा बेहद गोबर बूढ़ा  
kamal vimal atul lalit subodh rājā behad gobar būṛhā

बड़ा बढ़ा चलता बोलता बोलती लगता लगती सपना सपने  
baṛā baḍhā caltā boltā boltī lagtā lagtī sapnā sapne

अपने असली खतरा कटरा पटरी समझा सकता मतलब समतल  
apne aslī khatrā kaṭrā paṭrī samjhā saktā mallab samtal

बरबस सरपट  
barbas sarpaṭ

5. गी गई गे गए गाए नी नई नाई नए  
gī gāi ge gae gāe nī nī nāi nāe

भी भाई भई कमाऊ उपजाऊ बोई सोई बढ़ाई बढ़ई  
bhī bhāi bhāi kamāū upjāū boī soi baḍhāi baḍhāi

बुढ़ऊ मकई  
buṛhāū makāi

6. भक्का	भक्खन	रक्त	हुक्म	व्या	क्रम	क्लास
<i>makkā</i>	<i>makkhan</i>	<i>raht</i>	<i>hukm</i>	<i>hyā</i>	<i>kram</i>	<i>klās</i>
क्षण	आख्यान	मुग्ध	अग्नि	ग्राम	ग्लानि	ग्वाला
<i>kṣaṇ</i>	<i>ākhyaṇ</i>	<i>mugdh</i>	<i>agni</i>	<i>grām</i>	<i>glāni</i>	<i>gvālā</i>
अंक	अंग	शंख	वच्चा	अच्छा	च्युत	लज्जा
<i>aṅk</i>	<i>aṅg</i>	<i>śaṅkh</i>	<i>ḥaccā</i>	<i>acchā</i>	<i>cyut</i>	<i>lajjā</i>
ज्ञान	ग्यारह	ज्वर	मिट्टी	मुट्ठा	ट्रेन	अट्टा
<i>jñān</i>	<i>gyārah</i>	<i>jvar</i>	<i>mitti</i>	<i>mutthā</i>	<i>tren</i>	<i>aḍḍā</i>
ड्राइवर	घण्टा	कुण्ठा	अण्डा	सत्ताईस	उत्थान	रत्न
<i>drāivur</i>	<i>ghaṇṭā</i>	<i>kuṇṭhā</i>	<i>aṇḍā</i>	<i>sattāiś</i>	<i>utthān</i>	<i>ratn</i>
उत्पादन	आत्मा	हत्या	पुत्र	पुरुषत्व	गद्दी	विद्या
<i>utpādan</i>	<i>ātmā</i>	<i>hatyā</i>	<i>putr</i>	<i>puruṣatva</i>	<i>gaddi</i>	<i>vidyā</i>
विद्वान्	ध्यान	अन्त	हिन्दी	गन्ना	जन्म	न्यून
<i>vidvān</i>	<i>dhyān</i>	<i>ant</i>	<i>hindī</i>	<i>gannā</i>	<i>jaum</i>	<i>nyūn</i>
प्राप्त	प्राप्य	शब्द	लब्ध	डिब्बा	अभ्यास	सम्पादक
<i>prāpt</i>	<i>prāpya</i>	<i>śabd</i>	<i>labdh</i>	<i>ḍibbā</i>	<i>abhyās</i>	<i>sampādak</i>
लम्बा	तुम्हारा	उर्दू	अर्थ	सर्प	जल्दी	बिल्ली
<i>lambā</i>	<i>tumhārā</i>	<i>urdū</i>	<i>arth</i>	<i>sarp</i>	<i>jaldī</i>	<i>billī</i>
अल्प	व्यय	निश्चय	श्याम	श्री	राष्ट्र	कृष्ण
<i>alp</i>	<i>vyay</i>	<i>niścay</i>	<i>śyām</i>	<i>śrī</i>	<i>rāṣṭra</i>	<i>kṛṣṇ</i>
स्थान	अस्त्र	स्नान	स्पीच	स्रव	ह्रास	
<i>sthān</i>	<i>astra</i>	<i>snān</i>	<i>spīc</i>	<i>sraṇ</i>	<i>hrās</i>	

7. अंग	पंखा	कंघी	संघ	पंकज	चंचल
<i>aṅg</i>	<i>pañkhā</i>	<i>kaṅghī</i>	<i>saṅgh</i>	<i>pañkaj</i>	<i>cañcal</i>
पंछी	रंज	अंटी	कंठ	बंडी	अंत
<i>pañchī</i>	<i>rañj</i>	<i>aṅṭī</i>	<i>kaṅṭh</i>	<i>baṇḍī</i>	<i>ant</i>
पंथ	हिंदी	अंधा	संपादन	संबोधन	संभ्रांत
<i>panth</i>	<i>hindī</i>	<i>andhā</i>	<i>sampādan</i>	<i>sambodhan</i>	<i>sambhrānt</i>
संयुक्त	संवरण	अंश	वंश	वंसी	
<i>saṃyukt</i>	<i>saṃvaraṇ</i>	<i>aṃś</i>	<i>vaṃś</i>	<i>baṃsī</i>	

8. रेंगना	सैंकरा	खिड़कियाँ	लड़कियाँ	अंधेरा	आंधी
<i>reṅgnā</i>	<i>saṅkrā</i>	<i>khirkiyām</i>	<i>laṛkiyām</i>	<i>amdherā</i>	<i>āmdhī</i>
ऊँट	सिंचना	सींचना	सूँघना	रेंगना	हैं
<i>ūṁṭ</i>	<i>simcnā</i>	<i>simcnā</i>	<i>sūṃghnā</i>	<i>reṅgnā</i>	<i>hain</i>
परसों	सौंफ	विद्यार्थियों			
<i>parsoni</i>	<i>saumpha</i>	<i>vidyārthiyon</i>			
9. दुःख	स्वतः				
<i>duḥkh</i>	<i>svataḥ</i>				
10. अफ़सोस	हफ़ता	ज़रम	ख़बर	ग़म	चाकू
<i>afsos</i>	<i>haftā</i>	<i>zakhm</i>	<i>khabar</i>	<i>gam</i>	<i>cāqū</i>



## LESSON I

### NOUNS

Two cases only need be distinguished, a direct and an oblique. The direct case usually denotes sentence subjects or direct objects; the oblique occurs most commonly with postpositions, see below. Nouns are of singular or plural number, and masculine or feminine gender.

#### 1. Masculine inflexional patterns

<i>ā</i> -finals			
Sg.	Dir.	कमरा	<i>kamrā</i> , room
	Obl.	कमरे	<i>kamre</i>
Pl.	Dir.	कमरे	<i>kamre</i>
	Obl.	कमरो	<i>kamrom</i>
Others			
Sg.	Dir.	दिन	<i>din</i> , day
	Obl.	दिन	<i>din</i>
Pl.	Dir.	दिन	<i>din</i>
	Obl.	दिनों	<i>dinon</i>

(a) The few masculines in final *-ām* are almost all inflected as कमरा *kamrā*, but with the endings nasalised, e.g. कुआँ *kuām* 'well'.

(b) Some masculines in final *-ā* follow the pattern of दिन *din*. These are chiefly terms of relationship showing a reduplicated syllable, e.g. चाचा *cācā* 'paternal uncle'; दादा *dādā* 'paternal grandfather' (obl. pl. चाचाओं *cācāon*, etc.); or loanwords from Sanskrit, e.g. पिता *pītā* 'father'; राजा *rājā* 'rajah'; देवता *devtā* 'deity'; दाता *dātā* 'giver'; also, frequently in many persons' usage, the oblique case of some common place-names, e.g. आगरा *āgrā* 'Agra'; कलकत्ता *kalkattā* 'Calcutta'.

(c) Masculines in final *-ī* and *-ū* shorten these vowels before the oblique plural ending, and masculines in final *-ī* show a semivocalic glide *y* before it. Thus आदमी *ādmī* 'man' has oblique plural आदमियों *ādmīyon*; हिंदू *hindū* 'Hindu' has oblique plural हिंदुओं *hinduon*.

(d) Vocatives (forms of address) are usually expressed by use of the oblique case in the singular, and in the plural by forms in -o, differing from oblique case forms only in that they are not nasalised: e.g.

लड़के	larke!	Boys!
लड़कों	larke!	Boys!

## 2. Feminine inflexional patterns

		i-finals	
Sg.	Dir.	लड़की	larke, girl
	Obl.	लड़की	larke
Pl.	Dir.	लड़कियाँ	larakiyān
	Obl.	लड़कियों	larakiyon
		iyā-finals	
Sg.	Dir.	चिड़िया	chiryā, bird
	Obl.	चिड़िया	chiryā
Pl.	Dir.	चिड़ियाँ	chiryān
	Obl.	चिड़ियों	chiryon
		Others	
Sg.	Dir.	मेज़	mez, table
	Obl.	मेज़	mez
Pl.	Dir.	मेज़ें	mezon
	Obl.	मेज़ों	mezon

(a) A final -ī shows the same shortening and presence of glide y before an inflexional ending as was noted for masculines in -ī. Note that this occurs in both plural forms.

(b) Identical in inflexion with feminines in final -ī are feminine loanwords from Sanskrit in final -ī, almost all abstract nouns, e.g. स्थिति sthiti 'position'.

(c) Feminines in -iyā are frequently diminutives, e.g. डिबिया dibiya 'small box'. Cf. डिब्बा dībā, m.

(d) To be particularly noted among the 'other feminines' are loanwords in final -ā from Sanskrit, almost all abstract nouns. (माता mātā 'mother')

is the only common non-abstract.) A few common Arabic and Persian loanwords in final -ā may also be noted, e.g. हवा havā 'air, wind'; दुनिया duniyā 'world'; दफ़ा dafā 'time, occasion'.

(e) Feminine vocatives are formed in the same way as masculines.

There are no definite or indefinite articles in Hindi. A noun acting as subject or direct object in its sentence is definite rather than indefinite; but depending on its context the word मकान makān 'house' may have as its translation equivalent 'a house' or 'the house' or 'houses' or 'the houses'. The word एक ek 'one' can be used before nouns with the force of an indefinite article where explicitness is required.

In the case of nouns denoting animate beings, grammatical gender almost always agrees with natural gender. Thus आदमी ādmī 'man', दर्जी darjī 'tailor', डाकिया dākiyā 'postman' are masculines following दिन din and कमरा kamrā in inflexion, not लड़की larke and चिड़िया chiryā.

The gender of other nouns is harder to predict from their form. Nouns in -ā denoting everyday objects are predominantly masculine; abstract nouns in -ā are almost all feminine; nouns in -ī, -iyā are feminine in most cases unless referring to males, as in the above examples. The student is advised to note the gender of each new word that he learns.

## POSTPOSITIONS

Postpositions are expressions answering in function to prepositions or prepositional phrases in English. They may be simple (i.e. one-word units), e.g. में meṁ 'in, into'; पर par 'on', or compound in form (see in due course pp. 34 f.). Postpositions are characteristically immediately preceded by a noun or pronoun in oblique case. Thus मेज़ पर mez par 'on the table'; मेज़ों पर mezon par 'on the tables', etc.

## SIMPLE SENTENCES

A simple sentence is a complete utterance consisting of a noun or pronoun (or a composite nominal phrase) and a verb (or a composite verbal phrase). Either component may be expressed or understood. The nominal component forms the subject of its sentence; the verbal component may include non-verbal elements, e.g. nouns or pronouns as direct objects or indirect objects of the verb, adverbs or adverbial phrases, or a negative.

## ORDER OF WORDS

1. In simple sentences which are neutral in style and emphasis, rather than affective (emphatic or otherwise emotive) in character, the subject, where expressed, most usually comes first<sup>1</sup> and the verb last, in close association with any negative, while objects and adverbial expressions occupy an intervening position, in less fixed order. Expressions of time tend to precede those of place: e.g.

लड़का आज यहाँ नहीं है। *larhā āj yahām nahīm hai*, 'The boy isn't here today [the boy today here not is].

2. This general pattern can be widely varied according to any affective value a sentence may have (as well as according to its length and the balance of its parts). For instance, an adverb advanced to initial sentence position usually gains in emphasis at the cost of a subject which it displaces. Cf. with the sentence above

आज लड़का यहाँ नहीं है। *āj larhā yahām nahīm hai*, 'Today the boy isn't here.

'Note in this connection that the sense of introductory 'there is, are, were', etc., is expressed in Hindi by an inversion of the neutral (non-affective) order of subject and following adverbial locution (emphasis on the subject being thereby diminished).

पुस्तक मेज पर है। *pustak mez par hai*, 'The book is on the table.  
मेज पर पुस्तक है। *mez par pustak hai*, 'There is a book on the table.

3. Questions: Interrogative pronouns and adverbs, e.g. क्या *kyā* 'what', कहाँ *kahām* 'where', do not usually introduce questions in sentences of neutral style and emphasis, but follow the subject in second position, or later.<sup>2</sup>

लड़की कहाँ है? *larhī kahām hai?* 'Where is the girl?  
यह क्या है? *yah kyā hai?* 'What is this?

<sup>1</sup> One important type of sentence where this is not so is noted in Lesson IX, pp. 50 f., another in Lesson XIII; see also in due course Lesson XII, p. 71, n. 1.

<sup>2</sup> Where a subject is understood but not expressed, or where a sentence is affective in character, they can occur initially.

The pronoun क्या *kyā* in initial position in a sentence is usually a question marker, serving to introduce questions not containing an interrogative. In conversation the inflexion of the voice often makes its presence unnecessary.

(क्या) लड़कियाँ यहाँ हैं? (*kyā*) *larhiyāṁ yahām haiṁ?* 'Are the girls here?

## VOCABULARY

मेज <i>mez</i> , f., table	यह <i>yah</i> , this <sup>1</sup>
पुस्तक <i>pustak</i> , f., book	वह <i>vah</i> , that <sup>1</sup>
कलम <i>qalam</i> , f.m., pen	एक <i>ek</i> , one; a, an
कमरा <i>kanrā</i> m., room	दो <i>do</i> , two
कुरसी <i>kursī</i> , f., chair	तीन <i>tīn</i> , three
घड़ा <i>gharā</i> , m., pot, jar	आज <i>āj</i> , today
पानी <i>pānī</i> , m., water	यहाँ <i>yahām</i> , here
कुआँ <i>kuāṁ</i> , m., well	वहाँ <i>vahām</i> , there
लड़का <i>larhā</i> , m., boy	कहाँ <i>kahām</i> , where?
लड़की <i>larhī</i> , f., girl	क्या <i>kyā</i> , what?; and as question marker
आगरा <i>āgrā</i> , m., Agra	लेकिन <i>lekin</i> , but
कलकत्ता <i>kalkattā</i> , m., Calcutta	में <i>meṁ</i> , in
आदमी <i>ādmi</i> , m., man	पर <i>par</i> , on
औरत <i>aurat</i> , f., woman	नहीं <i>nahīm</i> , no, not
पत्र <i>patr</i> , m., letter	है <i>hai</i> , is
चिड़िया <i>ciṛiyā</i> , f., bird	हैं <i>haiṁ</i> , are
पिंजरा <i>piñjra</i> , m., cage	और <i>aur</i> , and
मकान <i>makān</i> , m., house	
अखबार <i>akhbār</i> , m., newspaper	

## EXERCISE 1

यह मेज है। पुस्तक मेज पर है। मेज पर कलम है। कमरे में दो कुरसियाँ हैं। यह क्या है? यह घड़ा है। क्या घड़े में पानी है? नहीं, लेकिन कुएँ में पानी है। पुस्तकें मेज पर हैं। क्या पुस्तकें मेजों पर हैं? यहाँ एक कुरसी है। यहाँ दो कुरसियाँ हैं। क्या यह कुरसी है? नहीं, यह कुरसी नहीं है, मेज है। लड़के आगरे में हैं, लेकिन लड़कियाँ कलकत्ते में हैं। यहाँ तीन आदमी हैं। औरतें कहाँ हैं? मेजों पर पुस्तकें हैं।

<sup>1</sup> For pronunciation see p. 8.

## EXERCISE 2

What is this? This is a book. The book is here. The books are there. Where is the letter? There are two boys here. The table is in the room. The jar is on the table, and there is water in the jar. What is that? That is a table. The bird is in the cage. There are three birds in the cage. There are three rooms in the house. In one room there are tables and chairs. The newspapers are on the tables.

## LESSON II

## ADJECTIVES

ADJECTIVES whose direct singular masculine form ends in *-ā* agree with nouns in gender, number, and case:

		m.	f.
Sg.	Dir.	अच्छा <i>acchā</i> , good	अच्छी <i>acchī</i>
	Obl.	अच्छे <i>acche</i>	अच्छी <i>acchī</i>
Pl.	Dir.	अच्छे <i>acche</i>	अच्छी <i>acchī</i>
	Obl.	अच्छे <i>acche</i>	अच्छी <i>acchī</i>

Adjectives ending in *-ā* follow the pattern of अच्छा *acchā*, with endings nasalised, e.g. बायाँ *bāyāṁ* 'left' (hand); and most ordinal numerals.

Other adjectives are invariable (except for a few loanwords, and some adjectival uses of pronouns).

अच्छा लड़का *acchā laṛkā*, a good boy  
 बड़े मकान में *baṛe makān meṁ*, in the big house  
 बड़ी दुकानों में *baṛī dūkāṇōṁ meṁ*, in the big shops  
 दो लाल किताबें *do lāl kitābēṁ*, two red books

(a) Adjectives are used predicatively as well as attributively (i.e. following as well as preceding nouns which they qualify): e.g.

दीवार उँची है। *divār ūncī hai*, The wall is high.  
 किताबें लाल हैं। *kitābēṁ lāl haiṁ*, The books are red.

(b) A few adjectives in *-ā* are invariable: some showing final *-iyā*, e.g. बढ़िया *barhiyā* 'good, nice'; some Persian and Arabic loanwords, e.g. ज़िंदा *zindā* 'alive', मादा *mādā* 'female'; also the numeral सवा *savā* (see p. 64).

(c) An adjective used predicatively with two or more nouns or pronouns of different genders, and not referring to persons, agrees with the nearest: e.g.

कागज़ और पेंसिलें सस्ती हैं। *kāgax aur pensileṁ sastī haiṁ*, Paper and pencils are cheap.

If the nouns or pronouns refer to persons the adjective usually takes masculine plural form: e.g.

मेँ और सीता बूढ़े हैं। *main aur sītā būṛhe hain*, Sītā and I are old.

But a composite pronoun subject, e.g. दोनों *donon* 'both', is very often added in these cases to minimise the awkwardness of the concord: e.g.

मेँ और सीता दोनों बूढ़े हैं। *main aur sītā donon būṛhe hain*.

#### DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

Sg.	Dir.	यह	<i>yah</i> , this	वह	<i>vah</i> , that
	Obl.	इस	<i>is</i>	उस	<i>us</i>
	Object	इसे	<i>ise</i>	उसे	<i>use</i>
Pl.	Dir.	ये	<i>ye</i>	वे	<i>ve</i>
	Obl.	इन	<i>in</i>	उन	<i>un</i>
	Object	इन्हें	<i>inheñ</i>	उन्हें	<i>unheñ</i>

(a) यह *yah* is usually pronounced with a fairly high front unrounded vowel close to that of English *spin*, and little or no final aspiration, वह *vah* must frequently with a mid back rounded vowel close to that of French *beau*, and no aspiration. Pronunciations as indicated on p. xix are also heard.

(b) वह *vah* and its plural वे *ve*, as well as acting as demonstratives, are the normal translation equivalents of the third person pronouns 'he, she, it, they'. See p. 11.

(c) The singular direct case forms यह *yah*, वह *vah* are often substituted for ये *ye*, वे *ve* in both the spoken and the written language.

(d) The demonstrative pronouns are also used as demonstrative adjectives, preceding and in concord with nouns: e.g.

यह लड़का *yah larkā*, this boy

इस कमरे में *is kamre meñ*, in this room

उन मेजों पर *un mezon par*, on those tables

उन छोटी मेजों पर *un choṭi mezon par*, on those small tables

(e) The object forms given above function both as definite direct objects and as indirect objects; they are equivalents (which tend to be preferred

by many speakers) of the forms इसको *ishko*, उसको *usko*, इनको *inko*, उनको *unko*, showing the postposition को *ko*. The uses of these forms and other uses of को *ko* are discussed in due course in Lesson IX, and elsewhere.

#### THE POSTPOSITION का *kā*

This postposition indicates possession; it agrees in the same way as an adjective in -ā with nouns: e.g.

उस स्त्री का बेटा *us strī kā beṭā*, that woman's son

उस स्त्री के बेटे *us strī ke beṭe*, that woman's sons

उस स्त्री के बेटे का मकान *us strī ke beṭe kā makān*, that woman's son's house

उस आदमी की बहनों का मकान *us ādmī kī bahnon kā mahān*, that man's sisters' house

उसका मकान *uskā mahān*,<sup>1</sup> his, her house

Possessive forms and expressions can be used predicatively as well as attributively: e.g.

यह मकान उसका है। *yah makān uskā hai*, This house is his, hers.

यह मकान उस स्त्री का है। *yah makān us strī kā hai*, This house belongs to that woman.

#### VOCABULARY

दीवार <i>dīvār</i> , f., wall	घर <i>ghar</i> , m., house, home; घर पर <i>ghar par</i> , at home
कागज़ <i>kāgaz</i> , m., paper	
पेंसिल <i>peñsil</i> , f., pencil	दरवाज़ा <i>darvāzā</i> , m., door; दरवाज़े पर <i>darvāze par</i> , at the door
स्त्री <i>strī</i> , f., woman <sup>2</sup>	
बेटा <i>beṭā</i> , m., son	बच्चा <i>baccā</i> , m., child; baby
बेटी <i>beṭī</i> , f., daughter	किताब <i>kitāb</i> , f., book
भाई <i>bhāī</i> , m., brother; छोटा भाई <i>choṭā bhāī</i> , younger brother	संदूक <i>sandūq</i> , m., box
बहन <i>bahn</i> , f., sister; छोटी बहन <i>choṭī bahn</i> , younger sister [बहिन <i>bahin</i> ] <sup>3</sup>	देश <i>deś</i> , m., country
	शहर <i>shahr</i> , m., city, town
	गाँव <i>gāv</i> , m., village

<sup>1</sup> Postpositions are usually written as one word with oblique case pronominal forms, especially monosyllabic forms; much less often so with nouns.

<sup>2</sup> Words such as this, in which initial *s* is followed by a plosive consonant, are pronounced by most Hindi speakers with a 'prosthetic' or introductory short *i* of varying clarity before the consonant group.

<sup>3</sup> Echoing vocalic sounds after *k* preceding consonants (p. xviii) are sometimes represented in alternative spellings of this kind in a few words. These alternative spellings are in general less preferred in present-day usage, and further examples will not be noted.

सीता <i>sītā</i> , Sītā (girl's name)	साफ़ <i>sāf</i> , clean
क्लास <i>klās</i> , f. m., class (school)	काला <i>kālā</i> , black
क़िला <i>qilā</i> , m., fort	सफ़ेद <i>safed</i> , white
दिल्ली <i>dillī</i> , f., Delhi	सुंदर <i>sundar</i> , beautiful
इमारत <i>imārat</i> , f., building	चार <i>cār</i> , four
राजा <i>rājā</i> , m., rajah	पाँच <i>pāñc</i> , five; पाँचवाँ <i>pāñcvām</i> , fifth
महल <i>mahl</i> , m., palace	छह, छः, छै <i>chah, chah, chai</i> , six
कपड़ा <i>kaprā</i> , m., cloth; pl. clothes	लाल <i>lāl</i> , red
मंदिर <i>mandir</i> , m., temple	ऊँचा <i>ūñcā</i> , high
छोटा <i>choṭā</i> , small	बढ़िया <i>baṛhiyā</i> , good, nice
बड़ा <i>baṛā</i> , large	सस्ता <i>sastā</i> , cheap
बहुत <i>bahut</i> , adj. and adv., much, many; very	बूढ़ा <i>būṛhā</i> , old (of persons); m., old man
मैला <i>mailā</i> , dirty	मैं <i>maini</i> , I
खड़ा <i>khayā</i> , standing	

## EXERCISE 3

वह यहाँ नहीं है, लेकिन उसकी छोटी बहनें यहाँ हैं। वह घर पर नहीं है। दो छोटे बच्चे दरवाजे पर खड़े हैं। यह पानी बहुत मैला है। काले संदूक में पाँच किताबें हैं। क्या किताबें इस काले संदूक में हैं? उस देश में बहुत शहर और गाँव हैं। सीता पाँचवीं क्लास में है। लाल क़िला दिल्ली में है। ये उन छोटी जड़कियों की किताबें हैं। उन इमारतों की दीवारें ऊँची हैं। राजा का महल इस शहर में है। वह बहुत सुंदर है।

## EXERCISE 4

The book is on that table. The clothes are in this box. The books are on those tables. The clothes are in these boxes. They are here. Where is he? Where is she? Sītā is her younger sister. His book is on the table. Her books are in that room. Their clothes are clean and white. What's that? That's a box. In it there are four big books. These books are his. There are two temples in that small village. Calcutta is a big city.

## LESSON III

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS

## 1. First person pronouns

Sg. Dir.	मैं	<i>maini</i> , I
Obl.	मुझ	<i>mujh</i>
Object	मुझे	<i>mujhe</i>
Possessive	मेरा	<i>merā</i>
Pl. Dir.	हम	<i>ham</i> , we
Obl.	हम	<i>ham</i>
Object	हमें	<i>hamen</i>
Possessive	हमारा	<i>hamārā</i>

## 2. Second person pronouns

Sg. Dir.	तू	<i>tū</i> , you
Obl.	तुझ	<i>tujh</i>
Object	तुझे	<i>tujhe</i>
Possessive	तेरा	<i>terā</i>
Pl. Dir.	तुम	<i>tum</i> , you
Obl.	तुम	<i>tum</i>
Object	तुम्हें	<i>tumhen</i>
Possessive	तुम्हारा	<i>tumhārā</i>

## 3. Third person pronouns

Sg. Dir.	वह	<i>vah</i> , he, she, it	यह	<i>yah</i> , he, she, it
Obl.	उस	<i>us</i>	इस	<i>is</i>
Object	उसे	<i>use</i>	इसे	<i>ise</i>
Possessive	उसका	<i>uskā</i>	इसका	<i>iskā</i>
Pl. Dir.	वे	<i>ve</i> , they	ये	<i>ye</i> , they
Obl.	उन	<i>un</i>	इन	<i>in</i>
Object	उन्हें	<i>unhen</i>	इन्हें	<i>inhen</i>
Possessive	उनका	<i>unkā</i>	इनका	<i>inkā</i>
			आप	<i>āp</i> , you; he, she, they
			आप	<i>āp</i>
			आपका	<i>āpkā</i>

(a) तुम *tum* may have singular or plural reference, but is a plural pronoun in respect of its concord with verbs. For the distinction between तुम *tum* with singular reference and तू *tū* (which has only singular reference) see below.

(b) यह *yah* and ये *ye* are used as third person pronouns with 'proximate' force; e.g. often in reference to a person actually present at the time of speaking, or to the latter of two possible referents in a preceding sentence or clause.

(c) Note that by far the commonest translation equivalent of the pronoun आप *āp* is 'you', and that it may have either singular or plural reference, but that it is a third person plural pronoun in respect of its concord with verbs; see below.

(d) The possessive forms of first and second person pronouns are inflected as adjectives, like third person possessive forms showing -का *-kā* (see p. 9): e.g.

मेरा भाई *merā bhāī*, my brother

तुम्हारी बहनें *tumhārī bahen*, your sisters

यह किताब मेरी है *yah kitāb merī hai*, This book is mine.

(e) The object forms of first and second person pronouns are used in the same way as the object forms of यह *yah*, वह *vah* (see pp. 8 f.). Note that आप *āp* has no specific object form.

(f) Pronouns are often not expressed where the sense of a sentence is clear without their presence, e.g.

वे आज कहाँ हैं? — दिल्ली में हैं। *ve āj kahān haim?* — *dillī meṁ haim*, Where are they today? — In Delhi.

### HONORIFIC USAGES

1. Care must be exercised in using the pronouns आप *āp*, तुम *tum* and तू *tū*, which have different honorific values. In normal educated usage आप *āp* is the pronoun of address to one's seniors (though not usually to close female relatives), and also very generally to one's peers and others whom one addresses on equal terms. आप *āp* is used with a third person

plural verb, whether the reference is to one person or more than one<sup>1</sup>: e.g.

आप कैसे हैं? *āp kaise haim?* How are you? (masculine reference)

आप कैसी हैं? *āp kaisī haim?* How are you? (feminine reference)

A person to whom one uses आप *āp* should usually be referred to, if absent, with the plural pronominal form वे *ve*, and a plural verb<sup>2</sup>; but if present, either with ये *ye* or आप *āp*.

(a) तुम *tum* expresses moderate divergence from high honorific reference. It is used by Hindi speakers in addressing many relatives (especially those not senior to the speaker), quite often in addressing close friends, and regularly in addressing persons of lower social status than the speaker, for example servants, or rickshaw-wallahs. Foreigners will most probably find that Indians with whom they are on friendly terms will address them with आप *āp*, and, if this is so, should reciprocate.

A person to whom one uses तुम *tum* can be referred to, if absent, with the singular pronominal form वह *vah*, and a singular verb; and if present, with यह *yah*.

(b) तू *tū* expresses feelings of great intimacy or informality, and also of contempt, disgust, etc. (extreme divergences in different directions from high honorific reference). It will rarely be used by foreigners. Indians often use it to invoke a deity, and when speaking to small children, and foreigners may of course follow suit.

2. Most educated Hindi speakers use the three-term honorific system outlined above, but for some the use of आप *āp* is not fully natural. These persons normally use तुम *tum* in the way in which आप *āp* is used within the three-term system; तू *tū* then covers the functions of both तुम *tum* and तू *tū* in the three-term system. This usage is best not imitated.

3. Plural concord in a sentence can, as seen above, be a mark of honorific

<sup>1</sup> There is a means of making explicit a reference to more than one person by आप *āp* or तुम *tum*. See Supplement I, p. 165, in due course.

<sup>2</sup> This convention is not observed systematically in referring to persons with whom one is not acquainted.

reference, but the only *nouns* used honorifically in plural number are the masculines in *-ā* when in direct case: e.g.

आपके बेटे कैसे हैं? *āpke betē kaise haim?* How is your son?<sup>1</sup>

Cf. आपकी बेटी कैसी है? *āpkī beṭī kaisī haim?* How is your daughter?

4. Common uses of the honorific particle *जी ji* are as follows:

(a) In addressing a person (male or female) to whom one uses आप *āp*, *जी ji* may be added to the last name: e.g.

वाजपेयी जी, आप कैसे हैं? *vājpeyī jī, āp kaise haim?* How are you, Mr. Vājpeyī? Where added to a first name it denotes a certain familiarity: e.g. कैसी हैं, राधा जी? *kaisī hain, rādhā jī?* How are you, Rādhā?

(b) In referring to persons whom one would address with आप *āp*, *जी ji* precedes last names in this case: e.g.

उस समय राम प्रसाद जी सार्मा मंत्री थे। *us samay rām prasād jī sarmā mantri the,*  
At that time Mr. Rām Prasād Sarmā was secretary.

(c) With the words *हाँ hām* 'yes' and *नहीं nahīm* 'no'. These used alone sometimes seem rather crude to an Indian ear. *जी हाँ ji hām* and *जी नहीं ji nahīm* are best restricted to आप *āp* contexts. *हाँ जी hām jī*, *नहीं जी nahīm jī* are much less circumspect, and are usually best avoided in आप *āp* contexts. For 'yes', *जी ji* alone is often heard.

5. The forms श्री *śrī*, श्रीमती *śrīmatī*, and कुमारी *kumārī* or सुश्री *sushrī* are also used in the same way as the titles Mr., Mrs., and Miss. They may always be replaced, in addressing persons, by the more traditional *जी ji*. In referring to persons formally, they are sometimes used in conjunction with *जी ji*.

### VOCABULARY

पिता <i>pitā</i> , m., father	पत्नी <i>patnī</i> , f., wife
माता, माँ <i>mātā, mām</i> , f., mother	माता-पिता <i>mātā-pitā</i> , m.pl., parents
स्कूल <i>skūl</i> , m., school; स्कूल में <i>skūl mem</i> at school	भारत <i>bhārat</i> , m., India
पति <i>pati</i> , m., husband	राजधानी <i>rājdhānī</i> , f., capital
	मंत्री <i>mantri</i> , m., secretary

<sup>1</sup> Alongside this sentence the sentence आपका बेटा कैसा है? *āpkā betā kaisā hai?* is of course also possible (and would be a more common utterance).

ठीक <i>thīk</i> , correct, all right, fine	हाँ <i>hām</i> , yes
सब <i>sab</i> , all; everything; सब किताबें <i>sab kitābē</i> , all the books	नहीं <i>nahīm</i> , no
काम <i>hām</i> , m., work	नमस्ते <i>namaste</i> , 'greetings' (common term of address; equivalent
बैठा <i>baiṭhā</i> , seated, sitting	नमस्कार <i>namaskār</i> )
कैसे <i>kaise</i> , what sort of?; used ad- jectivally in आप कैसे हैं? <i>āp kaise haim?</i> How are you? etc.	हम हैं <i>ham haim</i> , we are
	मैं हूँ <i>maim hūm</i> , I am
	उस समय <i>us samay</i> , at that time
अभी <i>abhi</i> , now	

### EXERCISE 5

मेरा बेटा अभी दिल्ली में है। मेरे बेटे का मकान बहुत बड़ा है। आपकी किताबें उस बड़ी मेज़ पर हैं। वे मेरे बड़े भाई हैं। नमस्ते, आप कैसे हैं? कैसी हैं, सीता जी? सब ठीक है? जी हाँ, सब ठीक है। श्री प्रसाद यहाँ हैं, उस कमरे में बैठे हैं। हमारा शहर छोटा है। उनके भाई यहाँ नहीं हैं। क्या यह किताब आपकी है? जी नहीं, मेरी नहीं है, मेरे पिता जी की है।

### EXERCISE 6

Sītā is this boy's sister. The sisters of these boys are at school. Where is your mother? How is your wife? This work is unsatisfactory. That book is mine. All the books are mine. All these books<sup>1</sup> are my parents'. We are sitting in their room. How are you, Mr. Prasad? I am well. In India there are many villages. Delhi is the capital of India.

<sup>1</sup> ये सब किताबें *ye sab kitābē*; note word order.



## LESSON IV

### VERB STRUCTURE AND CONCORD

1. The basic structural units of the Hindi verb are:

- (a) The verb stem.
- (b) Formative suffixes, which are added to stems and of which the chief are:
  - (i) *-tā, -ā*, and their concord variants, which form imperfective and perfective participles respectively. These characterise verbal actions aspectually as not completed, or as completed. This distinction is fundamental to a large number of verbal forms.
  - (ii) *-nā* and its concord variants. These form verbal nouns or adjectives. Verbs are quoted in the form stem + *-nā* (infinitive form).
  - (iii) Certain modal suffixes which appear in subjunctive and imperative forms.
- (c) Certain forms of the verb होना *honā*, used with the participles as auxiliaries of tense and mood.

2. Verbal expressions based on stems, participles, and infinitives and containing further verbal forms other than (or additional to) those of the verb होना *honā* are very frequent. They may be described collectively as composite verbal expressions. Various types of composite verbal expression are introduced in due course, as well as types of verbal expression based on nominal forms (nouns and adjectives).

3. Finite verbs (i.e. main verbal forms of simple or complex<sup>1</sup> sentences) very frequently show concord of number, person, and gender (where applicable) with sentence subjects; otherwise (in cases to be defined in due course) they show concord with direct objects, or are used impersonally (not in any concord relationship).

### PRESENT, PAST, AND FUTURE TENSE FORMS OF होना *honā* 'be, become'

*Present: 'I am', etc.*

Sg. 1	मैं हूँ	<i>māim hūm</i>
2	तू है	<i>tū hai</i>
3	वह है	<i>vah hai</i>

<sup>1</sup> See p. 46, n. 1.

### REGULAR CONJUGATIONAL PATTERNS

17

Pl. 1	हम हैं	<i>ham haim</i>
2	तुम हो	<i>tum ho</i>
3	वे, आप हैं	<i>ve, āp haim</i>

*Past: 'I was', etc.*

Sg. 1	मैं था	<i>māim thā, m.</i>	थी	<i>thī, f.</i>
2	तू था	<i>tū thā</i>	थी	<i>thī</i>
3	वह था	<i>vah thā</i>	थी	<i>thī</i>

Pl. 1	हम थे	<i>ham the</i>	थीं	<i>thīm</i>
2	तुम थे	<i>tum the</i>	थीं	<i>thīm</i>
3	वे, आप थे	<i>ve, āp the</i>	थीं	<i>thīm</i>

*Future: 'I shall be, become', etc.*

Sg. 1	मैं हूँगा	<i>māim hūngā, m.</i>	हूँगी	<i>hūngī, f.</i>
2	तू होगा	<i>tū hogā</i>	होगी	<i>hogī</i>
3	वह होगा	<i>vah hogā</i>	होगी	<i>hogī</i>

Pl. 1	हम होंगे	<i>ham hongē</i>	होंगी	<i>hongī</i>
2	तुम होंगे	<i>tum hoge</i>	होंगी	<i>hogī</i>
3	वे, आप होंगे	<i>ve, āp hongē</i>	होंगी	<i>hongī</i>

(a) Note that past tense forms show gender concord with subjects, and that feminine plural past tense forms show nasality; in this way a number distinction between feminine singulars and plurals, which would otherwise be lacking, is achieved.

(b) Future tense forms also show gender concord with subjects. Note that future forms of होना *honā* are often used to express presumptions: e.g. वह आदमी दक्खिनी होगा *vah ādmī dakkhīnī hogā*, That man is probably a southerner.

### REGULAR CONJUGATIONAL PATTERNS

The main regular conjugational patterns of the verb are illustrated below and in the next lesson with forms of the verb चलना *calnā* 'go, move'. Irregularities of form in verbs other than होना *honā* are few; most are cited.

## 1. General present: 'I go', etc.

Sg. 1	मैं चलता हूँ	<i>mainh caltā hūm</i> , m.	चलती हूँ	<i>caltī hūm</i> , f.
2	तू चलता है	<i>tū caltā hai</i>	चलती है	<i>caltī hai</i>
3	वह चलता है	<i>vah caltā hai</i>	चलती है	<i>caltī hai</i>
Pl. 1	हम चलते हैं	<i>ham calte haiṁ</i>	चलती हैं	<i>caltī haiṁ</i>
2	तुम चलते हो	<i>tum calte ho</i>	चलती हो	<i>caltī ho</i>
3	वे, आप चलते हैं	<i>ve, āp calte haiṁ</i>	चलती हैं	<i>caltī haiṁ</i>

(a) General present forms express habitual action or general state, but are also used in other cases with a certain indefinite sense, for instance when there is no explicit need felt to use a continuous present form: e.g.

मैं भारत में रहता हूँ। *mainh bhārat meṁ rahtā hūm*, I live in India.

मैं भारत में हिंदी बोलता हूँ। *mainh bhārat meṁ hindī boltā hūm*, I speak Hindi in India.

मैं चलता हूँ। *mainh caltā hūm*, I'm going.

(b) General present forms are negated with नहीं *nahīn*, preceding the participle; the auxiliary is usually dropped unless the negation is strongly stressed. In such cases the nasality of the auxiliary in feminine plural forms, which is the only feature distinguishing them from feminine singular forms, is transferred to the final syllable of the participle.

वे औरतें अक्सर हिंदी नहीं बोलतीं। *ve aurteṁ aksar hindī nahīn boltīṁ*, Those women usually don't speak Hindi.

(c) होना *honā* has its own general present form होता है *hotā hai* 'is (in general)'. Note particularly the use of होता है *hotā hai* as opposed to है *hai*:

यह गाड़ी लाल है। *yah gārī lāl hai*, This car is red (particular case).

गाड़ियाँ महँगी होती हैं। *gāriyāṁ mahāṅgī hotī haiṁ*, Cars are expensive (general case).

## 2. Imperfective past: 'I went, used to go', etc.

Sg. 1	मैं चलता था	<i>mainh caltā thā</i> , m.	चलती थी	<i>caltī thī</i> , f.
2	तू चलता था	<i>tū caltā thā</i>	चलती थी	"
3	वह चलता था	<i>vah caltā thā</i>	चलती थी	"
Pl. 1	हम चलते थे	<i>ham calte the</i>	चलती थीं	<i>caltī thīm</i>
2	तुम चलते थे	<i>tum calte the</i>	चलती थीं	"
3	वे, आप चलते थे	<i>ve, āp calte the</i>	चलती थीं	"

(a) These forms have the same usual reference to habitual action or general state as general present forms. They are also common in narration where there is no explicit need felt to use a past continuous form: e.g. उस समय मैं दिल्ली में रहता था। *us samay mainh dillī meṁ rahtā thā*, At that time I was living in Delhi.

They are negated with नहीं *nahīn*, preceding the participle: e.g. मैं नहीं चलता था *mainh nahīn caltā thā*, I used not to go.

## 3. Continuous present: 'I am going', etc.

Sg. 1	मैं चल रहा हूँ	<i>mainh cal rahī hūm</i> , m.	चल रही हूँ	<i>cal rahī hūm</i> , f.
2	तू चल रहा है	<i>tū cal rahī hai</i>	चल रही है	" <i>hai</i>
3	वह चल रहा है	<i>vah cal rahī hai</i>	चल रही है	" <i>hai</i>
Pl. 1	हम चल रहे हैं	<i>ham cal rahe haiṁ</i>	चल रही हैं	" <i>haiṁ</i>
2	तुम चल रहे हो	<i>tum cal rahe ho</i>	चल रही हो	" <i>ho</i>
3	वे, आप चल रहे हैं	<i>ve, āp cal rahe haiṁ</i>	चल रही हैं	" <i>haiṁ</i>

(a) These forms, showing the perfective participle of the verb रहना *rahna* 'remain' following the stem, stress the continuous nature of uncompleted actions.<sup>1</sup> The verbal unit चल रहा हूँ *cal rahī hūm* is pronounced with a single stress on the verb stem, the following syllables being unstressed.

(b) Some English expressions of present participial form refer to present state as much as to continued action, e.g. *to be sitting, lying*, etc. These have as Hindi translation equivalents not continuous present forms but perfective participles of verbs denoting assumption of the given state, plus present tense forms of होना *honā*: e.g.

मैं कुर्सी पर बैठा हूँ। *mainh kursi par bithā hūm*, I am sitting on a chair.

किताब मेज़ पर पड़ी है। *kitāb meṁ par pṛī hai*, The book is lying on the table.

(c) The continuous present may be used, as in English, of future events which are thought of as already set in train: e.g.

मैं कल जा रहा हूँ। *mainh kal jā rahī hūm*, I am going tomorrow.

(d) Continuous present forms can be negated with नहीं *nahīn* in the same way as general present forms. They are less common when negated

<sup>1</sup> The element चल रहा *cal rahī* has the general sense 'having remained in, being engaged in the action चल-*cal*'.

than the latter, however, since it is not often necessary to describe a non-occurring action as specifically 'continuous'.

#### 4. Continuous past: 'I was going', etc.

Sg. 1	मैं चल रहा था	<i>main cal rahā thā</i> , m.	चल रही थी	<i>cal rahī thī</i> , f.
2	तू चल रहा था	<i>tū cal rahā thā</i>	चल रही थी	"
3	वह चल रहा था	<i>vah cal rahā thā</i>	चल रही थी	"

Pl. 1	हम चल रहे थे	<i>ham cal rahe the</i>	चल रही थीं	<i>cal rahī thīm</i>
2	तुम चल रहे थे	<i>tum cal rahe the</i>	चल रही थीं	"
3	वे, आप चल रहे थे	<i>ve, āp cal rahe the</i>	चल रही थीं	"

(a) The notes to subsection 3 above apply *mutatis mutandis* to the continuous past.

#### VERBAL CONCORD WITH COMPOSITE SUBJECTS

Where there are two or more subjects of different genders the verb usually agrees with the subject nearest to it, although if both subjects have personal reference it often shows a 'common' masculine gender. This is normal when first and second person subjects are involved. In these cases a composite subject pronoun (e.g. दोनों *donon* 'both') is often added.

कागज और स्याही सस्ती है। *kāgaz aur syāhī sastī hai*, Paper and ink are cheap.

मेरे भाई और उनकी पत्नी दिल्ली में रहते हैं। *mere bhāī aur unkī patnī dillī mein rahte hain*, My brother and his wife live in Delhi.

मैं और मेरी बहन (दोनों) दिल्ली में रहते हैं। *main aur merī bahn (donon) dillī mein rahte hain*, My sister and I live in Delhi.

Where there are two or more subjects of the same gender the verb is plural and of that gender if they have personal reference; otherwise it most frequently agrees with the nearest subject: e.g.

लड़की और उसकी माँ कल दिल्ली जा रही हैं। *larkī aur uskī mām kal dillī jā rahī hain*, The girl and her mother are going to Delhi tomorrow.

किताब और पेंसिल मेज पर है। *kitāb aur pensil mez par hai*, The book and pencil are on the table.

#### THE POSTPOSITION से *se*

This postposition is used in construction with various verbs of speaking,

telling, etc. (but not all such verbs); e.g. with बोलना *bolnā* 'to speak', कहना *kahnā* 'to say', and पूछना *pūchnā* 'to ask'.

मैं उससे हमेशा हिंदी बोलता हूँ। *main usse hamesā hindī boltā hūm*, I always speak Hindi to him.

उससे यह सवाल पूछिए। *usse yah savāl pūchie*, Ask him this question.

#### SOME EXPRESSIONS OF MOTION

Expressions describing motion to a destination denoted by a place-name usually show the noun concerned without following postposition: e.g.

मैं भारत जा रहा हूँ। *main bhārat jā rahā hūm*, I'm going to India.

मैं कलकत्ते (कलकत्ता) जा रहा हूँ। *main kalkatte (kalkattā) jā rahā hūm*, I'm going to Calcutta.

The second example with its alternative forms (see p. 1) shows that oblique case usages are involved in this type of expression. Expressions of motion are discussed further in Lesson IX.

#### VOCABULARY

हिंदी <i>hindī</i> , f., Hindi	हरा <i>harā</i> , green
गाड़ी <i>gārī</i> , f., vehicle (cart, car, train)	लंबा <i>lambā</i> , long; tall
अंग्रेज <i>angrez</i> , m.f., Englishman,	महंगा <i>mahangā</i> , expensive
Englishwoman	अच्छा <i>acchā</i> , good; adv., well; interj.,
अंग्रेजी <i>angrezi</i> , adj., English; the	all right, I see, etc.
English language (f.)	भारतीय <i>bhārtiy</i> , adj. and noun,
भाषा <i>bhāṣā</i> , f., language	Indian
बारिश <i>bārīś</i> , f., rain; बारिश होना	रहना <i>rahnā</i> , stay, remain, live
<i>bārīś honā</i> , rain (verb)	बोलना <i>bolnā</i> , speak, talk
पेड़ <i>per</i> , m., tree	बैठना <i>baiṭhnā</i> , sit
पत्ता <i>pattā</i> , m., leaf	जाना <i>jānā</i> , go
दोस्त <i>dost</i> , m., friend	लिखना <i>likhnā</i> , write
दफ्तर <i>daftar</i> , m., office	जानना <i>jānnā</i> , know
विद्यार्थी <i>vidyārthī</i> , m., student	गाना <i>gānā</i> , sing; song (m.)
गरमियाँ <i>garmiyān</i> , f.pl., hot season	सीखना <i>sikhnā</i> , learn
दिन <i>din</i> , m., day	पढ़ना <i>parhnā</i> , read; study
सिग्रेट <i>sigret</i> , f.m., cigarette	पड़ना <i>parnā</i> , fall; be found
स्याही <i>syāhī</i> , f., ink	आना <i>ānā</i> , come
डाकिया <i>ḍākiyā</i> , m., postman	सोना <i>sonā</i> , sleep
सवाल <i>savāl</i> , m., question	अक्सर <i>aksar</i> , usually
पड़ा <i>parā</i> , lying, placed flat	कल <i>kal</i> , yesterday, tomorrow

परसों *parson*, day before yesterday, कब *kab*, when?  
 day after tomorrow क्यों *kyom*, why?  
 हमेशा *hamesā*, always

## EXERCISE 7

आप कैसे हैं? मैं ठीक हूँ। हम अंग्रेज हैं। हमारी भाषा अंग्रेजी है। उसकी बहनें कल आपके  
 में थीं। मैं कल वहाँ था। क्या आज बारिश होगी? जी नहीं, आज बारिश नहीं होगी।  
 मैं एक पत्र लिख रहा हूँ। वह मुझसे अंग्रेजी बोलता है। उस पेड़ के पत्ते हरे हैं। पेड़ों के  
 पत्ते हरे होते हैं। मैं हिंदी नहीं जानता। मैं भारत में हमसे अंग्रेजी बोलते थे। वह मेरी  
 कुर्सी पर बैठा है। हम परसों भारत जा रहे हैं। अच्छा, मैं चलता हूँ। लड़का गाना गा  
 रहा है। आप हिंदी क्यों सीख रहे हैं?<sup>1</sup>

## EXERCISE 8

My friend's brother was here yesterday. His sisters weren't in the room.  
 Is he in the office? No, I expect he's at home. He always speaks Hindi  
 to the Indian students, but doesn't speak it<sup>2</sup> to me. We live in the capital  
 of India. I am learning Hindi. I don't read his books. In summer the  
 days are long. Cigarettes aren't expensive in India. When does the  
 postman come? The girls used to sleep in that room. We are reading a  
 very good book.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Interrogative words such as क्यों *kyom*, कब *kab* usually follow any object  
 forms in sentences of neutral style and emphasis.

<sup>2</sup> The pronoun may be omitted.

<sup>3</sup> In speech of normal to fast tempo the verb here is phonologically/parh rahe  
 hain/, *r* in the word *rahe* being assimilated to the preceding flap *rh*. Assimilations  
 of this kind are quite common.

## LESSON V

## REGULAR CONJUGATIONAL PATTERNS (contd.)

1. *Perfective*: 'I went', etc.

Sg. 1	मैं चला	<i>main calā</i> , m.	चली <i>calī</i> , f.
2	तू चला	<i>tū calā</i>	चली ,,
3	वह चला	<i>vah calā</i>	चली ,,
Pl. 1	हम चले	<i>ham calē</i>	चलीं <i>calīm</i>
2	तुम चले	<i>tum calē</i>	चलीं ,,
3	वे, आप चल	<i>ve, āp calē</i>	चलीं ,,

(a) Perfective forms denote completedness of action, without specific  
 reference to time. They are used chiefly, but not only, of events occurring  
 in past time.<sup>1</sup>

(b) Verbs whose stem ends in *-i* or *-ū* shorten this vowel before perfective  
 inflexional endings: but a shortened stem *-i* coalesces with the feminine  
 inflexional endings, restoring the long vowel in feminine forms. The  
 perfective forms of छूना *chūnā* 'touch' and सीना *sīnā* 'sew' are thus

छुआ <i>chuā</i>	छुई <i>chui</i>	छुए <i>chue</i>	छुई <i>chūīm</i> , touched
सिया <i>siyā</i> <sup>2</sup>	सी <i>sī</i>	सिए <i>sie</i>	सीं <i>sīm</i> , sewed

(c) Verbs whose stem ends in *-ā*, *-ō*, *-e* or *-ī* show a semi-vocalic glide *y*  
 before masculine singular endings.<sup>3</sup> Verbs whose stem ends in *-e* show  
 a similar glide before masculine plural endings also.

आया <i>āyā</i>	आई <i>āī</i>	आए <i>āe</i>	आई <i>āīm</i> , came
सोया <i>soyā</i>	सीई <i>soī</i>	सोए <i>soe</i>	सीई <i>soīm</i> , slept
खेया <i>kheyā</i>	खेई <i>kheī</i>	खेए <i>kheye</i>	खेई <i>kheīm</i> , rowed
सिया <i>siyā</i>	सी <i>sī</i>	सिए <i>sie</i>	सीं <i>sīm</i> , sewed

<sup>1</sup> Some usages of perfective forms with future time reference are noted in  
 Lesson XX.

<sup>2</sup> *y* in this form is explained in the following paragraph.

<sup>3</sup> Before other endings, where the glide is either attenuated or not present in  
 pronunciation, it need never be expressed in written forms but is often introduced  
 by analogy. See in due course Supplement II, p. 175.

(d) The perfective forms of five verbs require special note:

	m.sg.	f.sg.	m.pl.	f.pl.
करना <i>harnā</i> 'do':	किया <i>kīyā</i>	की <i>kī</i>	किए <i>kīe</i>	कीं <i>kīm</i>
लेना <i>lenā</i> 'take':	लिया <i>liyā</i>	ली <i>lī</i>	लिए <i>lie</i>	लीं <i>līm</i>
देना <i>denā</i> 'give':	दिया <i>diyā</i>	दी <i>dī</i>	दिए <i>die</i>	दीं <i>dīm</i>
जाना <i>jānā</i> 'go':	गया <i>gayā</i>	गई <i>gai</i>	गए <i>gae</i>	गईं <i>gaim</i>
होना <i>honā</i> 'be, become':	हुआ <i>huā</i>	हुई <i>huī</i>	हुए <i>hue</i>	हुईं <i>huīm</i>

Note the difference between perfective हुआ *huā* 'became' and past tense था *thā* 'was':

मैं लड़ाई में जखमी हुआ। *main laṛāī meṁ zakhmī huā*, I was wounded in the war.  
मैं लड़ाई में भारत में था। *main laṛāī meṁ bhārat meṁ thā*, I was in India during the war.

(e) In general, perfective forms of transitive verbs<sup>1</sup> are not used in subject concord constructions of the type so far considered. The types of construction into which they characteristically enter are introduced in due course in Lesson XII. Perfective forms of a few transitive verbs are, however, used in subject concord constructions: e.g.

बोलना <i>bolnā</i> , speak, talk
लाना <i>lānā</i> , bring
समझना <i>samajhnā</i> , understand

(f) With perfective forms the negative न *na* is common, as well as नहीं *nahīn*.

2. *Perfective present*: 'I have gone', etc.

Sg. 1 मैं चला हूँ	<i>main calā hūm</i> , m.	चली हूँ	<i>calī hūm</i> , f.
2 तू चला है	<i>tū calā hai</i>	चली है	„ <i>hai</i>
3 वह चला है	<i>vah calā hai</i>	चली है	„ <i>hai</i>
Pl. 1 हम चले हैं	<i>ham cale haim</i>	चली हैं	<i>calī haim</i>
2 तुम चले हो	<i>tum cale ho</i>	चली हो	„ <i>ho</i>
3 वे, आप चले हैं	<i>ve, āp cale haim</i>	चली हैं	„ <i>haim</i>

(a) Perfective present forms define actions as completed and connected in some way with present time. They may describe not only actions

<sup>1</sup> Verbs which can be used in construction with direct objects.

occurring in the immediate past, but also actions occurring in the more distant past whose consequences are felt as continuing to the present.

मैं अभी आया हूँ। *main abhī āyā hūm*, I've just come.

मैं एक बार दिल्ली गया हूँ। *main ek bār dillī gayā hūm*, I've been to Delhi once.<sup>1</sup>

मैं कुर्सी पर बैठा हूँ। *main kursī pur baiṭhā hūm*, I'm sitting on a chair.<sup>2</sup>

3. *Perfective past*: 'I went, had gone', etc.

Sg. 1 मैं चला था	<i>main calā thā</i> , m.	चली थी	<i>calī thī</i> , f.
2 तू चला था	<i>tū calā thā</i>	चली थी	„
3 वह चला था	<i>vah calā thā</i>	चली थी	„
Pl. 1 हम चले थे	<i>ham cale the</i>	चली थीं	<i>calī thīm</i>
2 तुम चले थे	<i>tum cale the</i>	चली थीं	„
3 वे, आप चले थे	<i>ve, āp cale the</i>	चली थीं	„

(a) Perfective past forms define actions as completed specifically in past time, and disconnected in some way from the present. Because they have this force, they can answer not only to English pluperfects (verb forms such as 'had come', 'had gone', etc.), but also to past tenses: e.g.

मैं कल आया था *main kal āyā thā*, I came yesterday.

The implication here is that whatever the speaker is now doing is not a direct sequel to the action of his coming. Compare

मैं कल आया हूँ। *main kal āyā hūm*, I got here yesterday (in order to attend today's meeting, for a much anticipated stay, etc.).

and

मैं कल आया। *main kal āyā*, I came yesterday (matter-of-fact statement, neutral with regard to time and context of action).

4. *Subjunctive*: 'I may go', etc.

Sg. 1 मैं चलूँ	<i>main calūn</i> , m., f.
2 तू चले	<i>tū cale</i>
3 वह चले	<i>vah cale</i>
Pl. 1 हम चलें	<i>ham calēm</i>
2 तुम चलो	<i>tum calo</i>
3 वे, आप चलें	<i>ve, āp calēm</i>

<sup>1</sup> एक बार *ek bār* 'on one occasion'.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 19.

(a) Verbs whose stem ends in *-ī* or *-ū* shorten this vowel before subjunctive inflexional endings, e.g. वह पिए *vah pie* 'he may drink'; हम छुएँ *ham chueñ* 'we may touch'. Sometimes, however, long vowels appear, especially in first person singular written forms of verbs in *-ī*, e.g. मैं जिऊँ/जीऊँ *maim jiūm/jiūm* 'I may live'.

(b) Subjunctive forms characterize actions as possible, desired or desirable, hypothetical, subject to some doubt, etc., rather than as objectively realized or envisaged: e.g.

मैं चल्ँ? *maim calūñ*? May I go?

मैं कल शायद दिल्ली जाऊँ। *maim kal śāyad dillī jāūm*, I'll perhaps go to Delhi tomorrow.

(c) The negative used with subjunctive forms is regularly *na*: e.g.

मैं कल शायद दिल्ली न जाऊँ। *maim kal śāyad dillī na jāūm*, I perhaps won't go to Delhi tomorrow.

(d) The subjunctive forms of होना *honā* 'be', देना *denā* 'give', and लेना *lenā* 'take' are

होऊँ (हूँ) <i>h(o)ūm</i>	हो <i>ho</i>	हो <i>ho</i>	हों <i>hom</i>	हो(ओ) <i>ho(o)</i>	हों <i>hom</i>
दूँ <i>dūm</i>	दे <i>de</i>	दे <i>de</i>	दें <i>dem</i>	दो <i>do</i>	दें <i>dem</i>
लूँ <i>lūm</i>	ले <i>le</i>	ले <i>le</i>	लें <i>lem</i>	लो <i>lo</i>	लें <i>lem</i>

देना *denā* is used in construction with indirect as well as direct objects. The former are marked by the postposition को *ko* (except in the case of the equivalent pronominal object forms उसे *use*, etc., noted on pp. 8 f.). More frequently than not they precede direct objects in sentences: e.g.

मैं सीता को किताब दूँगा। *maim sītā ko kitāb dūngā*, I shall give Sitā the book.

मैं उसे किताब दूँगा। *maim use kitāb dūngā*, I shall give her the book.

(e) Note that subjunctives are often used with the force of polite imperatives<sup>1</sup> and in making suggestions: e.g.

आप मुझे पत्र लिखें *āp mujhe patr likhēñ*, Please write me a letter.

चलें? *caleñ*? Shall we go?

<sup>1</sup> Here they are close equivalents (tending to be more circumspect in force) of imperatives in *-ie*, which are introduced in Lesson VII.

5. Future: 'I shall go', etc.

Sg. 1	मैं चलूँगा <i>maim calūngā</i> , m.	चलूँगी <i>calūngī</i> , f.
2	तू चलेगा <i>tū calegā</i>	चलेगी <i>calegī</i>
3	वह चलेगा <i>vah calegā</i>	चलेगी <i>calegī</i>
Pl. 1	हम चलेंगे <i>ham caleñge</i>	चलेंगी <i>caleñgī</i>
2	तुम चलोगे <i>tum caloge</i>	चलोगी <i>calogī</i>
3	वे, आप चलेंगे <i>ve, āp caleñge</i>	चलेंगी <i>caleñgī</i>

(a) Verbs whose stem ends in *-ī* or *-ū* shorten this vowel before future inflexional endings: e.g.

मैं पिऊँगा *maim piūngā*, I shall drink

हम सिएँगे *ham sieñge*, We shall sew

वह छुएँगा *vah chuegā*, He will touch

(b) Note that future forms are derivable from subjunctives by suffixation of the adjectivally inflected element *-gā*.

(c) Both नहीं *nahīñ* and न *na* are used as negatives with future forms.

6. Imperfective, continuous, and perfective future

These forms consist of imperfective or perfective participles, or stems followed by रहा *rahā*, etc., in conjunction with future forms of होना *honā* as auxiliaries. They express likelihood that a given action may be occurring, or may have occurred: e.g.

अभी आते होंगे। *abhī āte homge*, He's probably coming now, he'll be here directly.

अभी आ रहे होंगे। *abhī ā rahe homge*, He's probably on his way now.

आप जानते होंगे। *āp jāñte homge*, I expect you know, you will know.

अभी आए होंगे। *abhī āe homge*, He must have just come.

THE EMPHATIC ENCLITICS ही *hī*, भी *bhi*

These forms are used freely in Hindi. Their function is to stress the importance of the word or syntactic group immediately preceding them in sentences.

(a) ही *hī* has restrictive force:

बनारस के लोग हिंदी ही बोलते हैं। *banāras ke log hindī hī bolte haiñ*, The people of Banaras speak Hindi (not another language).

## LESSON VI

### FURTHER USES OF से *se*

APART from its use with verbs of speaking, telling, etc., some other uses of से *se* are:

1. In the senses 'from, away from', and 'since, for' (referring to passage of past time): e.g.

दिल्ली कलकत्ते से दूर है। *dillī kalkatte se dūr hai*, Delhi is far from Calcutta.  
आप कब से यहाँ हैं? *āp kab se yahān hain?* Since when have you been here?<sup>1</sup>  
मैं एक हफ्ते से हिंदी सीख रहा हूँ। *main ek hafte se hindī sikh rahā hūm*, I've been learning Hindi for a week.<sup>1</sup>

2. In expressions of manner derived from nouns: e.g.

आसानी से *āsānī se*, with ease, easily  
आप हिंदी आसानी से सीख लेंगे। *āp hindī āsānī se sikh leṅge*, You will learn Hindi easily.<sup>2</sup>

Similarly

इस तरह से *is tarah se*, in this way  
मुश्किल से *muškīl se*, with difficulty<sup>3</sup>  
जल्दी से *jaldī se*, quickly

3. In expressions of instrumentality, means, and cause: e.g.

मैं कलम से पत्र लिखूँगा। *main qalam se patr likhūṅgā*, I shall write the letter with a pen.  
मैं मोटर से यहाँ आया। *main moṭar se yahān āyā*, I came here by car.  
वह दुख से मरा। *vah dukh se marā*, He died of grief.

4. In certain constructions expressing the idea of connection in general, either literally or figuratively: e.g.

किस्ती बल्ले से बँधी है। *kistī ballē se baṁdhī hai*, The boat is tied to the pole.

<sup>1</sup> Hindi uses the present tense verb हैं *hain*, to express the idea that the state still obtains or the action is still in progress.

<sup>2</sup> Compound verb forms such as सीख लेंगे *sikh leṅge* 'will (manage to) learn' are explained in Lesson XVII, pp. 99 f.

<sup>3</sup> This expression is also used in the sense 'scarcely', e.g.  
मैं मुश्किल से बचा *main muškīl se bacā* 'I only just escaped'.

मैं उससे डरता हूँ। *main usse darta hūm*, I am afraid of him.  
वह उससे प्यार करता है *vah usse pyār kartā hai*, He loves her.<sup>1</sup>

### FURTHER USES OF में *men*

Note that the use of में *men* in the general sense 'in, into' includes its use:

1. To express location in time, in both the senses 'in the course of' and 'after the period of': e.g.

आप एक साल में हिंदी सीख लेंगे। *āp ek sāl men hindī sikh leṅge*, You'll learn Hindi in (within) a year.  
मैं एक घंटे में तैयार हूँगा। *main ek ghāṇṭe men taiyār hūṅgā*, I'll be ready in an hour.

2. In expressions of cost of purchase: e.g.

कितने में लेंगे? पाँच रुपए में। *kitne men leṅge? pāñc rupae men*, How much will you get (take) it for? Five rupees.<sup>2</sup>  
यह घोड़ा कितने में बेचेंगे। *yah ghoṛā kitne men becheṅge?* How much will you sell this horse for?

### FURTHER USES OF पर *par*

Apart from its use in the sense 'on, on top of' पर *par* is also frequently used in the senses 'at', 'in', 'to', most often where a somewhat precise location is denoted: e.g.

वह कल घर पर था। *vah kal ghar par thā*, He was at home yesterday.  
वह दुकान पर नहीं है। *vah dūkān par nahīn hai*, He's not in the shop.  
वह दुकान पर लौटा। *vah dūkān par lauṭā*, He went back to the shop.  
मैं कल पार्टी पर जा रहा हूँ। *main kal pāṛṭī par jā rahā hūm*, I'm going to a party tomorrow.  
वह ठीक समय पर आया। *vah thīk samay par āyā*, He arrived punctually, at the right time.  
गरमियों में मैं पहाड़ पर जाऊँगा। *garimiyōn men main pahār par jāūṅgā*, In the hot weather I shall go to the hills.<sup>3</sup>

In some cases पर *par* in these senses can be replaced by the postpositions में *men*, or को *ko*.

<sup>1</sup> प्यार *pyār*, m. 'love', used with करना *karnā* to form a transitive verbal expression; for these see in due course Lesson X.

<sup>2</sup> Note रुपए *rupae*; singular collective usages are common with numerals (see p. 63), and in some other cases.

<sup>3</sup> पहाड़ *pahār*: see preceding note.

### THE POSTPOSITION तक *tak* 'up to, as far as; until; by'

तक *tak* is used with reference to both space and time: e.g.

मैं आपके गाँव तक गया, फिर यहाँ लौटा। *main āpke gāmv tak gayā, phir yahān lautā*, I went as far as your village, then came back.

मैं कल तक यहाँ रहूँगा। *main kal tak yahān rahūngā*, I shall remain here till tomorrow.

Note especially the use of तक *tak* to express the point of time *before* or *by* which an action occurs: e.g.

बच्चे अक्टूबर तक स्कूल में लौटेंगे। *bacche aktūbar tak skūl meṁ lautenge*, The children will return to school by October.

### SOME ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS

1. Oblique case nouns are frequently, as has been seen, the basis for adverbial expressions. Most of these are self-explanatory, given a knowledge of the uses of postpositions. Some adverbial expressions based on nouns which call for special comment are:

(a) Expressions whose oblique case is evident from their oblique form, or the form of associated adjectives or pronouns, and in which a postposition is usually superfluous: e.g.

सवेरे *savere*, in the morning  
 पिछले हफ्ते *pichle hafte*, last week  
 अगले महीने *agle mahine*, next month  
 अगले साल *agle sāl*, next year  
 दाहिने हाथ *dāhine hāth*, on the right hand<sup>1</sup>  
 बाएँ हाथ *bāem hāth*, on the left hand  
 उस समय *us samay*, at that time  
 उस दिन *us din*, on that day  
 इन दिनों *in dinon*, these days  
 इस तरफ़ *is taraf*, in this direction

(b) Some expressions which often involve postpositions, but may drop them in informal usage if their force in sentences is perfectly clear: e.g.

शाम (को) *śām (ko)*, in the evening<sup>2</sup>  
 रात (को) *rāt (ko)*, at night

<sup>1</sup> An oblique form दाएँ *dāem* is common colloquially alongside दाहिने *dāhine* in this and other expressions.

<sup>2</sup> को *ko* in adverbial expressions is discussed further in Lesson IX.

दिन (को) *din (ko)*, during the (middle part of the) day  
 सुबह (को) *subah (ko)*, in the morning  
 आज सुबह (को) *āj subah (ko)*, this morning  
 कल रात (को) *kal rāt (ko)*, last night  
 जल्दी (से), जल्द (से) *jaldī (se), jald (se)*, quickly  
 इस तरह (से) *is tarah (se)*, in this way

(c) Some expressions involving direct case forms, expressing duration of time: e.g.

सारा दिन *sārā din*, all day<sup>1</sup>  
 एक घंटा *ek ghaṇṭā*, for an hour.

2. Adverbial use of adjectives is quite common, and again usually self-explanatory: e.g.

आप साफ़ लिखें *āp sāf likhien*, Please write clearly.

(a) Adjectives in final -ā usually show oblique case when used as adverbs, but sometimes direct case:

कैसे *kaise*, how  
 सीधे *sidhe*, straight, directly  
 दाहिने, दाएँ *dāhine, dāem*, to, on the right  
 बाएँ *bāem*, to, on the left  
 नीचे *nīce*, below, underneath; downstairs  
 अच्छा *acchā*, well

मैं यह कैसे करूँ? *main yah kaise karūn?* How am I to do this?

वह सीधे चली, फिर दाहिने। *vah sidhe calī, phir dāhine*, She went straight ahead, then to the right.

मेरे भाई का कमरा नीचे है। *mere bhāī kā kamrā nīce hai*, My brother's room is downstairs.

वह अच्छा गाती है। *vah acchā gātī hai*, She sings well.

(b) Note that Hindi has a frequent preference for adjectival construction, where this is possible. For instance the expressions

आप कैसे हैं? *āp kaise haiṁ?* How are you? (m.)  
 आप कैसी हैं? *āp kaisī haiṁ?* (f.)

<sup>1</sup> Also सारे दिन *sāre din*.



are adjectival in construction, as the feminine concord of the second shows. Similarly note

आप अच्छी हिंदी बोलते हैं। *āp acchī hindī bolte hain*, You speak good Hindi, speak Hindi well,

and compare with the second Hindi sentence given in paragraph (a) above the following equivalent sentence, with adjectival construction of the word सीधा *sīdhā*:

वह सीधी चली, फिर दाहिने। *vah sīdhī calī, phir dāhine*.

### COMPOUND POSTPOSITIONS

1. As compound postpositions may conveniently be described certain types of adverbial expression, whose distinctive element is preceded by a simple postposition or an equivalent form. The first element of compound postpositions is usually the oblique case possessive form के/की *ke/kī*, as in के साथ *ke sāth* 'with', के पास *ke pās* 'near, beside', की तरफ *kī taraf* 'towards', etc. First and second person pronouns, whose possessive forms do not involve का *kā*, show their own possessives and not forms with का *kā* preceding the distinctive elements of compound postpositions of this type.

उसके साथ *uske sāth*, with him

मेरे साथ *mere sāth*, with me

गाँव के पास *gāmv ke pās*, near the village

आपके पास *āpke pās*, near you; in your possession

तुम्हारे पास *tumhāre pās*, near you; in your possession

आपकी तरफ *āpkī taraf*, in your direction

हमारी तरफ *hamārī taraf*, in our direction

2. Apart from these and similar forms, a very small number of postpositions showing a first element से *se* will be found:

से बाहर *se bāhar* 'outside' and से पहले *se pahle* 'before' are common, alongside के बाहर *ke bāhar* and के पहले *ke pahle*. Members of these pairs are broadly speaking interchangeable, but careful speakers of Hindi may sometimes make a distinction between them. The following pairs of sentences exemplify a distinction which is quite commonly made between the use of से बाहर *se bāhar* and के बाहर *ke bāhar*, and a less common one between से पहले *se pahle* and के पहले *ke pahle*:

मैं कल लंदन से बाहर जा रहा हूँ। *main kal landan se bāhar jā rahā hūm*, I'm going out of London tomorrow. (motion involved)

वह घर के बाहर खड़ा था। *vah ghar ke bāhar khayā thā*, He was standing outside the house. (motion not involved)

वह उससे पहले वहाँ गया था। *vah usse pahle vahām gayā thā*, He had been there before that.

मैं उसके पहले वहाँ गया था। *main uske pahle vahām gayā thā*, I went there before him.

3. The second elements of many compound postpositions occur independently as adverbs: e.g.

गाँव पास है। *gāmv pās hai*, The village is near.

वह बाहर है। *vah bāhar hai*, He's outside; he's abroad.

वह साथ आया। *vah sāth āyā*, He accompanied (us, me, etc.)

मैं पहले वहाँ रहता था। *main pahle vahām raktā thā*, I used to live there formerly.

Note the two forms बाद *bād* and बाद में *bād meṁ* 'afterwards', connected with के बाद *ke bād* 'after'; the former is common in expressions of time containing nouns, e.g. एक महीने बाद *ek mahīne bād* 'a month later'.

4. Certain compound postpositions based on feminine nouns, and therefore characteristically showing की *kī* as first element, are to be compared with expressions showing के *ke* as first element when an adjective is associated with the noun: e.g.

की तरफ *kī taraf*, towards

but

के दाहिनी तरफ *ke dāhīnī taraf*, on the right-hand side of

### SOME EXPRESSIONS OF WISHING

The verb चाहना *cāhnā* 'wish' is used with a preceding infinitive in constructions expressing a person's wish to carry out an action: e.g.

मैं दिल्ली में रहना चाहता हूँ। *main dillī meṁ rahnā cāhtā hūm*, I want to live in Delhi.

### VOCABULARY

हफ्ता *ḥaftā*, m., week

महीना *mahīnā*, m., month

साल *sāl*, m., year

घंटा *ghaṇṭā*, m., hour

मिनट *minat*, m., minute

आसानी *āsānī*, f., ease

तरह †*tarah*, f., way, manner  
 मुश्किल †*mushkil*, f., difficulty; adj., difficult  
 जल्दी †*jaldī*, f., haste, speed; adv., जल्दी (से) *jaldi (se)*, quickly; soon  
 जल्द †*jald*, f., haste, speed; adv., जल्द (से) *jald (se)*, quickly; soon  
 मोटर *moṭar*, f., car (synonyms कार *kār*, f.; गाड़ी *gāṛī*, f.)  
 दुःख *dukh*, m., grief  
 किस्ती †*kisṭī*, f., (small) boat [कस्ती *kasṭī*]  
 बल्ला *ballā*, m., pole  
 घोड़ा *ghoṛā*, m., horse  
 दुकान *dukān*, f., shop [दुकान *dukān*]  
 समय *samay*, m., time<sup>1</sup>  
 पहाड़ *pahār*, m., mountain, hill  
 तरफ †*taraf*, f., direction, side  
 हाथ *hāth*, m., hand  
 शाम *śām*, f., evening, late afternoon  
 रात *rāt*, f., night  
 सवेरा *saverā*, m., morning  
 सुबह †*subah*, f., morning  
 लंदन *landan*, m., London  
 खिड़की *khiṛkī*, f., window  
 सड़क *saṛak*, f., street, road  
 खाना *khānā*, m., food  
 काम *kām*, m., work  
 रेल *rel*, f., railway train; रेल से *rel se*, by train  
 जहाज *jahāz*, m., ship  
 हवा †*havā*, f., air; wind  
 हवाई जहाज *havāi jahāz*, m., aeroplane  
 हिंदुस्तान †*hindustān*, m., India  
 दूर *dūr*, f., distance; adj., distant;  
 कितनी दूर *kitnī dūr*, how far?  
 साफ़ *sāf*, clean; clear

तैयार *taiyār*, ready  
 दाहिना *dāhinā*, right (hand);  
 के दाहिनी (दाईं) तरफ़ *ke dāhinī (dāim) taraf*, on the right-hand side of  
 बायाँ *bāyān*, left (hand); के बाईं तरफ़ *ke bāim taraf*, on the left-hand side of  
 सीधा *sīdhā*, direct, straight  
 नीचा *nīcā*, low  
 अगला *aglā*, next  
 पिछला *pichlā*, last  
 काफी *kāfī*, adv., quite, fairly; adj., a fair amount of (invariable)  
 मरना *marnā*, die  
 बँधना *bandhnā*, be tied  
 डरना *ḍarnā*, fear  
 बचना *bacnā*, be safe, saved  
 बेचना *becnā*, sell  
 लौटना *lauṭnā*, return  
 चाहना *cāhnā*, wish  
 ठहरना *ṭhaharṇā*, remain, stay, wait  
 के साथ *ke sāth*, with, together with  
 के पास *ke pās*, near, beside  
 की तरफ़ *kī †taraf*, towards; to (in certain cases, see p. 50)  
 के/से बाहर *ke/se bāhar*, outside  
 के अंदर *ke †andar*, inside  
 के/से पहले *ke/se pahle*, before (time)  
 के बाद *ke bād*, after  
 के सामने *ke sāmne*, in front of  
 के पीछे *ke piche*, behind  
 के नीचे *ke nīce*, below, underneath  
 के ऊपर *ke ūpar*, above, on top of  
 के लिए *ke lie*, for  
 के बारे में *ke बारे में*, about, concerning  
 फिर *phir*, again, then, next

<sup>1</sup> Final -ay of the script represents ai (pronounced either as a monophthong or a diphthong, see p. xiv).

## EXERCISE 11

कागज़ पुस्तकों के नीचे है। खिड़की आपके पीछे है। वह बाहर बँधी है। मैं उसके पहले यहाँ पहुँचा। पहले मैं एक गाँव में रहता था। मैं उससे इसके बारे में पूछूँगा। दिल्ली आगरे से कितनी दूर है? क्या हम दस मिनट में चलें? एक लड़की खिड़की पर खड़ी थी। उस समय मैं एक पुस्तक पढ़ रहा था। मैं अगले साल तक हिंदी सीखना चाहता हूँ। सड़क के दाहिनी तरफ़ एक बड़ी इमारत है। इन दिनों खाना सस्ता नहीं है। मैं कल रात को मकान के अंदर ही सोया था।

## EXERCISE 12

I came with him. He came with me. He is doing this work for us. I waited for her in Delhi until yesterday. My brothers are standing in front of the house. Previously I lived in Delhi. Delhi is quite near<sup>1</sup> our town. Your village is also nearby. I've been here since yesterday. You are learning Hindi very quickly. I shall go by train and return by car. I want to go to London by aeroplane.

<sup>1</sup> के काफी पास *ke kāfī pās*; note word order.

## LESSON VII

### ABSOLUTIVES

By adding the suffixes कर *kar* or के *ke* to a verb stem a form answering functionally to such English expressions as 'having done', 'having slept', but also in various cases to present participial forms such as 'doing', 'sleeping' is obtained. This absolutive form is of very frequent use, and may feature in translation equivalents of a large variety of English expressions: e.g.

हम आगरे जाकर ताज महल देखें। *ham āgre jākar tāj mahl dekhem*, Let's go to Agra and see the Taj Mahal.

मैं हिंदी सीखकर ही भारत जाऊंगा। *main hindī sikhkar hī bhārat jāūngā*, I shall go to India only after I've learned Hindi.

वह बचकर भाग गए। *vah bachkar bhāg gae*, He escaped safely (he, being safe, fled).<sup>1</sup>

हाथी झूमकर चलता है। *hāthī jhūmkar caltā hai*, An elephant sways as it walks.

(a) Absolutes can be formed with either suffix for every verb except करना *karnā*, which makes only करके *karke*. The के *ke* forms are very common colloquially, but more formal Hindi (written and spoken) prefers those with कर *kar*. The suffix कर *kar* is often written and printed detached from its stem.

(b) In informal speech the unit करके *karke* is often found following a verb stem. Sometimes a slight difference of sense is expressed by this usage.

हम यहाँ आ करके बैठ गए। *ham yahām ā karke baiṭh gae*, We made our way here, got here, and sat down.<sup>2</sup>

(c) The subject implied in an absolutive form is generally the same as that of the main verb in its sentence, but not invariably. The following sentences are both good Hindi:

हम इस रेस्टोरेंट में जाकर काफी पिएँ। *ham is restorant meṁ jākar kāfī piem*, Let's go into this restaurant and have coffee.

<sup>1</sup> Compound verb forms such as भाग गए *bhāg gae* 'fled' are explained in Lesson XVII.

<sup>2</sup> बैठ गए *baiṭh gae* 'sat down'; compound verb.

वहीं बैठकर बातें होंगी। *vahīm baiṭhkar bātem hōngī*, We'll sit there and have a talk.<sup>1</sup>

Unrelated absolutes of this kind are not normal with personal sentence subjects. They are very common in passive constructions.<sup>2</sup>

(d) The verb stem itself is often used with the force of an absolutive, particularly in conjunction with following verbal forms. Note especially the collocations ले जाना *le jānā* and ले चलना *le calnā* 'take away (having taken, go)'; and ले आना *le ānā* 'bring (having taken, come)'.

वह उठकर दूसरी कुर्सी पर जा बैठा। *vah uṭhkar dūsarī kursī par jā baiṭhā*, He got up and went and sat on another chair.

हम ये सब चीजें ले जाएँगे। *ham ye sab cīzē le jāēngē*, We shall take away all these things.

वह अमर का हाथ पकड़ कमरे में ले गया। *vah amar kā hāth pakar kamre meṁ le gayā*, Taking Amar by the hand he led (him) into the room.<sup>3</sup>

(e) Absolutes are negatived with preceding न *na*: e.g.

आप बनारस न जाकर पहले इलाहाबाद जाएँ। *āp banāras na jākar pahle ilāhābād jāem*, Go to Allahabad first rather than Banaras.

(f) Note the use of होकर *hokar* in the special sense 'via': e.g.

मैं बनारस होकर यहाँ आया। *main banāras hokar yahām āyā*, I came here via Banaras.

### IMPERATIVE FORMS

Most of the different forms by means of which commands and requests are transmitted are listed here. It is convenient to call these collectively 'imperative forms', even though some of them express ideas very different from that of 'command', and can be more closely equated with subjunctives in force. The use of subjunctives in making requests and suggestions has already been noted in Lesson V.

<sup>1</sup> वहीं *vahīm* = वहाँ *vahām* + ही *hī*; see Lesson XXIII, p. 144. बात *bāt*, f., essentially 'something said', as here, but also used in the sense 'matter, concern'.

<sup>2</sup> See in due course Lesson XIX, p. 116, and Supplement II, p. 174.

<sup>3</sup> Use of the stem absolutive पकड़ *pakar*, rather than पकड़कर *pakarkar*, in this sentence is the subject of a note in Supplement II, p. 175.

1. The form used to make requests to persons whom one would address with the pronoun आप *āp*. It shows the suffix *-ie* added to the verb stem, and is usually negated with न *na* (sometimes colloquially with मत *mat*). Stems in *-ū* shorten this vowel to *-u* before *-ie*.

और खाइए! *aur khāie!* Please have some more!<sup>1</sup>

वहाँ न जाइए! *vahān na jāie!* Don't go there!

उसे न छुइए! *use na chuie!* Don't touch that!

(a) Irregular are the *-ie* forms of

करना *karnā*: कीजिए *kājie*

लेना *lenā*: लीजिए *lijie*

देना *denā*: दीजिए *dijie*

पीना *pīnā*: पीजिए *pījie*

(b) There is no real lexical equivalent of the word 'please' in Hindi, though of course periphrases, such as मेहरबानी करके *†mehrbānī karke* 'by your kindness', are available for formal use and where a definite favour is involved. They need not be used otherwise.<sup>2</sup>

Similarly the expression 'thank you' is not fully answered to by any Hindi expression. If one is under a definite obligation, तुकिया *tukriyā* or the expression (आपकी) मेहरबानी (*āpki*) *†mehrbānī* can be used. Formal Hindi has the expression धन्यवाद *dhanyavād*.

2. The form used to give directions, make requests, etc., to persons whom one would address with the pronoun तुम *tum*. It shows the suffix *-o* added to the verb stem, and is usually negated by placing मत *mat* before or after the stem (the latter is a more affective usage than the former). Stems in *-ū*, *-ī* shorten the vowels before *-o*.

मत भूलो! *mat bhūlo*, Don't forget!

भूलो मत! *bhūlo mat*, Don't you forget!

यह पानी मत पियो। *yah pānī mat pio*, Don't drink this water.

3. The form associated with the pronoun तू *tū*, and used commonly in addressing young children; otherwise expressive of intimacy, or condescension, anger, contempt, etc. It consists of the verb stem alone, and is usually negated with मत *mat*.

<sup>1</sup> और *aur* is stressed.

<sup>2</sup> For another of these expressions see Supplement III, p. 179. The first vowel of the word मेहरबानी *mehrbānī* is usually short [e].

4. The infinitive, which used as an imperative implies less of a specific, immediate request than imperatives in *-o*, and is applicable more to impending events not directly visualized, generalized situations, and precepts, etc. It is frequent in giving general directions to persons whom one would address with तुम *tum*. It is negated with either न *na* or मत *mat*, preceding it.

तुम मुझे पत्र जल्दी लिखना। *tum mujhe patr jaldī likhnā*, Write me a letter soon (some time soon).

The infinitive is also used to express sudden or urgent command, in which honorific gradation is not considered; e.g.

बचना *bacnā!* Look out!

5. A form showing the extended suffix *-iegā* added to the verb stem. This is in frequent use in आप *āp* contexts, and also occurs in तुम *tum* contexts. Its chief functions are to emphasize that requests are not made with an air of authority, or to minimize the reality of such authority; it also often occurs where requests or commands do not require immediate compliance but relate to future time.

आप कुछ बोलिएगा? *āp kuch boliegā?* Would you (be so good as to) say something?<sup>1</sup>

बिल दीजिएगा। *bil dijegā*, Would you give me the bill, please?

आप उससे यह कल पूछिएगा। *āp usse yah kal pūchiegā*, Ask him this tomorrow.

Note that although these forms can be used in तुम *tum* contexts (as in the second example) the second person pronoun तुम *tum* itself cannot be expressed with them. This is because historically they are third person, not second person, forms.

## VOCABULARY

हाथी *hāthī*, m., elephant

बात *bāt*, f., thing said; matter, concern

अलमारी *almārī*, f., cupboard

चीज *†ciz*, f., thing

बाजार *bāzār*, m., bazaar

आम *ām*, m., mango

देखना *dekhnā*, see

भागना *bhāgnā*, run away, flee

भ्रमना *jhūmnā*, sway

ले जाना *le jānā*, take away

ले आना *le ānā*, bring

पकड़ना *pakarnā*, seize

खाना *khānā*, cat; food (m.);

खाना खाना *khānā khānā*, have

in meal

<sup>1</sup> कुछ *kuch* 'something, some'; this word is discussed in Lesson VIII.

रखना <i>rakhnā</i> , put, place; keep	दूसरा <i>dūsra</i> , second; other
सुनना <i>sunnā</i> , hear	आहिस्ता <i>āhistā</i> , आहिस्ते <i>āhiste</i> , adv., slowly
उठना <i>uthnā</i> , rise, get up	
और <i>aur</i> , (when stressed) extra, additional; adv., additionally	बिल <i>bill</i> , m., bill (account)

## EXERCISE 13

मैं खाना खाकर उसे पत्र लिखूंगा। आप भारत जाकर क्या करेंगे? वह सब चीजें अलमारी के अंदर रखकर कमरे से बाहर गया। रामाधीन, बाजार जाकर चार ग्राम ले आओ। वह पुस्तक लेकर बाहर गया। सुनिए, यह दिल्ली की गाड़ी है? आहिस्ता बोलिए!

## EXERCISE 14

You'll learn<sup>1</sup> Hindi quickly when you go to India. He brought this book from India. I went by plane, via Bombay. Please do this work now. Please sit in<sup>2</sup> this chair. Please give me some more!

<sup>1</sup> Use the compound verb form सीख लेंगे *sikh lenge*, not the simple form सीखेंगे *sikhenge*. This usage is explained in Lesson XVII.

<sup>2</sup> पर *par*.

## LESSON VIII

## THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE

कुछ *kuch* 'something, some'

THIS form is invariable.

उसके बारे में मुझे कुछ बताइए। *uske बारे में मुझे कुछ बताइए*, Please tell me something about it.

मैं कुछ हिंदी जानता हूँ। *main kuch hindi jantā hūn*, I know some Hindi.

मेज़ पर कुछ पुस्तकें पड़ी हैं। *mez par kuch pusthen paṛī haiṁ*, There are some books lying on the table.

तालाब में कुछ पानी नहीं है। *tālāb mein kuch pānī nahīn hai*, There is no water in the tank.

(a) Note especially, in comparison with the last example, the collocation कुछ नहीं *kuch nahīn* as translation equivalent of 'nothing': e.g.

मैं उसके बारे में कुछ नहीं जानता। *main uske बारे में कुछ नहीं जानता*, I know nothing, don't know anything about it.

(b) Some other common collocations of कुछ *kuch* are:

कुछ और *kuch aur*, something further, some more; something different.<sup>1</sup>

और कुछ *aur kuch*, something different; something further, some more.<sup>1</sup>

बहुत कुछ *bahut kuch*, a large amount.

सब कुछ *sab kuch*, everything.

और कुछ खाइएगा? *aur kuch khāieṅā?* Won't you have something else, some more?<sup>1</sup>

कुछ और लोग आते होंगे। *kuch aur log āte hōṅge*, A few more people will probably be coming.

मैं रोज बहुत कुछ पढ़ता हूँ। *main roz bahut kuch parhṭā hūn*, I read a lot every day.

(c) Note that कुछ *kuch* used adjectivally may sometimes be inserted in a sentence with little or no effect on an English translation equivalent. Cf. with the example above

तालाब में पानी नहीं है। *tālāb mein pānī nahīn hai*, There is no water in the tank.

<sup>1</sup> और *aur* is stressed in these as in all usages where it has the sense 'extra, additional(ly)', rather than the conjunctive sense 'and'.

## THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE

कोई *koī* 'someone, some'

Sg. Dir. कोई *koī*, m.f.  
Obl. किसी *kisī*

*koī* is not usually used as a plural<sup>1</sup>; note the related invariable form कई *kai* 'a few, several'. There also exists a somewhat uncommon oblique plural form किन्हीं *kinhīn*, of vaguer reference than कई *kai*.

दफ्तर में कोई है। *daftar mem koī hai*, There is someone in the office.

दफ्तर में कोई है? *daftar mem koī hai?* Is there anyone in the office?

किसी शहर में एक अमीर आदमी रहता था। *kisī šahr mem ek amīr ādmī rahtā thā*, There was a rich man living in a certain city.

गाँव में कोई तालाब नहीं है। *gāmv mem koī tālāb nahīn hai*, There's no tank, isn't any tank in the village.

दफ्तर में कोई नहीं है। *daftar mem koī nahīn hai*, There is no one in the office.

कई किताबें मेज पर पड़ी थीं। *kai kitābēn meṣ par paṛī thīn*, A few books were lying on the table.

(a) Note that कोई *koī* used adjectivally may sometimes be inserted in a sentence with little or no effect on an English translation equivalent. Cf. with the example above

गाँव में तालाब नहीं है। *gāmv mem tālāb nahīn hai*, 'There's no tank in the village.

(b) Note that the essential distinction between कोई *koī* and कुछ *kuch* is not that the former refers to animate beings and the latter to inanimates, but that the former particularizes, while the latter is general and partitive in force. Hence while कोई *koī* and कुछ *kuch* used pronominally do refer typically to animate beings or inanimates respectively, as adjectives they are both usable with either reference: e.g.

वह आदमी कोई साधु होगा। *vah ādmī koī sādhu hogā*, That man is probably some (kind of) holy man.

वहाँ कुछ ही आदमी थे। *vahān kuch hī ādmī the*, There were just a few men there.

गाँव में कोई तालाब नहीं है। *gāmv mem koī tālāb nahīn hai*, There's no tank in the village.

तालाब में कुछ पानी नहीं है। *tālāb mem kuch pānī nahīn hai*, There's no water in the tank.

<sup>1</sup> Except as indicated on p. 45, paragraph (c), and in Lesson XXIV, p. 148.

(c) Some other common collocations of कोई *koī* are:

कोई और *koī aur*, another, a different; someone else

और कोई *aur koī*, another, a different; someone else

Preceding numerals, in the sense 'approximately':

रास्ते में कोई दस ऊँट हैं। *rāste mem koī das ūṁṭ haiṁ*, There are a dozen or so camels in the street.

## THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE

कौन *kaun* 'who, which'

Sg. Dir.	कौन <i>kaun</i> , m.f.	Pl. Dir.	कौन <i>kaun</i> , m.f.
Obl.	किस <i>kis</i>	Obl.	किन <i>kin</i>
Object	किस <i>kise</i>	Object	किन्हें <i>kinhen</i>

यह कौन है? *yah kaun hai?* Who is this?

वह किसका मकान है? *vah kiskā makān hai?* Whose house is that?

ये कौन किताबें हैं? किसे दे रहे हैं? *ye kaun kitābēn haiṁ? kise de rahe haiṁ?*

Which books are these? Whom are you giving them to?

(a) The form कौन-सा *kaun-sā* usually somewhat emphasizes the existence of various possibilities or choices, but a distinction between कौन-सा *kaun-sā* and कौन *kaun* is not regularly maintained, especially colloquially. कौन-सा *kaun-sā* shows inflexion of the suffixed particle सा *sā* as an adjective in -ā.

आज कौन-सा दिन है? *āj kaun-sā din hai?* What day is today?

आप कौन-सी किताब पढ़ रहे हैं? *āp kaun-sī kitāb paṛh rahe haiṁ?* Which book are you reading? (of a syllabus, a certain author, etc.)

(b) कौन *kaun* and its oblique case forms are very frequently reduplicated, with a distributive connotation<sup>1</sup>: e.g.

आप किन किन से बोले? *āp kin kin se bole?* Who did you speak to? (with what different people—honorific)

वहाँ कौन कौन थे। *vahān kann kaun the?* Who were there?

## THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE

क्या *kyā* 'what'

The pronominal usage and question-marking force of क्या *kyā* were noted in Lesson I. Note further that क्या *kyā* occurs only in direct case, singular

<sup>1</sup> See further Lesson XXIII, p. 139.

and plural. To express its sense in other cases the appropriate forms of कौन *kaun* are used.

यह क्या है? *yah kyā hai?* What is this?

वे किसके बारे में बोल रहे थे? *ve kiske बारे में bol rahe the?* What were they talking about?

(a) Adjectival क्या *kyā* contrasts with कौन *kaun* in the same way as कुछ *kuch* with कोई *koī*. Compare the sentences

ये कौन किताबें हैं? *ye kaun kitābēn haiṁ?* Which books are these?

यह क्या चीज़ है? *yah kyā ciz hai?* What (sort of) thing is this?

(b) क्या *kyā* is very frequently reduplicated: e.g.

आप उनसे क्या क्या कहेंगे? *āp unse kyā kyā kahenge?* What will you say to them? (what various things)

### THE RELATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE

जो *jo* 'the one' who, which'

Sg.	Dir.	जो <i>jo</i> , m.f.	Pl.	Dir.	जो <i>jo</i> , m.f.
	Obl.	जिस <i>jis</i>		Obl.	जिन <i>jin</i>
	Object	जिसे <i>jise</i>		Object	जिन्हें <i>jinhēn</i>

This pronoun and adjective occurs frequently in relative clauses of complex sentences,<sup>1</sup> linked syntactically with a demonstrative pronoun or other word (the 'correlative') in the principal clause. Note that where an equivalent English sentence shows the definite article 'the' with its subject, the जो *jo* clause commonly precedes in Hindi, and the correlative is a part of the pronoun वह *vah*; and where it shows the indefinite article 'a', 'an', the जो *jo* clause follows, its correlative in the first clause then being a noun.

जो कहता हूँ, वह सच है। *jo kahtā hūṁ, vah sac hai*, What I say is the truth.  
जो लाल गाड़ी यहाँ खड़ी है, वह मेरी है। *jo lāl gāṛī yahāṁ khārī hai, vah merī hai*, 'The red car standing there is mine.

<sup>1</sup> Complex sentences are expansions of simple sentences, consisting of one or more dependent, incomplete utterances of the form of simple sentences linked to one complete utterance of that form. These utterances may be termed subordinate and principal clauses respectively. Subordinate clauses containing relative जो *jo* may be termed relative clauses; other subordinate clauses frequently contain subordinate conjunctions identifying their function. See Lessons XVI and XX, in due course.

मैं एक आदमी से बात कर रहा था जो कल भारत जाएगा। *maim ek ādmī se bāt kar rahā thā jo kal bhārat jāegā*, I was talking to a man who is going to India tomorrow.

मैं जिस आदमी से बात कर रहा था, वह कल भारत जाएगा। *maim jis ādmī se bāt kar rahā thā, vah kal bhārat jāegā*, The man I was talking to is going to India tomorrow.

The relative often stands first in its clause, even where it is not the subject of its clause. An initial relative and any noun attached to it gains somewhat in emphasis at the expense of a non-initial clause subject. Compare with the last example above the following sentence, with slightly altered emphasis:

जिस आदमी से मैं बात कर रहा था, वह कल भारत जाएगा। *jis ādmī se maim bāt kar rahā thā, vah kal bhārat jāegā*, The man I was talking to is going to India tomorrow.

### VOCABULARY

तालाब <i>tālāb</i> , m., tank	आरामदेह <i>ārāmdēh</i> , comfortable
साधु <i>sādhu</i> , m., holy man	हर <i>har</i> , each, every
रास्ता <i>rāstā</i> , m., road, street	मजबूत <i>mazbūt</i> , strong (of objects)
ऊँट <i>ūṁṭ</i> , m., camel	सात <i>sāt</i> , seven
ओर <i>or</i> , f., direction, side; की ओर <i>kī or</i> , towards, to; की ओर देखना <i>kī or dekhvā</i> , look at, watch	आठ <i>āṭh</i> , eight
तबीयत <i>tabiyat</i> , f., state of health; disposition; तबीयत ठीक होना <i>tabiyat thīk honā</i> , be well	नौ <i>nau</i> , nine
आराम <i>ārām</i> , m., comfort	दस <i>das</i> , ten
सच <i>sac</i> , m., truth	बताना <i>batānā</i> , tell, inform (used in construction with को <i>ko</i> ) <sup>1</sup>
अमीर <i>āmīr</i> , rich	बात करना <i>bāt karnā</i> , बातें करना <i>bāṭēn karnā</i> (se), talk (to)
गरीब <i>garīb</i> , poor	रोज़ <i>roz</i> , m., day; adv., daily
	सुनिए <i>sunie</i> , excuse me (in attracting a person's attention)

### EXERCISE 15

कोई है? मैं उसके बारे में कुछ नहीं कहूँगा। कोई आठ आदमी उसके साथ पहुँचे। कई पुस्तकें मेज़ के नीचे पड़ी थीं। कुछ और किताबें मेज़ पर थीं। मेरे कमरे में कोई कुर्सी नहीं है। ये किताबें किस किस की हैं? आप इसके बारे में किससे कहेंगे? जो किताब मैं

<sup>1</sup> Bracketed forms following vocabulary entries will be used from this point onwards to indicate their construction, where this seems advisable.

पढ़ रहा हूँ, वह मेज़ पर है। मैं जिस आदमी की ओर देख रहा था, वह अभी आदर गया है। मैं जिस कमरे में काम करूँगा, वह बहुत आरामदेह है। आप इस देश में कब से हैं और कब तक यहाँ रहेंगे? आप हिंदी क्यों नहीं बोलते?

## EXERCISE 16

I shall live in some village. No one knows Hindi here. I shall ask him something about that. Several men came here yesterday. Some people go there every year. Who are these men? Whom are you going to give these books to? The men who came here yesterday are my friends. The chair I'm sitting on is quite sturdy. The boy whose book is on the table is my son. What town does he live in? Were you unwell yesterday? Excuse me, are you Rādhā's sister?

<sup>1</sup> The name is unchanged in oblique case; see p. 2, paragraph (d).

## LESSON IX

## THE POSTPOSITION को

THE general function of this postposition may be described as that of a marker or specifier of oblique case in a preceding form. Four applications of this function are considered here.

1. को *ko* occurs in association with direct objects which are individualized to some extent, and to which a degree of contextual importance is thus attached; hence usually where direct objects refer to human beings, and certain animals, and quite frequently where they refer to inanimate objects. Such words may be called definite direct objects.

औरत बच्चे को बुला रही है। *aurat bacche ko bulā rahī hai*, The woman is calling the child, a child.

हिंदी में इसको क्या कहते हैं? *hindī meṁ isko kyā kahṭe hain?* What is this called in Hindi? (what do they say this to be)

उन पत्रों को पढ़िए। *un patrōṁ ko parhīe*, Please read those letters.

दर्जी को बुलाओ। *darzī ko bulāo*, Call the tailor.

(a) Note that the direct case is normally used to denote direct objects not of any individual importance in a given context, unless this might lead to ambiguity. These objects may be called indefinite direct objects.

ये चिट्ठियाँ पढ़िए। *ye ciṭṭhiyāṁ parhīe*, Please read these letters.

हम हिंदी सीख रहे हैं। *ham hindī sikh rahe hain*, We're learning Hindi.

In practice words used in the direct case in this way usually have inanimate reference, but not invariably so. Occupational names, for instance, occur quite commonly as direct objects in direct case in sentences where the individuality of their referend is not emphasized.

दर्जी बुलाओ। *darzī bulāo*, Call a tailor.

Compare also with the first example in this section the following sentence, in which the direct object is felt as not at all individualized:

औरत बच्चा बुला रही है। *aurat bacchā bulā rahī hai*, The woman is calling a child.

2. को *ko* occurs in association with indirect objects: e.g.

उस आदमी को तीन पुस्तकें दीजिए। *us ādmī ko tīn pusthakē dījīe*, Please give that man three books.

मुझे पत्र लिखिए। *mujhe patr likhīe*, Please write me a letter.



3. को *ko* occurs frequently as a marker of adverbial expressions. Additional examples to those noted in Lesson VI are

बुधवार को आओ । *budhvār ko āo*, Come on Wednesday.

वह अपने देश को लौट गया । *vah apne deś ko lauṭ gayā*, He went back to his country.<sup>1</sup>

(a) In connection with the last example, note that sometimes place to which motion occurs is best indicated by a noun in the oblique case without a following postposition: e.g.

वह हिंदुस्तान लौट गया । *vah hindustān lauṭ gayā*, He went back to India.

वह अपने घर लौट गया । *vah apne ghar lauṭ gayā*, He returned to his home.

This is so chiefly when the place concerned is a geographical locality denoted by a place-name, or is otherwise felt as a specific destination. But it is rarely wrong to use को *ko* in such locutions, though in certain cases if a postposition is used में *meṁ*, पर *par* or की ओर *kī or*, की तरफ *kī taraf* may be preferred: e.g.

वह दफ्तर (में) गया । *vah daftar (meṁ) gayā*, He went to the office (if में *meṁ* is used this sentence may also mean 'he went into the office').

कमरे (में) जाएंगे? *kamre (meṁ) jāenge?* Are you going to your room?

वह दूकान पर लौट गया । *vah dūkān par lauṭ gayā*, He went back to the shop.

वह कार की ओर चला । *vah kār kī or calā*, He went (over) to the car (also 'he went towards the car').

4. को *ko* occurs in association with a noun or pronoun, to indicate a close connection in the sentence structure between it and another noun, or sometimes an adjective.<sup>2</sup> The sentence verb is often होना *honā*, and in this case the noun or adjective usually denotes an abstract quality or condition characterizing the referend of the word with which को *ko* occurs: e.g.

मुझे बहुत खुशी है । *mujhe bahut khushī hai*, I'm delighted, very pleased.

मुझे बड़ी प्रसन्नता है । *mujhe barī prasannatā hai*, I'm delighted, very pleased.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> For अपना *apnā* 'one's own' see Lesson X; for the compound verb form लौट गया *lauṭ gayā* 'returned' see Lesson XVII.

<sup>2</sup> Only a few adjectives, none of which are in common use attributively (preceding nouns), are found in this construction; all are loanwords.

<sup>3</sup> बड़ा *barā* is often used (in concord) as an equivalent of adjectival or adverbial बहुत *bahut*. Note that the above sentence and the preceding one are often used in the sense 'I'm very pleased to meet you'.

मुझे बहुत बड़ी खुशी है । *mujhe bahut barī khushī hai*, I'm very pleased indeed.

मुझे आशा है कि . . . *mujhe āśā hai ki . . .*, I hope that . . .

मुझे अफसोस है कि . . . *mujhe afsos hai ki . . .*, I'm sorry that . . .

उसको मालूम है कि . . . *usko mālūm hai ki . . .*, He knows that . . .<sup>1</sup>

उसको मालूम होता है कि . . . *usko mālūm hotā hai ki . . .*, He thinks, it seems to him that . . .

हमें समय नहीं है । *hamēn samay nahīn hai*, We haven't time.

उसे एक बेटा हुआ है । *use ek betā huā hai*, A son has been born to him.

मुझे हिंदी आती है । *mujhe hindī ātī hai*, I can speak, know Hindi.

### THE POSTPOSITION के पास *ke pās*

This compound postposition means basically 'beside'. Its use in the sense 'near' has been noted above<sup>2</sup>; by extension it is also used regularly to indicate possession of ordinary chattels which are in a sense 'with one', and also frequently in expressions which describe motion towards a person: e.g.

उसका मकान नदी के पास है । *uskā makān nadi ke pās hai*, His house is near the river.

उसके पास पैसा नहीं है । *uske pās paisā nahīn hai*, He has no money.

आपके पास कितनी पुस्तकें हैं? *āpke pās kitnī pustakē hain?* How many books have you got?

मेरे पास एक गाड़ी है । *mere pās ek gārī hai*, I own a car.

मैं डाक्टर के पास जाऊँगा । *maim dāktar ke pās jāūngā*, I shall go to the doctor.

(a) Sometimes colloquially this construction will occur where the construction with को *ko* noted above would be expected: e.g. in such an expression as

मेरे पास वक्त नहीं है । *mere pās vaqt nahīn hai*, I haven't time.

### THE POSTPOSITION का *kā* (contd.)

Nouns and pronouns with the postposition का *kā* (and equivalent possessive personal pronouns) are common in possessive expressions which describe ownership of such things as houses, land, etc.; and also

<sup>1</sup> The form मालूम *mālūm* is in origin an Arabic passive participle meaning 'known'. Note the sense distinction in the two examples given containing it.

<sup>2</sup> See Lesson VI, p. 34.

are found in expressions describing relationship to other people and one's 'possession' of parts of one's body. In all these types of expression what is denoted by the use of का *kā* is a permanent, characteristic or non-fortuitous type of relationship, by contrast with the more 'contingent' possession expressed by use of के पास *ke pās*: e.g.

जमीनदार के दो गाँव थे । *zamindār ke do gāmv the*, The zamindar owned two villages.

मेरी एक बड़ी जायदाद थी । *merī ek baṛī jāyādād thī*, I used to have a large estate.

मेरी एक बहन है, जो ... *merī ek bahn hai, jo ...*, I have a sister who ...  
उस आदमी की सिर्फ एक ही आँख है । *us ādmī kī sirf ek hī ānkh hai*, That man has only one eye.

(a) In the first two examples cited above, expressing ownership, के पास *ke pās* might occur rather than का *kā*, and the implication of the sentences would be slightly different accordingly.

(b) In English idiom possession is sometimes attributed to inanimate objects; sentences of this type often have Hindi translation equivalents showing का *kā*<sup>1</sup>: e.g.

उस संदूक का कोई ताला नहीं है । *us sandūq kā koī tālā nahīn hai*, That box has no lock.

(c) Note the use of का *kā* to form adjectival phrases in sentences such as the following:

मुझे हिंदी की एक पुस्तक दीजिए । *mujhe hindī kī ek pustak dijiye*, Please give me a Hindi book.

जून में आप यहाँ के मौसम से परेशान होंगे । *jūn meṁ āp yahān ke mausam se parēśān hōngē*, In June you'll find the weather here trying.

पहले कलकत्ता भारत का सबसे बड़ा शहर था । *pahle kalkattā bhārat kā sabse baṛā šahr thā*, Formerly Calcutta was the largest city in India.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> में *meṁ* is also common in such sentences, e.g.

आपके मकान में कितनी खिड़कियाँ हैं? *āpke makān meṁ kitnī khirkiyāṁ haiṁ?* How many windows has your house?

मेरे सिर में दर्द है । *mere sir meṁ dard hai*, I've got a headache.

<sup>2</sup> The expression सबसे बड़ा *sabse baṛā* 'biggest' is explained in Lesson XVI.

मकान के पीछे का खेत मेरे भाई का है । *makān ke pīche kā khet mere bhāī kā hai*, The field behind the house belongs to my brother.  
गाँव के लोग । *gāmv ke log*, village people

(d) Some usages of masculine singular oblique case possessive forms, not in concord, also occur colloquially. These are really adverbial usages. They are sometimes near equivalents to usages of का *kā* in concord, or equivalents to usages of को *ko*: e.g.

उसके एक बहन है । *uske ek bahu hai*, He's got a sister.

मेरे चोट लगी । *mere coṭ lagī*, I got hurt.<sup>1</sup>

Cf. the following sentences:

उसकी एक बहन है, जो ... *uski ek bahn hai, jo ...*, He has a sister, who ...  
मुझे चोट लगी । *mujhe coṭ lagī*, I got hurt.

But adverbial usages of possessive forms often differ in sense from usages of का *kā* in concord. Cf. the following two sentences:

सिर पर उसके एक दुपट्टा है । *sir par uske ek dupaṭṭā hai*, Over (her) head she has a shawl.

सिर पर उसका एक दुपट्टा है । *sir par uskā ek dupaṭṭā hai*, Over (her) head she has one of her shawls.

In expressions of relationship, adverbial construction is usual if the relationship is not specified in some way; cf. the above examples, and

उसके एक बहन है, और दुनिया में कोई और नहीं । *uske ek bahn hai, aur duniyā meṁ koī aur nahīn*, He's got a sister, and no one else in the (whole) world.<sup>2</sup>

## VOCABULARY

दर्जी *darzī*, m., tailor

चिट्ठी *ciṭṭhī*, f., letter

खुशी *khushī*, f., happiness, pleasure

प्रसन्नता *prasannatā*, f., pleasure

आशा *āśā*, f., hope

अफसोस *afsos*, m., regret

नदी *nadī*, f., river

पैसा *paisā*, m., pice (1/100 rupee); money (often pl.)

डाक्टर *ḍāktar*, m., doctor

वक्त *vakt*, m., time

जमीनदार *zamindār*, m., zamindar

जायदाद *jāyādād*, f., estate (land)

आँख *ānkh*, f., eye

<sup>1</sup> The uses of लगना *lagna* 'to be applied' are discussed in Lesson XXI.  
चोट *coṭ* (f.) means 'blow'.

<sup>2</sup> The second और *aur* is stressed; see p. 43, n. 1.

सिर <i>sir</i> , m., head	परेशान <i>†paresān (se)</i> , troubled (by)
ताला <i>tālā</i> , m., lock	मालूम <i>†mālūm</i> , known; मुझे मालूम है <i>mujhe mālūm hai</i> , I know;
दर्द <i>dard</i> , m., pain	मुझे मालूम होता है <i>mujhe mālūm hotā hai</i> , it seems to me
खेत <i>khet</i> , m., field	
चोट <i>cof</i> , f., blow, knock	बुलाना <i>bulānā</i> , call
दुपट्टा <i>dupaṭṭā</i> , m., shawl	पहचानना <i>pahcānānā</i> , recognize
दुनिया <i>†duniyā</i> , f., world	ढूँढ़ना <i>dhūṇḍhānā</i> , look for, search out (with direct object)
बुधवार <i>budhvār</i> , m., Wednesday	सिर्फ <i>†sirf</i> , only
शुक्रवार <i>śukravār</i> , m., Friday	कि <i>ki</i> , conj., that
मतलब <i>matlab</i> , m., intention, purpose	किसान <i>kisān</i> , m., farmer
भारतवर्ष <i>bhāratvarṣ</i> , m., India	

## EXERCISE 17

वह मुझे नहीं पहचानता । मैं उन पत्रों को लिखूँगा । मैं कल आपको किताबें दूँगा । मैं शुक्रवार को घर जा रहा हूँ । क्या आप उनको जानते हैं? उस दिन मैं किताब पढ़ रहा था । आपको उससे क्या मतलब है? क्या आपके पास कमाज है? मुझे कुछ दीजिए । कलकत्ते में मेरे एक दोस्त है । उस कमरे की कितनी दीवारें हैं? मेरे पास पुस्तकें नहीं हैं ।

## EXERCISE 18

Please write us a letter. I shall tell<sup>1</sup> you something about this tomorrow. My friend will return to England next week. I'm very pleased about that. I hope you'll go to India. The farmer is looking for the horse. When are you going to your<sup>2</sup> room? He was standing beside the tree. Have you any children? I've got two sons and a daughter. My village is quite near Agra. Have you any Hindi books?

<sup>1</sup> कहना *kahnā*; or बताना *batānā* (with को *ko*).

<sup>2</sup> अपना *apnā* (see Lesson X); but the word need not be expressed here.

## LESSON X

THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE अपना *apnā* 'one's own'

1. The form अपना *apnā*, rather than any of the other pronominal possessive adjectives, is used in most cases where a second reference to a possessor is made within a simple sentence, or within one and the same clause of a complex sentence: e.g.

मैं आपको अपना पता दूँगा । *māin āpho apnā patā dūngā*, I'll give you my address.

आप मुझे अपना पता दीजिए । *āp mujhe apnā patā dijie*, Please give me your address.

आपको अपनी चीजें मिली होंगी? *āpho apnī cizēn mili hōngī?* You've found your things, I suppose?<sup>1</sup>

(a) Where the referend is in a different clause of a complex sentence अपना *apnā* is not used: e.g.

मैं उससे कहूँगा कि मेरे पिता जी कल आ रहे हैं । *māin usse kahūngā ki mere pitā jī kal ā rahe hain*, I shall tell him that my father is coming tomorrow.

(b) Where a subject pronoun is omitted as understood अपना *apnā* is the possessive used in reference to it: e.g.

मुझे अपना पता दीजिए । *mujhe apnā patā dijie*, Please give me your address.

(c) Where the second reference to the possessor is within the same syntactic unit of the sentence or clause (e.g. within a composite subject or object) अपना *apnā* is not used: e.g.

मैं और मेरी बहन घर पर होंगे । *māin aur merī bahn ghar par hōnge*, My sister and I will be at home.

मुझे और मेरी बहन को खुशी है कि . . . *mujhe aur merī bahn ko khusī hai ki . . .*, My sister and I are glad that . . .

(d) Note that अपना *apnā* refers to a subject noun or pronoun, if one is present or understood; only if a subject referend is not present or understood will it refer to an oblique case noun or pronoun. Hence the sense of such a sentence as the following is unambiguous:

<sup>1</sup> The verb मिलना *milnā* 'accrue' is introduced in Lesson XV. A word-for-word English rendering of the example is 'Your things will have accrued to you?'

आपको आपके पिता जी अपने देश का इतिहास बताएँगे। *āpko āpke pitā jī apne des kā itihās batāenge*, Your father will tell you the history of his country. (not 'your country')<sup>1</sup>

2. अपना *apnā* is also used as follows:

(a) Impersonally, where there is no referend for it in a sentence: e.g.

अपना काम अच्छी तरह करना अच्छा है। *apnā kām acchī tarah karnā acchā hai*, To do one's work well is good.<sup>2</sup>

(b) Intensively, following a possessive pronoun: e.g.

मेरी अपनी कहानी बहुत लंबी है *merī apnī kahānī bahut lambī hai*, My own story is very long.

#### VERBAL EXPRESSIONS WITH करना *karnā* and होना *honā*

Many words associate with the verbs करना *karnā* and होना *honā* to form verbal expressions, transitive and intransitive respectively. Some examples of expressions based on an adjective, e.g. बंद *band* 'closed', are:

मैं नौ बजे दरवाजा बंद करता हूँ। *main nau baje darvāzā band kartā hūm*, I close the door at nine o'clock.

दरवाजा नौ बजे बंद होता है। *darvāzā nau baje band hotā hai*, The door is closed at nine o'clock.

दरवाजा नौ बजे बंद होता था। *darvāzā nau baje band hotā thā*, The door used to be closed at nine o'clock. (a general case)

कल दरवाजा नौ बजे बंद हुआ था। *kal darvāzā nau baje band huā thā*, Yesterday the door was closed at nine o'clock. (a specific action)

(a) Compare with the above expressions usages of बंद *band* with the present and past tense forms of होना *honā*: e.g.

दरवाजा बंद है। *darvāzā band hai*, The door is closed.

दरवाजा बंद था। *darvāzā band thā*, The door was closed.

<sup>1</sup> There are, however, some cases, which need not be noted here, where ambiguities in the use of अपना *apnā* occur.

<sup>2</sup> For the use of the infinitive as a noun see Lesson XIX, pp. 119 ff.

<sup>3</sup> For expressions of time see Lesson XI, pp. 66 ff.

(b) Some similar pairs of complementary verbal expressions are given below. Note that members of some pairs have the same English translation equivalent (used transitively and intransitively).

इस्तेमाल होना <i>†istemāl honā</i> , be used	इस्तेमाल करना <i>†istemāl karnā</i> , use
शुरू होना <i>†surū honā</i> , begin	शुरू करना <i>†surū karnā</i> , begin
आरंभ होना <i>ārambh honā</i> , begin	आरंभ करना <i>ārambh karnā</i> , begin
खत्म होना <i>†khatm honā</i> , finish	खत्म करना <i>†khatm karnā</i> , finish
समाप्त होना <i>samāpt honā</i> , finish	समाप्त करना <i>samāpt karnā</i> , finish
प्राप्त होना <i>prāpt honā</i> , be available, obtained	प्राप्त करना <i>prāpt karnā</i> , obtain
पैदा होना <i>†paidā<sup>1</sup> honā</i> , be born, produced	पैदा करना <i>†paidā<sup>1</sup> karnā</i> , produce, give birth to
बिदा होना <i>bidā<sup>1</sup> honā</i> , depart	बिदा करना <i>bidā<sup>1</sup> karnā</i> , dispatch; see off
रवाना होना <i>†ravānā<sup>1</sup> honā</i> , depart	रवाना करना <i>†ravānā<sup>1</sup> karnā</i> , dispatch; see off
वापस होना <i>†vāpas honā</i> , be returned	वापस करना <i>†vāpas karnā</i> , give back
गरमियाँ अगले महीने में शुरू होंगी <i>garmiyām agle mahīne meṁ surū hongī</i> , The hot weather will begin during next month.	
छुट्टी कल खत्म हुई। <i>chutti kal khatm huī</i> , The vacation finished yesterday.	
मेरी बेटी अप्रैल में पैदा हुई। <i>merī beṭī aprail meṁ paidā huī</i> , My daughter was born in April.	
मेरी किताब जल्दी वापस कीजिए। <i>merī kitāb jaldī vāpas kijiye</i> , Please return my book quickly.	

(c) Some of the expressions (the first four pairs cited) noted in (b) above are based on nouns, and may be termed 'conjunct verbs' in that the nouns in these expressions have lost their syntactic identity, and are connected syntactically only with the following करना *karnā* or होना *honā*, with which they form enlarged verbal units. Note that these are different in their syntax from another, very large class of verbal expressions showing nouns in looser association with करना *karnā* and होना *honā*. The noun in these latter expressions can be directly associated with preceding expressions involving different postpositions (usually the possessive का *kā*). Some

<sup>1</sup> Final -ā in these words is invariable.

examples follow of verbal expressions showing nouns that can be preceded by this postposition, which of course shows normal concord:

इंतजार करना *intazār<sup>1</sup> karnā*, wait (for)

प्रतीक्षा करना *pratīkṣā karnā*, wait (for)

प्रयोग होना, करना *prayog honā, karnā*, be used, use

प्रशंसा होना, करना *praśaṃsā honā, karnā*, be praised, praise

मैं उसका इंतजार करूँगा। *maini uskā intazār karūṅgā*, I shall wait for him.

मैं उसकी प्रतीक्षा करूँगा। *maini uskī pratīkṣā karūṅgā*, I shall wait for him.

मैं दस बजे तक इंतजार करूँगा। *maini das baje tak intazār karūṅgā*, I shall wait till ten o'clock.

आजकल इस मशीन का प्रयोग होता है। *ājkal is mašīn kā prayog hotā hai*  
Nowadays this machine is used.

उसकी प्रशंसा सारे देश में हो रही है। *uskī praśaṃsā sūre deś meṁ ho rahī hai*  
He is being praised over the whole country.

(d) Some expressions based on nouns are used either with preceding का *kā* or as conjunct verbs. Examples are तलाश करना *talāś karnā* 'look for', and इस्तेमाल करना *istemāl karnā* 'use' (most commonly conjunct verbs).

मैं किताब (की) तलाश करूँगा। *maini kitāb (kī) talāś karūṅgā*, I shall look for the book.

(e) Note the adjectival use of the word खत्म *khatm* in the expression खत्म है *khatm hai* 'it's finished'. (This usage and the tendency noted in (d) above for expressions based on nouns to be used as conjunct verbs are due to influence of the adjectival type of syntax of expressions like बंद होना *band honā* on expressions based on nouns.)

(f) In sentences of neutral style and emphasis negatives usually precede verb components of conjunct verbs, but sometimes precede their noun components. Negatives used with the other types of verbal expression discussed in this section regularly precede their verb components in such sentences.

<sup>1</sup> Pronounced with unstressed *i* in second syllable in Urdu-influenced usage; less often so otherwise. Similar pronunciations are found in other Arabic loan-words originally containing the vowel sequence *i — i — a*.

मैं नौ बजे काम शुरू नहीं करता। *maini nau baje kāṁ śurū nahīn kartā*, I don't start work at nine o'clock.

मैं नौ बजे दरवाजा बंद नहीं करूँगा। *maini nau baje darvāzā band nahīn karūṅgā*, I shan't shut the door at nine o'clock.

वह मेरा इंतजार नहीं करेगा। *vah merā intazār nahīn karegā*, He won't wait for me.

## VOCABULARY

पता *patā*, m., track, trace; address

इतिहास *itihās*, m., history

कहानी *kahānī*, f., story, short story

नौ बजे *nau baje*, at nine o'clock

अप्रैल *april*, m., April

छुट्टी *chutti*, f., holiday, leave, vacation

वर्ष *varṣ*, m., year

हिंदू *hindū*, m., Hindu

ज्ञान *jñān*, m., knowledge

आना *ānā*, m., anna ( $\frac{1}{16}$  rupee, old style)

ऋग्वेद *ṛgved*, m., Rigveda

इंद्र *indra*, m., Indra

अनाज *anāj*, m., grain

लंबा *lambā*, long; tall

बंद *band*, closed

हर (एक) दिन *har (ek) dīn*, every day

तलाश करना *talāś karnā*, look for

पसंद आना *pasand ānā*, be pleasing to; मुझे... पसंद आता है *mujhe... pasand ātā hai*, I like...

गिनना *ginuā*, count

का उल्लेख होना *kā ullekh honā*, be mentioned

का इंतजार करना *kā intazār karnā*, wait for

की प्रतीक्षा करना *kī pratīkṣā karnā*, wait for

का प्रयोग करना *kā prayog karnā*, use  
की प्रशंसा करना *kī praśaṃsā karnā*, praise

अच्छी तरह, *acchī tarah*, अच्छी तरह से *acchī tarah se*, well

आजकल *ājkal*, nowadays

आम *ām*, ordinary

आम तौर पर/से *ām taur par/se*, in general, usually

ठीक वक्त पर *thīk vakt par*, at the correct time, punctually

क्योंकि *kyōnki*, because

## EXERCISE 19

वह अपनी बहन से हिंदी बोलता है। आपको अपना कमरा पसंद आता है? वह और उसकी पत्नी दोनों हर एक दिन वहाँ जाते हैं। मेरी अपनी पुस्तकें सब हिंदी की हैं। वह आज अपने देश को लौट रहा है। काम आठ बजे शुरू होता है। मैं अब काम शुरू कर रहा हूँ। अब काम खत्म करें। आप इस पुस्तक से हिंदी का कुछ ज्ञान प्राप्त करेंगे। आजकल आने इस्तेमाल नहीं होते, लेकिन गाँव के लोग अभी तक आनों में गिनते हैं। क्या ऋग्वेद में इंद्र का उल्लेख है? आप कल तक मेरी किताब वापस कीजिए। मैं रोज यहाँ उसका इंतजार करता हूँ, लेकिन आम तौर से वह ठीक वक्त पर नहीं आता।

## EXERCISE 20

He always puts his books on that table. I shall give you my book. I shall give you<sup>1</sup> back your book. He went to London yesterday because his brother was arriving from India. My wife and I hope that you will write us<sup>1</sup> a letter when you arrive home. Which month were you born in? Have you any mangoes? No, they're finished. I shall finish your book tomorrow. Why is the door shut? I was looking for<sup>2</sup> you yesterday. He set off yesterday. I shall see them off. Does your country produce a lot of grain?

<sup>1</sup> The pronoun need not be expressed here.

<sup>2</sup> Either *ढूँढ़ना* *dhūṁḍhnā* or *तलाश करना* *talāś karnā*; with a personal object, as here, the former is perhaps slightly more natural.

## LESSON XI

## NUMERALS

## 1. Cardinals

1 एक	<i>ek</i>	33 तैंतीस	<i>taimtīs</i>
2 दो	<i>do</i>	34 चौतीस	<i>cauntīs</i>
3 तीन	<i>tin</i>	35 पैंतीस	<i>paimtis</i>
4 चार	<i>cār</i>	36 छत्तीस	<i>chattīs</i>
5 पाँच	<i>pāmc</i>	37 सैंतीस	<i>saintīs</i>
6 छह, छः, छे	<i>chah, chaḥ, chai</i>	38 अड़तीस	<i>artīs</i>
7 सात	<i>sāt</i>	39 उनतालीस	<i>untālīs</i>
8 आठ	<i>āth</i>	40 बालीस	<i>cālīs</i>
9 नौ	<i>nau</i>	41 इकतालीस	<i>iktālīs</i>
10 दस	<i>das</i>	42 बयालीस	<i>bayālīs</i>
11 ग्यारह	<i>gyārah<sup>1</sup></i>	43 तैंतालीस	<i>taimtālīs</i>
12 बारह	<i>bārah</i>	44 चवालीस	<i>cavālīs</i>
13 तेरह	<i>terah</i>	45 पैंतालीस	<i>paimtālīs</i>
14 चौदह	<i>caudah</i>	46 छियालीस	<i>chiyālīs</i>
15 पंद्रह	<i>pandrah</i>	47 सैंतालीस	<i>saimtālīs</i>
16 सोलह	<i>solah</i>	48 अड़तालीस	<i>artālīs</i>
17 सत्रह, सत्तरह	<i>satrah, sattrah</i>	49 उनचास	<i>uncās</i>
18 अठारह	<i>aṭhārah</i>	50 पचास	<i>pacās</i>
19 उन्नीस	<i>unnīs</i>	51 दक्यावन	<i>ikyāvan</i>
20 बीस	<i>bīs</i>	52 बावन	<i>bāvan</i>
21 इक्कीस	<i>ikkīs</i>	53 तिरपन	<i>tirpan</i>
22 बाईस	<i>bāīs</i>	54 चौवन	<i>cauvan</i>
23 तेईस	<i>teīs</i>	55 पचपन	<i>pacpan</i>
24 चौवीस	<i>caubīs</i>	56 छप्पन	<i>chappan</i>
25 पन्चीस	<i>paccīs</i>	57 सत्तावन	<i>sattāvan</i>
26 छब्बीस	<i>chabbīs</i>	58 अट्ठावन	<i>aṭṭhāvan</i>
27 सत्ताईस	<i>sattāīs</i>	59 उनसठ	<i>unsath</i>
28 अट्ठाईस	<i>aṭṭhāīs</i>	60 साठ	<i>sāth</i>
29 उनलीस	<i>untīs</i>	61 इकसठ	<i>iksath</i>
30 तीस	<i>tīs</i>	62 बासठ	<i>bāsath</i>
31 इक्त्तीस	<i>ikattīs</i>	63 तिरसठ	<i>tirsath</i>
32 बत्तीस	<i>battīs</i>	64 चौंसठ	<i>caunīsath</i>

<sup>1</sup> The numerals 11-18, ending in *-ah*, have common variant pronunciations with long *ā* and no aspiration in final syllable.

65 पैसठ	<i>paīsath</i>	87 सत्तासी, सतासी	<i>sattāsī, satāsī</i>
66 छियासठ	<i>chiyāsath</i>	88 अठ्ठासी, अठासी	<i>aṭṭhāsī, aṭhāsī</i>
67 सरसठ	<i>sarsath</i>	89 नवासी	<i>navāsī</i>
68 अड़सठ	<i>aṛsath</i>	90 नव्वे, नब्बे	<i>navve, nabbe</i>
69 उनहत्तर	<i>unhattar</i>	91 इक्यानवे	<i>ikyānve</i>
70 सत्तर	<i>sattar</i>	92 बानवे	<i>bānve</i>
71 इकहत्तर	<i>ik'hattar</i> <sup>1</sup>	93 तिरानवे	<i>tirānve</i>
72 बहत्तर	<i>bahattar</i>	94 चौरानवे	<i>caurānve</i>
73 तिहत्तर	<i>tihattar</i>	95 पचानवे	<i>pacānve</i>
74 चौहत्तर	<i>cauhattar</i>	96 छियानवे	<i>chiyānve</i>
75 पचहत्तर	<i>pac'hattar</i> <sup>1</sup>	97 सत्तानवे	<i>sattānve</i>
76 छिहत्तर	<i>chihattar</i>	98 अठ्ठानवे	<i>aṭṭhānve</i>
77 सतहत्तर	<i>sat'hattar</i> <sup>1</sup>	99 निन्यानवे	<i>ninyānve</i>
78 अठहत्तर	<i>aṭhhattar</i>	100 सौ	<i>sau</i>
79 उन्यासी, उन्नासी	<i>unyāsī, unuāsī</i>	101 एक सौ एक	<i>ek sau ek</i>
80 अस्सी	<i>assī</i>	121 एक सौ इक्कीस	<i>ek sau ikkīs</i>
81 इक्यासी	<i>ikyāsī</i>	200 दो सौ	<i>do sau</i>
82 बयासी	<i>bayāsī</i>	1,000 (एक) हजार	<i>(ek) hazār</i>
83 तिरासी	<i>tirāsī</i>	(एक) सहस्र	<i>(ek) *sahasra</i>
84 चौरासी	<i>caurāsī</i>	2,000 दो हजार	<i>do hazār</i>
85 पचासी	<i>pacāsī</i>	100,000 एक लाख	<i>ek lākh</i>
86 छियासी	<i>chiyāsī</i>	10,000,000 एक करोड़	<i>ek karor</i>

(a) Divided into crores and lakhs the number 13,478,241 reads 1,34,78,241:

एक करोड़ चौतीस लाख अठहत्तर हजार दो सौ इकतालीस *ek karor cauutīs lākh aṭhhattar hazār do sau ikatālīs*.

(b) There are variant pronunciations and spellings for a considerable number of the cardinal numerals; only a few are indicated above.

(c) हजार *hazār* and सहस्र *sahasra* are usually used as nouns, and prefixed by एक *ek*; लाख *lākh* and करोड़ *karor* as single terms are always prefixed by एक *ek*; e.g.

उस ज़िले में एक लाख आदमी रहते हैं। *us zīle meṁ ek lākh ādmī rahte hain*,  
A hundred thousand people live in that district.

<sup>1</sup> Note the pronunciation and transliteration of these forms. The apostrophe of the transliterations indicates that *h* is separate syllabically from the preceding consonant, and is voiced.

(d) Cardinal numbers (and other adjectives) are often followed by collective singular nouns, where the objects concerned are not of individual importance: e.g.

दो प्याला चाय *do pyālā cāy*, two cups of tea

तीन रुपया *tīn rupayā*, three rupees

छह महीने में *chah mahīne meṁ*, in six months

Compare the use of singular nouns possible, for instance, after reduplicated क्या *kyā*: e.g.

आप उनसे क्या क्या बात करेंगे? *āp unse kyā kyā bāt karenge?* What will you talk to him about?

(e) Cardinal numerals are often combined in pairs, usually hyphenated, expressive of an approximate number, e.g. दो-चार *do-cār*, दस-पाँच *das-pāñc*. Note unhyphenated दो एक *do ek* 'about two', i.e. 'very few', and the analogous use of suffixed एक *ek* in the sense 'approximately' with other numerals.

## 2. Ordinals

1st पहला	<i>pahlā</i>	6th छठा	<i>chathā</i>
2nd दूसरा	<i>dūsarā</i>	7th सातवाँ	<i>sātvām</i>
3rd तीसरा	<i>tisrā</i>	8th आठवाँ	<i>āṭhvām</i>
4th चौथा	<i>cauthā</i>	9th नवाँ	<i>navām</i>
5th पाँचवाँ	<i>pāñcvām</i>		

(a) In formal Hindi, especially the written language, Sanskrit ordinals are sometimes found, especially for the lower numbers, viz.

1st प्रथम	<i>pratham</i>	3rd तृतीय	<i>trtīy</i>
2nd द्वितीय	<i>dvitīy</i>	4th चतुर्थ	<i>caturth</i>

Others occur occasionally, e.g. in the names of certain Hindu festivals, chapter numbers of some books, etc. But use of the ordinals in -vām (regular from सातवाँ *sātvām* on) is rarely inappropriate.

(b) 101st is एक सौ एकवाँ *ek sau ekvām*

102nd is एक सौ दोवाँ *ek sau dohvām*

103rd is एक सौ तीसवाँ/तीसरा *ek sau tīsuvām/tīsarā*

## 3. Fractions

- $\frac{1}{2}$  आधा *ādhā*  
 $\frac{1}{3}$  एक तिहाई *ek tihāi*  
 $\frac{1}{4}$  एक चौथाई *ek cauthāi*  
 $\frac{1}{5}$  पाँचवाँ भाग, हिस्सा *pāñcvāñ bhāg, †hissā*; एक बटे पाँच *ek baṭe pāñc*  
 $\frac{2}{5}$  दो बटे पाँचवाँ हिस्सा *do baṭe pāñcvāñ †hissā*; दो बटे पाँच *do baṭe pāñc*  
 $\frac{3}{4}$  चार सात बटे आठवाँ हिस्सा *cār sāt baṭe āṭhvāñ †hissā*; चार सात बटे आठ *cār sāt baṭe āṭh*

आधी किताबें *ādhi kitābēn*, half the books

उसका आधा *uskā ādhā*, half of that

एक चौथाई किताबें *ek cauthāi kitābēn*, a quarter of the books

दुनिया की तीन चौथाई *duniyā kī tīn cauthūi*, three-quarters of the world

(a) As the examples show, आधा *ādhā* is used as an adjective and a noun, while the other fractions given are used as nouns only, often as 'measure nouns' (i.e. with an immediately following noun denoting a substance of which an amount is measured).<sup>1</sup>

(b) एक आध *ek ādh* (with singular noun) means 'about one, one or two': e.g. मैं भारत में एक आध महीना बिताऊँगा। *māim bhārat meñ ek ādh mahinā bitāūngā*, I shall spend a month or so in India.

(c) Note particularly the following invariable expressions:

पौने *paun*, three-quarters of

पौने *paune*, less a quarter

सवा *savā*, plus a quarter;  $1\frac{1}{4}$  times<sup>2</sup>

डेढ़ *deṛh*, one and a half;  $1\frac{1}{2}$  times<sup>2</sup>

ढाई *dhāi*, two and a half;  $2\frac{1}{2}$  times<sup>2</sup>

साढ़े *sārhe*, plus a half (from  $3\frac{1}{2}$ )

पौन सेर दूध *puñ ser dūdh*, three-quarters of a seer of milk

पौने पच्चीस *paune paccīs*, 24 $\frac{3}{4}$

सवा रुपया *savā rupayā*,  $1\frac{1}{4}$  rupees

सवा सौ *savā sau*, 125

डेढ़ रुपया *deṛh rupayā*,  $1\frac{1}{2}$  rupees

<sup>1</sup> Other expressions of quantity are also used in this way, e.g. तीन सेर दूध *tīn ser dūdh* 'three seers of milk', दो प्याला चाय *do pyālā cāy* 'two cups of tea', कितने सेर दूध? *kitne ser dūdh?* 'how many seers of milk?'

<sup>2</sup> With the words सौ *sau*, हजार *hazār*, लाख *lākh*, करोड़ *karor*.

डेढ़ सौ *deṛh sau*, 150

ढाई चम्मच *dhāi camuac*,  $2\frac{1}{2}$  spoons(full)

ढाई हजार *dhāi hazār*, 2,500

साढ़े ग्यारह *sārhe gyārah*,  $11\frac{1}{2}$

पौने *paun* is used as a measure noun; its sphere of usage is rather restricted. पौने *paune* and साढ़े *sārhe* are used with numerals only. The other forms given are used with both nouns and numerals.

## 4. Aggregatives

दोनों *donon*, both

तीनों *tīnon*, all three

चारों *cāron*, all four

बीसों *bīsom*, all twenty

बीसियों *bisiyom*, scores of

सैकड़ों *saikṛom*, hundreds of

हजारों *hazāron*, thousands of

हम तीनों जाएँगे। *hum tīnon jāēngē*, The three of us will go.

सहर के चारों ओर देहात है। *sahr ke cāron or dehāt hai*, All around the village lies the countryside.

नदी में सैकड़ों आदमी नहीं, हजारों आदमी स्नान करते हैं। *nadī meñ saikṛom ādmī nahīn, hazāron ādmī snān karte hain*, Not hundreds but thousands of men bathe in the river.

(a) Note that aggregatives are based both on cardinal numerals and on nouns expressing numerical quantity such as बीसी *bisī* 'a score', सैकड़ा *saikṛā* 'an amount of a hundred'; as well as occasionally on nouns which have no numerical connotation, e.g. महीना *mahinā*:

महीनों बीत गए। *mahinon bīt gae*, Months passed.<sup>1</sup>

## 5. Multiplicatives

These are chiefly formed with the adjectival suffix *-gunā*. Often they are followed by adjectives. Some variant forms for lower multiplicatives are found, almost all based on unmodified cardinal numerals.

दुगुना, दूना *dugunā, dūnā*, twofold

तिगुना *tīgūnā*, threefold

<sup>1</sup> बीत गए *bīt gae* 'passed': compound verb. See lesson XVII.



चौगुना *chāgunā*, fourfold  
 पञ्चगुना *pañcgunā*, fivefold  
 छेगुना, छगुना *chaigunā, chagunā*, sixfold  
 सतगुना *satgunā*, sevenfold  
 अठगुना *athgunā*, eightfold  
 नौगुना *naugunā*, ninefold  
 दसगुना *dasgunā*, tenfold  
 ग्यारहगुना *gyārahgunā*, elevenfold

दिल्ली इलाहाबाद से दुगुना बड़ा शहर है। *dhīlī ihlāhābād se dugunā baṛā śahr hai*,  
 Delhi is twice as big a city as Allahabad.<sup>1</sup>

## TIME

1. The word घंटा *ghaṇṭā* means a period of one hour. Hours of the clock are expressed by means of the perfective participle of the verb बजना *bajānā* 'to sound, resound', as follows:

एक बजा *ek bajā*, one o'clock  
 एक बजा है। *ek bajā hai*, It is one o'clock.  
 एक बजे *ek baje*, at one o'clock  
 दो बजे *do baje*, two o'clock  
 दो बजे हैं। *do baje haiṁ*, It is two o'clock.  
 दो बजे *do baje*, at two o'clock

(a) The use of पौन *paun*, सवा *savā*, डेढ़ *derh*, ढाई *dhāi*, and साढ़े *sāṛhe* in expressions of time is illustrated by the following examples:

पौन बजा *paun bajā*, 12.45  
 पौन बजा है। *paun bajā hai*, It is 12.45.  
 पौन बजे *paun baje*, at 12.45  
 सवा बजा *savā bajā*, 1.15  
 सवा बजा है। *savā bajā hai*, It is 1.15.  
 सवा बजे *savā baje*, at 1.15

Similarly

डेढ़ बजा *derh bajā*, 1.30  
 पौने दो बजे *paune do baje*, 1.45  
 पौने दो बजे हैं। *paune do baje haiṁ*, It is 1.45.  
 पौने दो बजे *panne do baje*, at 1.45

<sup>1</sup> The use of से *se* in comparisons is explained in Lesson XVI.

Similarly

सवा दो बजे *savā do baje*, 2.15  
 ढाई बजे *dhāi baje*, 2.30  
 साढ़े तीन बजे *sāṛhe tīn baje*, 3.30

2. Minutes before and after the hour can be expressed as in the following examples:

पाँच बजने में दस मिनट *pāñc bajne meṁ das minaṭ*, 4.50  
 पाँच बजने में दस मिनट बाकी है। *pāñc bajne meṁ das minaṭ bāqī haiṁ*, It is 4.50.  
 पाँच बजने से दस मिनट पहले *pāñc bajne se das minaṭ pahle*, at 4.50  
 पाँच बजकर दस मिनट *pāñc bajkar das minaṭ*, 5.10  
 पाँच बजकर दस मिनट हुए हैं। *pāñc bajkar das minaṭ hue haiṁ*, It is 5.10.  
 पाँच बजकर दस मिनट पर *pāñc bajkar das minaṭ par*, at 5.10

(a) The hours 4.50 and 5.10 may also be expressed as चार पचास *cār pacās* and पाँच दस *pāñc das*. This is normal timetable usage but is also fairly common elsewhere.

3. Translation equivalents of the locutions 'a.m.', 'p.m.' are illustrated in the following examples:

पाँच बजे सुबह को *pāñc baje suhah ko*, 5 a.m.  
 सुबह के पाँच बजे *subah ke pāñc baje*, at 5 a.m.  
 दो बजे दिन को *do baje dīn ko*, 2 p.m.  
 दिन के दो बजे *dīn ke do baje*, at 2 p.m.  
 पाँच बजे शाम को *pāñc baje śām ko*, 5 p.m.  
 शाम के पाँच बजे *śām ke pāñc baje*, at 5 p.m.  
 दो बजे रात को *do baje rāt ko*, 2 a.m.  
 रात के दो बजे *rāt ke do baje*, at 2 a.m.

(a) सुबह *subah* runs from daybreak to about 11 a.m., दिन *dīn* to about 3 or 4 p.m., शाम *śām* to about 9 p.m. Colloquially, the postpositions को *ko* and के *ke* in these usages are sometimes dropped.

(b) Note the form of expressions which refer to a day as well as a time of day:

आज सुबह (को) पाँच बजे *āj subah (ko) pāñc baje*, at 5 a.m. today  
 कल शाम (को) पाँच बजे *kal śām (ko) pāñc baje*, at 5 p.m. yesterday, or  
 tomorrow

परसों रात (को) तीन बजे *parson rāt (ko) tīn baje*, at 3 a.m. two days ago, or  
 ahead

(c) The word पहर *pahr*, meaning a 'watch of the day or night', i.e. three hours, is in common use in a number of expressions. Some of these are:

(छीक) दोपहर (*thik*) *dopahr*, midday (i.e. the end of the second watch)  
तीसरा पहर *tisrā pahr*, the early afternoon  
दोपहर के बाद *dopahr ke bād*, in the afternoon  
पहर रात (को) *pahr rāt (ko)*, late at night  
आठों पहर *āthom pahr*, twenty-four hours long

## DATES

1. Days of the week, and months of the year (Christian and Vikramāditya):

रविवार *ravivār*, इतवार *itvār*, Sunday  
सोमवार *somvār*, Monday  
मंगलवार *maṅgalvār*, Tuesday  
बुधवार *budhvār*, Wednesday  
बृहस्पतिवार *brhaspativār*, गुरुवार *gurvār*, Thursday  
शुक्रवार *śukravār*, Friday  
शनिवार *śanivār*, Saturday

जनवरी <i>janvarī</i>	चैत <i>cait</i>
फरवरी <i>farvarī</i>	बैसाख <i>baisākh</i>
मार्च <i>mārc</i>	जेठ <i>jeṭh</i>
अप्रैल <i>aprail</i>	असाढ़ <i>asāṛh</i>
मई <i>maī</i>	सावन <i>sāvan</i>
जून <i>jūn</i>	भादों <i>bhādom</i>
जुलाई <i>julāī</i>	क्वार <i>kvār</i>
अगस्त <i>agast</i>	कात्तिक <i>kārttik</i>
सितंबर <i>sitambar</i>	अगहन <i>ag'han</i> <sup>1</sup>
अक्तूबर <i>aktūbar</i>	पूस <i>pūs</i>
नवंबर <i>navambar</i>	माघ <i>māgh</i>
दिसंबर <i>disambar</i>	फागुन <i>phāgun</i>

(a) Expressions of time involving days of the week show को *ko*, those involving months में *meṁ*: e.g.

सोमवार को *somvār ko*, on Monday  
अक्तूबर में *aktūbar meṁ*, in October

<sup>1</sup> See p. 62, n. 1.

(b) The dates of Hindu rites and festivals are determined according to the विक्रमादित्य *vikramāditya* calendar, which is based on lunar months, each with a 'bright phase' (शुक्ल पक्ष *śukl pakṣ*) and a 'dark phase' (कृष्ण पक्ष *kṛṣṇ pakṣ*). Months begin with the full moon, the कृष्ण पक्ष *kṛṣṇ pakṣ* following. A thirteenth intercalary month is added every thirty months to keep these months in step with the seasons. The month चैत *cait* begins in mid-March or earlier.

The Sanskrit forms and some variant Hindi forms of the names of the विक्रमादित्य *vikramāditya* lunar months are also found alongside the Hindi ones given above.

2. The word तारीख *tārīkh* (f.) means 'date'. It is implied in expressions of date such as

पहली जनवरी *pahlī janvarī*, January 1st  
पहली जनवरी को *pahlī janvarī ko*, on January 1st  
दूसरी मार्च *dūsri mārc*, March 2nd  
दूसरी मार्च को *dūsri mārc ko*, on March 2nd

(a) For dates other than the first or second of a month cardinals are generally used: e.g.

आठ सितंबर *āṭh sitambar*, September 8th  
आठ सितंबर को *āṭh sitambar ko*, on September 8th

(b) The word तारीख *tārīkh* can also be used in alternative forms of the above expressions: e.g.

जनवरी की पहली तारीख *janvarī kī pahlī tārīkh*  
सितंबर की आठ तारीख को *sitambar kī āṭh tārīkh ko*

3. Years of the Christian era are usually denoted by the numeral preceded by the designation सन् *san*, derived from Arabic and meaning 'year': e.g. सन् उन्नीस सौ इकसठ की सत्रह मई को *san unnīs sau iksaṭh kī satrah maī ko*, on 17th May 1961

(a) Years of the विक्रमादित्य *vikramāditya* era (57 or 58 years ahead of the Christian) are similarly prefixed by the noun संवत् *samvat*. Other systems of dating include the शक *śak* era (77 or 78 years behind the Christian), used officially by the Indian government in conjunction with the Christian era.

## VOCABULARY

ज़िला <i>zillā</i> , m., administrative district	घड़ी <i>gharī</i> , f., watch; मेरी घड़ी में <i>merī gharī mein</i> , by my watch
प्याला <i>pyālā</i> , m., cup	भाषण <i>bhāṣaṇ</i> , f., speech, lecture
चाय <i>cāy</i> , f., tea	घटना <i>ghaṭnā</i> , f., incident, happening
भाग <i>bhāg</i> , m., part	नया <i>nayā</i> , new
हिस्सा <i>hissā</i> , m., part	खराब <i>kharāb</i> , bad; spoiled
सेर <i>ser</i> , m., seer (measure of weight, approximately 1 kg.)	बाक़ी <i>bāqī</i> , remaining, left over (invariable)
मन <i>man</i> , m., maund (measure of weight, = 40 seers)	स्नान करना <i>snān karnā</i> , bathe
चम्मच <i>cammac</i> , m., spoon	बीतना <i>bītānā</i> , pass by (of time)
देहात <i>dehāt</i> , m., country(side)	बिताना <i>bitānā</i> , spend (time)
इलाहाबाद <i>ilāhābād</i> , m., Allahabad	के चारों ओर/तरफ़ <i>ke cāroṃ or/ṭaraf</i> , on all four sides, all around
समुद्र <i>samudr</i> , m., sea, ocean	

## EXERCISE 21

मेरे पास पचहत्तर नए पैसे<sup>1</sup> हैं। बारह आने पचहत्तर नए पैसे होते हैं। तीन चौथाई दुनिया समुद्र है। ढाई सौ। पाँच सौ इकतीस। दो हजार दो सौ बाईस। तीन लाख चार हजार आठ सौ सैतालीस। तीन करोड़ इकतालीस लाख पैंसठ हजार तीन सौ सात। मैं उससे दुगुना काम करता हूँ। वह छोटी क्लास में पढ़ती है। अगले साल सातवीं में पढ़ेगी। मनो अनाज खराब हुआ। पीने चार बजे हैं। जी नहीं, मेरी घड़ी में चार बजने में दस मिनट बाक़ी हैं। गाड़ी छह बजकर तीन मिनट पर पहुँचती है। आज शाम को साढ़े आठ बजे एक भाषण है। मैं तेईस जून को घर जा रहा हूँ। यह घटना मन् उन्नीस सौ उनतीस की चौबीस अक्टूबर को हुई।

## EXERCISE 22

I've been learning Hindi for a month or so. 150. 754. 9,876. 15,378,492. 9,132,444. He does twice as much work as me. Thousands of people will come here next month. I arrived at 3.30. It's now twenty-five past seven. I'm going at twenty to eight. Come at 5.30 p.m. Come at 8.30 p.m. tomorrow. My son was born on April 1st. We shall begin work on Wednesday.

<sup>1</sup> नया पैसा *nayā paisā*, one-hundredth of a rupee in the reformed currency; with the disappearance of the old currency, the word पैसा *paisā* is increasingly used without the adjective.

## LESSON XII

CONSTRUCTIONS WITH THE POSTPOSITION ने *ne*

## 1. 'THE' sentence

वह किताब लिख रहा था *vah kitāb likh rahā thā*

means 'he was writing the book', but 'he wrote the book' is translated  
उसने किताब लिखी *usne kitāb likhī*.

In this sentence, in which the verb is transitive and perfective, we find, first, that in the initial position in the sentence, which we have seen is taken characteristically by sentence subjects in sentences of neutral style and emphasis, there occurs not the direct case form वह *vah*, but the oblique case form उस *us*, with the postposition ने *ne*. Secondly, the verb shows concord not with this form but with the word किताब *kitāb*, which, with regard to its non-initial position, may be classified as its direct object.

Constructions showing the postposition ने *ne* with positionally-determined oblique case sentence subjects, and the form of the verb determined with reference to sentence objects, not subjects, are regular in Hindi (with various qualifications which will be stated) where finite verbs are transitive and perfective.<sup>1</sup>

2. Note the importance of the form taken by the object in constructions involving ने *ne*. If an indefinite object<sup>2</sup> is present, or implied, the verb is in concord with it, as in the above example; but otherwise (i.e. if the object is definite,<sup>2</sup> or if no specific direct object is expressed or implied) the

<sup>1</sup> These constructions have evolved from constructions in the earlier language which showed inflected agentive forms in initial sentence position, and past participles in concord with non-initial grammatical subjects, in other words, constructions which expressed 'he wrote the book' as 'by him the book was written'. As the language evolved, however, the position of nouns and pronouns in sentences became a more important marker of their role as subject or object than their grammatical form, so that for modern Hindi it is advisable in general to consider initially occurring forms with ने *ne* as sentence subjects, and non-initial forms as direct objects determining the form of verbs in their sentences; although certain modern usages current in Delhi, western U.P., and the Panjab, which are not introduced in this book, may be interpreted as showing specifically agentive forms and verb concord with subjects, and thus still indicate the historical origins of the construction.

<sup>2</sup> See Lesson IX, p. 49.

verb always shows final -ā (and is better thought of as a 'neutral' or 'impersonal' form than as a 'third singular masculine'): e.g.

हमने अपने शत्रु को मारा । *hamne apne śatru ko mārā*, We killed our enemy.<sup>1</sup>  
हमने अपने शत्रुओं को मारा । *hamne apne śatruon ko mārā*, We killed our enemies.<sup>1</sup>

उसने कहा कि . . . *usne kahā ki* . . . , He, she said that . . .

उसने मेरी ओर देखा । *usne merī or dekhā*, He, she looked in my direction.

The following examples illustrate the types of construction described above:

उसने पत्र लिखा । *usne patr likhā*, He, she wrote the letter, a letter.

उसने पत्र लिखे । *usne patr likhe*, He, she, wrote the letters, some letters.

इस लड़के ने पुस्तक कल पढ़ी थी । *is laṛke ne pustak kal paṛhī thī*, This boy read the book yesterday.

उन लड़कियों ने किताबें पढ़ीं । *un laṛkiyon ne kitāben paṛhīm*, Those girls read the books.

उमने मकान बेचा होगा । *usne mahām becā hogā*, He, she will have sold the house.

उराने उन स्त्रियों को पहले देखा था । *usne un striyon ko pahle dekhā thā*, He, she had seen those women before.

इस लड़की ने उसे कल यहाँ देखा था । *is laṛkī ne use kal yahā dekhā thā*, This girl saw him, her there yesterday.

उराने कुछ समय सोचा । *usne kuch samay socā*, He, she thought for some time.

3. ने *ne* stands slightly apart from the other postpositions in the forms it requires of some personal and other pronouns, viz.

मैंने *mainne*

तूने *tūne*

उन्होंने *unhone* (plural of वह *vah*)

इन्होंने *inhone* (plural of यह *yah*)

किन्होंने *kinhone* (plural of कौन *kaun*)

जिन्होंने *jinhone* (plural of जो *jo*)

कइयों ने *kaiyon ne*

4. Almost all verbs which are transitive, i.e. can take direct objects, are used in construction with ने *ne* in perfective forms (except in certain cases

<sup>1</sup> The student can, if he wishes, visualize the impersonal nature of such constructions by bearing in mind their historical origins (see previous footnote) and mentally recasting 'we killed our enemy' as 'by us it was killed in respect of our enemy', etc.

when members of composite verbal expressions, noted in due course). The construction of a few verbs varies. Some notes on the construction of perfective forms of individual verbs and verbal expressions follow.

(a) कहना *kahnā* 'say' and पूछना *pūchnā* 'ask, inquire' are always used in construction with ने *ne*; बोलना *bolnā* 'speak, talk' only rarely so. (The use of बोलना *bolnā* as a transitive verb is rather restricted.)

मैंने कहा कि मैं कल वहाँ था । *mainne kahā ki main kal vahān thā*, I said I was there yesterday.

उसने मुझसे कई प्रश्न पूछे । *usne mujhse kī prāśn pūche*, He, she asked me several questions.

वह मुझसे हिंदी में बोलीं । *vah mujhse hindī meṁ bolīm*, She, they spoke to me in Hindi.

उसने मुझसे सब कुछ कहा । *usne mujhse sab kuch kahā*, He, she told me everything.

उसने झूठ बोला । *usne jhūṭh bolā*, He lied (spoke falsehood).

(b) Conjunct verbs formed with करना *karnā* and a preceding noun, and other verbal expressions involving करना *karnā*<sup>1</sup> are all used in construction with ने *ne*. Note that English translation equivalents of these are usually but not invariably transitive.

मैंने काम शुरू किया । *mainne kāṁ śurū kiya*, I started work.

मैंने दरवाजा बंद किया । *mainne darvāzā band kiya*, I closed the door.

मैंने उसका इंतज़ार किया । *mainne uskā intāzār kiya*, I waited for him, her.

मैंने उसकी प्रतीक्षा की । *mainne uskī pratīkṣā kī*, I waited for him, her.

उन्होंने शत्रु पर आक्रमण किया । *unhone śatru par ākramaṇ kiya*, They attacked the enemy.

(c) The verb समझना *samajhnā* 'understand' is used in both constructions. Some Hindi speakers prefer to use it in construction with ने *ne* in most cases where a direct object is expressed, especially if this is of some prominence, or if it is implied that the act of understanding leads to a consequence. Where समझना *samajhnā* means 'understand something to be the case' it is regularly used in construction with ने *ne*.

(आप) समझे? (*āp*) *samjhe?* Do you understand? (masculine reference)<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See Lesson X, pp. 56 ff.

<sup>2</sup> Literally 'have you understood, grasped (the question)'.

आप मेरी बात समझे? *āp merī bāt samjhe?* Do you understand what I said?  
 आपने मेरी बात समझी? *āpne merī bāt samjhi?* Do you understand what I said?  
 मैंने आपकी बातें समझी हैं, और उनपर अमल किया है। *mainne āpkī bāteṁ samjhi hain, aur unpar amal kiya hai*, I understand what you told me and have acted on it.  
 मैंने आपको अपना भाई समझा। *mainne āpko apnā bhāī samjhā*, I thought of you as my own brother.

(d) लाना *lānā* 'bring' and भूलना *bhūlnā* 'forget' are not used in construction with *ne*.

वह दो पुस्तकें लाया। *vah do pustakē lāyā*, He brought two books.

(e) The expressions ले आना *le ānā* 'bring' and ले जाना *le jānā*, ले चलना *le calnā* 'take away' are collocations of absolutes with the intransitive verbs आना *ānā*, जाना *jānā* (see Lesson VII), and so of course are not used in construction with *ne*.

(f) The expressions दिखाई देना *dikhāī denā* 'be visible, appear', and सुनाई देना *sunāī denā* 'be audible' are not used in construction with *ne*, although based on transitive देना *denā*.

शहर दूर पर दिखाई दिया। *śahr dūr par dikhāī diyā*, The city came into view in the distance.

उसे तीन औरतें अचानक दिखाई दें। *use tīn aurteṁ acānak dikhāī dēn*, He, she suddenly saw three women.<sup>1</sup>

(g) पढ़ना *pañnā* 'read' is usually not used in construction with *ne* when it has the sense 'follow a course of study in a subject'.

वह इलाहाबाद में हिंदी पढ़े। *vah ilāhābād meṁ hindī paṛhe*, He studied Hindi in Allahabad.

(h) नहाना *nahānā* 'wash, bathe' is used in both constructions without difference of sense, but usually without *ne*.

मैं (ने) ठंडे पानी से नहाया। *main(ne) ṭhaṇḍe pānī se nahāyā*, I washed in cold water.

(i) Some verbs, such as मुसकराना *mushkarānā* 'smile' and रोना *ronā* 'weep', which usually do not take direct objects or occur in construction with

<sup>1</sup> Literally 'three women suddenly appeared to him, her'.

ने *ne*, may occasionally take 'cognate objects', i.e. nouns meaning 'smile', 'tears', etc., and may then sometimes occur in construction with *ne*, especially if an object is of some prominence.

वह मुसकराया। *vah mushkarāyā*, He smiled.

वह विजय की मुसकराहट मुसकराया। *vah vijay kī mushkarāhaṭ mushkarāyā*, He smiled a smile of triumph.

उसने विजय की मुसकराहट मुसकराई। *usne vijay kī mushkarāhaṭ mushkarāī*, He smiled a smile of triumph.

(j) Other verbs, such as सोना *sonā* 'sleep' and हँसना *hanṣnā* 'laugh, smile' are not used in construction with *ne* even if 'cognate objects' are expressed.

वह बेफिक्री की नींद सोया। *vah befikrī kī nīnd soyā*, He slept an untroubled sleep.

## VOCABULARY

शत्रु *śatru*, m.f., enemy

प्रश्न *praśn*, m., question

आक्रमण *ākramaṇ*, m., attack

लाइब्रेरी *lāibrerī*, f., library

भगड़ा *jhagrā*, m., quarrel

कारण *kāraṇ*, m., cause

तस्वीर *tasvīr*, f., picture

सामान *sāmān*, m., belongings, goods, things

दिलचस्प *dilcasp*, interesting

मारना *mārnā*, beat; kill

आक्रमण करना *ākramaṇ karṇā* (par), attack

लाना *lānā*, bring

भूलना *bhūlnā*, forget

दिखाई देना *dikhāī denā*, be visible

सुनाई देना *sunāī denā*, be audible

खरीदना *kharīdnā*, buy

पाना *pānā*, get, obtain; find

सिखाना *sikhānā*, teach

सोचना *sochnā*, think

कुछ समय *kuch samay*, for some time

ठंडा *ṭhaṇḍā*, cold; cool [ठंडा *ṭhaṇḍhā*]

अचानक *acānak*, suddenly

अमल *amal*, m., act, action; अमल

करना *amal karṇā*, act, take action

मुसकराना *mushkarānā*, smile

[मुसकराना *mushkarānā*]

मुसकराहट *mushkarāhaṭ*, f., smile

[मुसकराहट *mushkarāhaṭ*]

रोना *ronā*, cry, weep

हँसना *hanṣnā*, laugh; smile

विजय *vijay*, f., victory, triumph

नींद *nīnd*, f., sleep

बेफिक्री *befikrī*, f., carefreeness

भेजना *bhejnā*, send

## EXERCISE 23

मैंने उसे कल देखा । वह एक किताब पढ़ रहा था । वह उसे लाइब्रेरी से ले आया था । उसने किताब पिछले हफ्ते पढ़ी थी । मैंने ग्यारह बजे खाया । आप समझीं? उसने मुझे मेरे दफ्तर में पाया । मैं उससे हिंदी बोला । उसने उसे हिंदी सिखाई । उसने उसे सिखाया । मैंने उसे भगड़े का कारण बताया । वह कल शाम को मेरे मकान के दरवाजे पर दिखाई दी ।

## EXERCISE 24

Have you written those letters? We bought several things in<sup>1</sup> that shop. Then we brought them home. I finished work at 5 p.m. The men put the boxes on the table. The villagers worked all day in the fields. By evening they had brought maunds of grain into the village. They used to wait for me here. In the picture several interesting things are to be seen. They took all their things away.

<sup>1</sup> से *se* 'from'.

## LESSON XIII

THE FORM चाहिए *cāhie*

THIS very common verbal form is historically an old passive meaning 'is wished, is necessary'. It usually appears in constructions involving oblique case nouns or pronouns + को *ko* (or equivalent pronominal object forms) and (a) further nouns or pronouns only; or (b) infinitive or subjunctive forms of verbs. The former express want, lack or need, the latter duty or advisability. There are also other ways of expressing these ideas, which are noted below, together with the usages of चाहिए *cāhie*.

1. चाहिए *cāhie* in association with nouns and pronouns only

Note that words answering to the subjects of English translation equivalents are, if expressed,<sup>1</sup> in the oblique case with को *ko* (or in the equivalent object form, if pronouns). The verbal form चाहिए *cāhie* is in concord with Hindi subjects, though this concord is normally only explicit in the imperfective past tense, see (b) below.

आपको क्या चाहिए? *āpho kyā cāhie?* What do you want?

क्या चाहिए? *kyā cāhie?* What do you want?

मुझे कुछ दूध चाहिए । *mujhe kuch dūdh cāhie*, I want some milk.

मुझे एक किताब चाहिए । *mujhe ek kitāb cāhie*, I want a book.

उस आदमी को दस अंडे चाहिए । *us ādmī ko das aṇḍe cāhie*, That man wants ten eggs.

हमें ये पुस्तकें नहीं चाहिए । *hamen ye pusthen nahī cāhie*, We don't need these books.

(a) An alternative construction, perhaps somewhat less common than that with चाहिए *cāhie*, is with the feminine nouns जरूरत *zarūrat* and आवश्यकता *āvāśyaktā*, both meaning 'necessity'.

मुझे दूध की जरूरत है । *mujhe dūdh kī zarūrat hai*, I want, need, some milk.

मुझे दस पुस्तकों की आवश्यकता है । *mujhe das pustkon kī āvāśyaktā hai*, I require ten books.

(b) These constructions can be used in the imperfective past tense. The verbal forms are then चाहिए था *cāhie thā*, etc. (चाहिए *cāhie* functioning as

<sup>1</sup> See p. 12.

an equivalent of an imperfective participle), and थी *thī* in the construction with जरूरत *zarūrat*, आवश्यकता *āvāśyaktā*. Negatives precede चाहिए in sentences of neutral style and emphasis.

मुझे पानी चाहिए था । *mujhe pānī cāhie thā*, I needed water, some water.  
हमें पानी नहीं चाहिए था । *hamēn pānī nahīn cāhie thā*, We didn't need any water.

उनको एक किताब चाहिए थी । *unko ek kitāb cāhie thī*, They wanted a book.  
आपको कितने अंडे चाहिए थे? *āpko kitne aṇḍe cāhie the?* How many eggs did you need?

मेरे भाई को दो कापियाँ चाहिए थीं । *mere bhāī ko do kāpiyān cāhie thīm*, My brother needed two exercise books.

उसे दूध की जरूरत थी । *use dūdh kī zarūrat thī*, He needed milk, some milk.

(c) Elsewhere only the construction with जरूरत *zarūrat*, आवश्यकता *āvāśyaktā* is used, with forms of the verbs होना *houū* or पड़ना *paṛnā*; those of the latter verb tend to convey slightly more emphasis.

आपको मच्छड़दानी की जरूरत होगी । *āpko macchāṛdānī kī zarūrat hogī*, You'll need a mosquito net.

मुझे सहायता की आवश्यकता पड़ेगी । *mujhe sahāyātā kī āvāśyaktā paṛegī*, I shall require assistance.

मुझे कलम और कागज की जरूरत पड़ी । *mujhe qalam aur kāgaz kī zarūrat paṛī*, I needed, found I needed, pen and paper.

## 2. चाहिए *cāhie* in association with infinitives or subjunctive forms

In the standard written language and for the most part in the spoken language, transitive infinitives show adjectival concord with a preceding noun or pronoun, unless this is a definite direct object, in which case they show final *-nā*. Intransitive infinitives show final *-uā*, except as indicated in note (a) below. Negatives precede infinitives in sentences of neutral style and emphasis.

आपको यहाँ रहना चाहिए । *āpko yahām rahuā cāhie*, You ought to stay here.

उन्हें हिंदी सीखनी चाहिए । *unheñ hindī sikhnī cāhie*, They should learn Hindi.

मेरे पिता जी को समाचारपत्र पढ़ने चाहिए । *mere pitā jī ho samācārpatr paṛhne cāhie*, My father ought to read the papers.

आपका ये पुस्तकें नहीं पढ़नी चाहिए । *āpko ye pustkēn nahīn paṛhñī cāhie*, You shouldn't read these books.

आपको उन्हें पढ़ना चाहिए । *āpko unheñ paṛhna cāhie*, You ought to read them.

(a) Nouns of non-personal reference, however, are not very often used with को *ko* in sentences containing intransitive infinitives. Such nouns are more usually used as subjects of चाहिए *cāhie* in sentences which do not contain any noun or pronoun + को *ko*, and infinitives are in adjectival concord with them.

क्या हिंदी राष्ट्रभाषा होनी चाहिए? *kyā hindī rāṣṭrabhāṣā honī cāhie?* Should Hindi be the national language?

यह किताब हमेशा मेज पर रहनी चाहिए । *yah kitāb hamēśā mez par rahñī cāhie*, This book should always stay on the table.

(b) An alternative construction shows चाहिए *cāhie* linked by the conjunction कि *ki* to a following subject noun or pronoun and a verb in the subjunctive.

आपको चाहिए कि आप यहाँ रहें । *āpko cāhie ki āp yahām rahen*, You ought to stay here.

चाहिए कि वह हिंदी सीख ले । *cāhie ki vah hindī sikh le*, He ought to learn Hindi.<sup>1</sup>

(c) The verbal construction can, like the nominal, be used in the imperfective past tense. Note its special implication.

मुझे दिल्ली जाना चाहिए था । *mujhe dillī jānā cāhie thā*, I should have gone to Delhi.

उसको यह नहीं करना चाहिए था । *usko yah nahīn karuā cāhie thā*, He ought not to have done this.

उन्हें हिंदी सीखनी चाहिए थी । *unheñ hindī sikhñī cāhie thī*, They should have learned Hindi.

आपको दस अंडे खरीदने चाहिए थे । *āpko das aṇḍe kharīdne cāhie the*, You should have bought ten eggs.

आपको अपनी पुस्तकें लानी चाहिए थीं । *āpko apnī pustkēn lāñī cāhie thīm*, You ought to have brought your books.

तुम्हें उनको देखना चाहिए था । *tunheñ unko dekhñā cāhie thā*, You should have looked at them.

The imperfective reference of था *thā* stresses the fact that obligation continued over a period, and implies rather that it was not met than that

<sup>1</sup> सीख ले *sikh le* 'should learn'; compound verb. See Lesson XVII.

it kept recurring. Expression of recurring obligation is dealt with in the following section.

### THE VERBS पड़ना *paṛnā* AND होना *honā* EXPRESSIVE OF OBLIGATION

The idea of compulsion or of positive obligation is expressed by association of the infinitive form of a verb with a following part of the verbs पड़ना *paṛnā*, meaning literally, 'fall' or 'be found', or होना *honā*. Use of पड़ना *paṛnā* may express a marginally stronger compulsion or obligation. Concord operates in the same way as in sentences showing चाहिए *cāhie* in association with infinitives. The form of पड़ना *paṛnā* or होना *honā* used determines the aspect, tense, and modal reference of the whole expression. Negatives precede infinitives in sentences of neutral style and emphasis.

आपको यहाँ रहना पड़ेगा/होगा । *āpko yahūn rahnā paṛegā/hogā*, You'll have to stay here, you must stay here.

आपको अपनी चाबी लानी पड़ेगी/होगी । *āpko apnī cābī lānī paṛegī/hogī*, You'll have to, must, bring your own key.

मुझे घर नहीं जाना पड़ा । *mujhe ghar nahūn jānā paṛā*, I didn't have to go home.

मुझे शाम छह बजे घर जाना पड़ता था । *mujhe sām chah bajē ghar jānā partā thā*, I used to have to go home at 6 p.m.

मुझे पाँच बजे तक काम करना पड़ता है । *mujhe pānc bajē tak kām karnā partā hai*, I have to work till five o'clock (daily).

मुझे पाँच बजे तक काम करना है । *mujhe pānc bajē tak kām karnā hai*, I have to work till five o'clock (today).

(a) Note that constructions with the future tense of पड़ना *paṛnā* or होना *honā* are the normal means of rendering English sentences with 'must' (which anticipate future actions).

(b) Note the sense contrast in the last two examples, where पड़ता है *partā hai* contrasts with है *hai*. The sense of the first of these two examples might have been expressed by use of होता है *hotā hai* if it had been desired to use होना *honā* instead of पड़ना *paṛnā*.

(c) The perfective forms of होना *honā*, viz. हुआ *huā*, हुआ था *huā thā*, etc., are not generally used in this construction.

### VOCABULARY

अंडा <i>aṇḍā</i> , m., egg	चाबी <i>cābī</i> , f., key
कापी <i>kāpī</i> , f., exercise book	टोपी <i>ṭopī</i> , f., hat
मच्छड़दानी <i>macchāḍdānī</i> , f., mosquito net	हवाई पत्र <i>huvāī patr</i> , m., air letter
सहायता <i>sahāyātā</i> , f., help	कमीज <i>gamīz</i> , f., shirt
मदद <i>madad</i> , f., help	बाजार जाना <i>bāzār jānā</i> , go to the bazaar, go shopping
राष्ट्र <i>rāṣṭra</i> , m., state	फोन <i>fon</i> , m., telephone;
राष्ट्रभाषा <i>rāṣṭrabhāṣā</i> , f., state language	मैं उसे फोन करूँगा <i>main use fou karūngā</i> , I shall phone him
समाचार <i>samācār</i> , m., (sg. and pl.) news	के करीब <i>ke qarīb</i> , about, approximately
समाचारपत्र <i>samācārpatr</i> , m., newspaper	कान्ता <i>kāntā</i> , Kāntā (girl's name)

### EXERCISE 25

मुझे एक नई टोपी चाहिए । आपको क्या चाहिए? मुझे पाँच हवाई पत्र चाहिए । उन्हें पानी चाहिए था । उसको आपकी मदद की जरूरत होगी । उस लड़के को क्या चाहिए? आपको ये पुस्तकें पढ़नी चाहिए थीं । मेरे भाई को भी उन्हें पढ़ना चाहिए था । मुझे उसे एक चिट्ठी लिखनी चाहिए । आपको अपना काम खत्म करना चाहिए । आपको इस गाँव के लोगों से हिंदी बोलनी पड़ेगी ।

### EXERCISE 26

I need two shirts. Rādhā needed Kāntā's books. You ought to go to India. I ought to speak Hindi. You should have learned Hindi. I have to buy some newspapers. I'll have to go at about 11 o'clock. I must go at about 11 o'clock. I had to go at 11 o'clock. I used to have to go shopping every day. I have to phone him. I'll need ten rupees.



## LESSON XIV

## RELATIVE-CORRELATIVE CONSTRUCTIONS

RELATIVE-CORRELATIVE constructions have been mentioned above in connection with the relative pronoun and adjective जो *jo*. They are extremely common in Hindi, and are discussed more fully here. Note, first, that an English sentence made up of principal and relative clause will very often have as Hindi equivalent two clauses in the reverse order: the relative clause, containing the appropriate relative pronoun, adverb or adjective, followed by the principal clause containing a correlative to it, though this may be omitted in informal usage. The following examples of English relative sentences transposed to illustrate the structure of their Hindi equivalents should make this pattern quite clear.

I shall go when you tell me: When you tell me, then I shall go.

I didn't understand what he said: What he said, I didn't understand that, I am reading the book you suggested: The book which you suggested, I am reading it.

Read as many books as you can: As many books as you can, read as many as that.

1. Some of the commonest relatives are listed here, together with their correlatives:

जब <i>jab</i> , when	—	तब <i>tab</i> , then
जब भी <i>jab bhī</i> , whenever	—	तब <i>tab</i> , „
जब से <i>jab se</i> , since (of time), from the time when	—	तब से <i>tab se</i> , since then
जब तक <i>jab tak</i> , as long as	—	तब तक <i>tab tak</i> , until then
जैसा <i>jaisā</i> , of such a sort as; that which	—	वैसा (ही) <i>vaisā (hī)</i> , in that way; it
जैसे ही <i>jaise hī</i> , as soon as	—	वैसे ही <i>vaise hī</i> , then
जितना <i>jitnā</i> , as many, much as; however many, much	—	उतना (ही) <i>utnā (hī)</i> , so many, much
जहाँ <i>jahān</i> , where	—	वहाँ <i>vahān</i> , there
जहाँ भी <i>jahān bhī</i> , wherever	—	वहाँ <i>vahān</i> , „
जो <i>jo</i> , the one who, which	—	वह <i>vah</i> , he, it, etc.
जो कोई <i>jo koī</i> , whoever, whichever	—	वह <i>vah</i> , „
जो कुछ <i>jo kuch</i> , whatever	—	वह <i>vah</i> , „

2. Examples of their use follow, with further comment where necessary:

जब आप मुझसे कहेंगे, तब मैं जाऊँगा। *jab āp mujhse kahenge, tab main jāūngā*, I shall go when you tell me.

जब भी दिल्ली जाता हूँ, तब हिंदी ही बोलता हूँ। *jab bhī dillī jātā hūn, tab hindī hī boltā hūn*, Whenever I go to Delhi I speak Hindi, of course.

जब से आप चले गए थे, तब से मैं हिंदी नहीं बोला। *jab se āp cale gae the, tab se main hindī nahīn bolā*, I haven't spoken Hindi since you went away.<sup>1</sup>

जब तक मैं यहाँ रहूँगा, तब तक वे काम करेंगे। *jab tak main yahān rahūngā, tab tak ve kām karenge*, They will work as long as I stay here.

जैसा आप मुझसे कहेंगे, वैसा (ही) करूँगा। *jaisā āp mujhse kahenge, vaisā (hī) karūngā*, I shall do (just) as you tell me.

जैसे ही आप मुझसे कहेंगे, वैसे ही कर दूँगा। *jaise hī āp mujhse kahenge, vaise hī kar dūngā*, I'll do it as soon as you tell me.<sup>2</sup>

मेरे पास जितने पैसे हैं, उनके पास उतने ही हैं। *mere pās jitne paise hain, unke pās utne hī hain*, He has just as much money as I.

यह मकान जितना महँगा है, उतना (ही) महँगा यह भी है। *yah makān jitnā mahāngā hai, utnā (hī) mahāngā yah bhī hai*, This house is (just) as dear as that.

आप जितना काम करेंगे, उतना ही जानेंगे। *āp jitnā kām karenge, utnā hī jānenge*, The more you work the more you'll know.

जितनी बड़ी आबादी कलकत्ते की है, उतनी बड़ी दिल्ली की नहीं है। *jitnī bārī ābādī kalhatte kī hai, utnī bārī dillī kī nahīn hai*, The population of Delhi is not as great as that of Calcutta.

जहाँ हिंदी बोली जाती है, मैं यहाँ रहना चाहता हूँ। *jahān hindī bolī jāti hai, main vahān rahnā cāhtā hūn*, I want to live where Hindi is spoken.<sup>3</sup>

जहाँ भी जाता हूँ, यहाँ अंग्रेजी बोलता हूँ। *jahān bhī jātā hūn, vahān angrezī boltā hūn*, Wherever I go I speak English.

आप जो कह रहे हैं, मैं उसपर विश्वास नहीं करता। *āp jo kah rahe hain, main uspar viśvās nahīn kartā*, I don't believe what you're saying.

जिस आदमी ने यह पत्र लिखा, वह भारतीय होगा। *jis ādmī ne yah patr likhā, vah bhārtīy hogā*, The man who wrote this letter is probably an Indian.

जो कोई आए, उसे यह खबर दीजिए। *jo koī āe, use yah khabar dijie*, Please tell this to whoever comes.

<sup>1</sup> For चले गए थे *cale gae the* 'went away' see Lesson XVII, p. 100.

<sup>2</sup> कर दूँगा *kar dūngā* 'shall do'; compound verb. See Lesson XVII.

<sup>3</sup> For बोली जाती है *bolī jāti hai* 'is spoken', see Lesson XIX, p. 116.

जिस किसी के पास यह पुस्तक नहीं है, उसे और किसी की पुस्तक पढ़नी पड़ेगी। *jis kisi ke pās yah pustak nahīn hai, use aur kisi kī pustak parhni pāregī.*<sup>1</sup>  
Whoever hasn't got this book will have to read someone else's.

जो कुछ करना चाहिए, उसे आप कीजिए। *jo kuch karnā cāhie, use āp kijie,* Please do whatever has to be done.

(a) Note that whereas जब तक *jab tak* means 'as long as', the sense 'until' is expressed by जब तक . . . न *jab tak . . . na*, followed by a subjunctive form if the reference is to a future action, and usually a perfective form if to a past action.<sup>2</sup>

जब तक राम न आएँ, तब तक मैं यहाँ रहूँगा। *jab tak rām na āēn, tab tak main yahān rahūngā,* I shall stay here till Rām comes.

जब तक राम न आए, तब तक मैं वहाँ रहा। *jab tak rām na āe, tab tak main vahān rahā,* I stayed there until Rām came.

(b) Concerning जैसा *jaisā* and its use, one might have expected the oblique case pair जैसे . . . वैसे *jaise . . . vaise* to cover the adverbial idea of the English 'in such a way as', etc. But in fact the direct case forms are usually used to express this idea, as well as sometimes serving as near equivalents of the जो-वह *jo . . . vah* pair, and the use of जैसे *jaise* (usually with ही *hī*) and its correlative is specialized in the sense 'as soon as . . . then'.

(c) जैसे *jaise* alone is, however, used in the adverbial senses 'like, just as, as if'. With preceding nouns and pronouns it functions as either a simple postposition or the main component of a compound postposition: e.g.

उन जैसे लोग *un jaise log,* } people like them.  
उनके जैसे लोग *unke jaise log,* }

जैसे मैंने कहा, वह दूसरे ही दिन चला गया। *jaise mainne kahā, vah dūse hī din calā gayā,* As I said, he left on the very next day.

उनकी आँखें भीगी थीं, जैसे वह रोनेवाली हो। *unki ānkheñ bhīgī thīñ, jaise vah ronevālī ho,* Her eyes were moist, as if she were about to cry.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> और *aur* is stressed; see Lesson VIII, p. 43, n. 1.

<sup>2</sup> Sometimes नहीं *nahīn* is substituted for न *na*, in which case a future verb replaces a subjunctive.

<sup>3</sup> For रोनेवाली *ronevālī* 'about to cry' see Lesson XXV, pp. 152 ff.

(d) Note in the sentences showing the pairs जितना . . . उतना (ही) *jitnā . . . utnā (hī)*, जैसा . . . वैसा (ही) *jaisā . . . vaisā (hī)*, how equality is stressed by the use of ही *hī* with the correlative, or of भी *bhī* in the correlative clause; also in the last example showing जितना *jitnā*, how this form and उतना *utnā* can be used with adjectives.

(e) From the sentences showing the pair जो . . . वह *jo . . . vah* (additional to those given in Lesson VIII) note that the correlative as well as the relative may occur in either case.

3. Though the pattern described above is a basic one, the principal clause will not infrequently be found initially, followed by the relative clause. Some cases when this can occur are:

(a) In sentences where जो *jo* correlates with a noun preceded by a word of indefinite reference, such as एक *ek*, कोई *koī*; English translation equivalents contain an indefinite, rather than a definite, article. See Lesson VIII, p. 47, first example.

(b) In more complicated sentences, to simplify their presentation, especially those containing disyllabic relatives and correlatives. Thus with three of the examples listed in section 2 above compare the following:

यह मकान उतना ही महँगा है जितना (कि) वह मकान (है)। *yah makān utnā hī mahāngā hai jitnā (ki) vah makān (hai).*<sup>1</sup>

दिल्ली की आबादी उतनी बड़ी नहीं है जितनी (कि) कलकत्ते की (है)। *dillī kī ābādī utnī barī nahīn hai jitnī (ki) kalkatte kī (hai).*

मैं वहाँ रहना चाहता हूँ जहाँ हिंदी बोली जाती है। *main vahān rahnā cāhtā hūñ jahāñ hindī bolī jāti hai.*

(c) Where prominence is given to a constituent of a principal clause, rather than of a subordinate clause; e.g. in the following sentence, in which the negated verb is the most prominent sentence constituent:

वह आदमी नहीं आया जिसके बारे में हम बात कर रहे थे। *vah ādmī nahīn āyā jiske बारे में ham bāt kar rahe the,* The man we were talking about didn't come.

<sup>1</sup> A pleonastic *ki* is sometimes found in conjunction with relatives in colloquial usage. Further examples are given in Supplement III, p. 183.

Compare with this sentence

हम जिस आदमी के बारे में बात कर रहे थे, वह नहीं आया। *ham jis ādāmī ke बारे में बात कर रहे थे, vah nahīn āyā*, The man we were talking about didn't come,

where the identity of the man concerned is stressed, and the fact that there had been a conversation about him.

4. Sometimes there is no explicit correlation of relative with principal clause, as in English. Compare with the eleventh example on p. 83

हिंदुस्तान, जहाँ हिंदी बोली जाती है, बहुत बड़ा देश है। *hindustān, jahān hindī bolī jāti hai, bahut barā des hai*, India, where Hindi is spoken, is a very large country.

5. Note particularly that in colloquial usage correlation is very often not expressed, though it is understood; e.g.

जिस किसी का जो जी चाहे, करे। *jis kisī kā jo jī cāhe, kare*, Everyone may do whatever he likes (whatever his soul [जो ज़ि, m.] desires).

Many of the correlatives in the sentences given above could be omitted colloquially.

6. Note that frequently relative words and phrases, especially in initial clauses, may stand in first place in their clauses or may follow subjects, without the emphasis of the sentence being very greatly altered. Compare, for instance, with the fourth example listed in section 2 above the sentence

मैं जब तक यहाँ रहूँगा, तब तक वे वक़्त करेंगे। *main jab tak yahān rahūngā, tab tak ve kām karēngē*

of similar emphasis. Further illustrations will be found in the exercises to this Lesson.

### VOCABULARY

आबादी <i>ābādī</i> , f., population	भीगा <i>bhīgā</i> , wet
विश्वास <i>viśvās</i> , m., faith, confidence	विश्वास करना <i>viśvās karaā (par)</i> , believe, believe to be true
ख़बर <i>khabar</i> , f., news, information	
तार <i>tār</i> , m., wire; telegram, cable	वही कोशिश करना <i>kī kōśiś karnā</i> , try

### EXERCISE 27

आप जब भी आना चाहें, तब आइए। जब तक आप यहाँ रहना चाहें, तब तक रहिए। मैंने जब तक चाहा, तब तक वहाँ रहा। मैं जब तक भारत न गया था, तब तक मैंने हिंदी<sup>1</sup> पढ़ी। आप जैसे ही इलाहाबाद पहुँचें, वैसे ही मुझे तार भेजिए। कल जितने लोग यहाँ थे, आज उतने नहीं थे। आप जहाँ भी जाएँ, आपका वहाँ के लोगों की भाषा बोलने की कोशिश करनी चाहिए।

### EXERCISE 28

I wasn't at home when you came. I didn't understand what he said. I shall study Hindi until I go to India. As soon as I saw him I recognized him. I have as many English books as you have Hindi books. Do whatever he says. The men we saw here yesterday don't live in this village.

<sup>1</sup> The pronoun with *ne* is expressed, not understood, following the preceding subject concord construction. This usage is not obligatory, but is somewhat preferred by careful speakers.

## LESSON XV

### THE VERB सकना *saknā* 'to be able to . . .'

1. THIS verb is used as an auxiliary with verb stems. It is never used alone.

मैं हिंदी बोल सकता हूँ । *main hindī bol saktā hūm*, I can speak Hindi.

मैं हिंदी नहीं बोल सकता । *main hindī nahīn bol saktā*, I can't speak Hindi.

मैं अपना काम नहीं कर सका । *main apnā kām nahīn kar sakā*, I couldn't do my work.

(a) In sentences of neutral style and emphasis negatives precede stems of simple verbs with auxiliary सकना *saknā*, rather than intervening between stem and auxiliary. A sentence such as मैं सो न(हीं) सका *main so na(hīm) sakā* 'I couldn't sleep' is somewhat affective in character.

(b) Stems of transitive verbs with perfective forms of auxiliary सकना *saknā* are not used in construction with ने *ne* (सकना *saknā* itself not being transitive).

2. Sentences showing an imperfective past tense form of सकना *saknā* may be ambiguous: e.g.

मैं भारत जा सकता था । *main bhārat jā saktā thā*, I could have gone to India (but didn't),

or

I used to be able to go to India.

This ambiguity depends on the fact that the locution जा सकता था *jā saktā thā* expresses only continued ability to go, leaving open the question whether this ability was exercised or not. But in practice the majority of sentences of this kind refer to an ability not exercised.

3. सकना *saknā* may also occur in sentences expressing grant of permission, or possibility.

आप जा सकते हैं । *āp jā sakte hain*, You may go.

मैं कल बनारस जा सकता हूँ । *main kal banāras jā saktā hūm*, I may go to Banaras tomorrow.

### THE VERB चुकना *cuknā*

This is an intransitive verb meaning 'to finish'; its characteristic use, however, is as an auxiliary with verb stems to stress that the action described by a stem is completed, has already taken place.

मैं गरमियों में कश्मीर जा रहा हूँ । नैनीताल जा चुका हूँ । *main garmiyon mein kashmīr jā rahā hūm; nainital jā cukā hūm*, In the summer I'm going to Kashmir; I've already been to Nainital.

मैं खा चुका हूँ । *main khā cukā hūm*, I've already eaten, I've had my meal.

मैं हिंदुस्तान में रह चुका हूँ । *main hindustān mein rah cukā hūm*, I've lived in India.

मैं अगले हफ्ते तक यह पत्र लिख चुकूँगा । *main agle hafte tak yah patr likh cūkūngā*, I shall write, get this letter written, by next week.

(a) Note that frequently an English verb with the adverb 'already' has the force of a Hindi verb stem with auxiliary चुकना *cuknā*; but also that चुकना *cuknā* with verb stems has no one English translation equivalent.

(b) Stems of transitive verbs with perfective forms of auxiliary चुकना *cuknā* are not used in construction with ने *ne* (चुकना *cuknā* itself not being transitive).

### THE VERB मिलना *milnā*

This intransitive verb means basically 'to accrue' or 'to be available', and is used in a variety of sentence types.

1. In conjunction with a subject and an expressed or implied noun or pronoun in the oblique case with को *ko* (or an equivalent pronominal object form), it answers frequently to the English verbs 'get', 'receive', 'meet', etc., although the syntax of these verbs is quite different, since they are transitive. The noun or pronoun with को *ko*, or equivalent object form, usually precedes the subject, except where मिलना *milnā* has the sense '(happen to) meet', where it normally follows it: e.g.

(मुझे) आपका पत्र मिला । *(mujhe) āpkā patr milā*, I got your letter (your letter accrued to me).

आपको उस दूकान में अच्छी मिठाइयाँ मिलेंगी । *āpko us dūkān mein acchī mithāiyāñ milengī*, You'll get excellent sweets in that shop.

उस काम के लिए उसे सौ रुपए मिले । *us kām ke lie use sau rupae mile*, He got 100 rupees for that work.

कल शहर में वह मुझे संयोग से मिला था । *kal šahr meṁ vah mujhe saṁyog se milā thā*, Yesterday I ran across him in the city.<sup>1</sup>

2. It also answers to English intransitive expressions such as 'to be available', 'to be found'. Here, मिलना *milnā* likewise being intransitive, the syntax of Hindi and English equivalent sentences is very similar.

भारत में बहुत सस्ती सिग्रेटें मिलती हैं । *bhārat meṁ bahut sastī sigreṭeṁ millī hain*, Very cheap cigarettes can be had in India.

कश्मीर के पहाड़ों में भालू मिलते हैं । *kashmīr ke pahāḍōṁ meṁ bhālū milte hain*, Bears are found in the mountains of Kashmir.

3. मिलना *milnā* is generally used in construction with से *se* to refer to meeting other than by chance; also to express resemblance.

उत्तरे मिलकर बातें होंगी । *unse milkar bātēṁ honīgī*, I'll meet him and we'll have a talk.

क्या मैं आपसे दस बजे मिल सकता हूँ? *kyā main āpse das bajē mil sahtā hūṁ?* May I see you at 10 o'clock?

कल शहर में वह मुझसे मिला था । *kal šahr meṁ vah mujhse milā thā*, Yesterday he met me, came to see me, in the city.

(Compare with this last example the last example given in section I, showing मिलना *milnā* in construction with को *ko*.)

मैं शकल से अपने भाई से नहीं मिलना । *main šahl se apne bhāī se nahīṁ milnā*, I don't look like my brother.

4. Sometimes the verb मिलना *milnā* is linked in a conventionalized way with an 'echoing verb', जुलना *julnā*<sup>2</sup>: e.g.

हमें पड़ोसियों से मिल-जुलकर रहना चाहिए । *hamēṁ paḍosiyōṁ se mil-julkar rahnā cāhiē*, We should live on good terms with our neighbours.

आप चेहरे से अपने भाई से बिल्कुल मिलते-जुलते हैं । *āp cehre se apne bhāī se bilkul milte-julte hain*, You look just like your brother.

<sup>1</sup> संयोग से *saṁyog se* 'by chance'.

<sup>2</sup> The linking of verbs in this way is common in Hindi. In some cases the second member of such a verb pair has an independent meaning of its own which reinforces that of the main verb, but frequently it is merely based on a rhyming or echoing syllable. Often use of a verb pair is slightly affective in character. Participles, infinitives, and absolutes are the most usual components of verb pairs; absolute pairs always show the first absolute in stem form (as in the first example).

## VOCABULARY

मिठाई *mithāī*, f., sweet

संयोग *saṁyog*, m., chance; संयोग से *saṁyog se*, by chance

भालू *bhālū*, m., bear

पड़ोसी *paḍosī*, m., neighbour

चेहरा *cehrā*,<sup>1</sup> m., face, features

शकल *šahl*, f., face, features; form

कोश *koś*, m., dictionary

भूल *bhūl*, f., error

उत्तर *uttar*, m., answer;

पत्र का उत्तर देना *patr kā uttar denā*, answer a letter

सूचना *sūcna*, f., information

पुरस्कार *paraskār*, m., reward

के अलावा *ke alāwā*, apart from

बिल्कुल *bilkul*, completely, quite

## EXERCISE 29

आप जब भी आ सकें, तब आइए । जब तक मैं रह सकूँ, तब तक रहा । मुझे बहुत अफ़सोस है कि मैं कल आपसे न मिल सका । हिंदी के अलावा हम भारत में कई और<sup>2</sup> भारतीय भाषाएँ सीख सकते थे । आप चाय पी चुके? वह हिंदी कोश आसानी से नहीं मिलना । हम कब मिल सकते हैं? यह कपड़ा उससे मिलता-जुलता है ।

## EXERCISE 30

I can't write Hindi very easily. Whenever I write, I make mistakes. When I got there he had already left.<sup>3</sup> I answered his letter as soon as I got it. Anyone who can give<sup>4</sup> information about this will receive a reward. You can get Hindi books in that shop.

<sup>1</sup> First vowel usually short [e].

<sup>2</sup> और *aur* is stressed.

<sup>3</sup> जाना *jānā*.

<sup>4</sup> Use future tense.

## LESSON XVI

### COMPARISON

SOME types of comparative expression involving relatives were noted in Lesson XIV. Most of the others are considered here.

1. Adjectives, when used in non-explicit comparisons, usually show the words और *aur* or और भी *aur bhī* preceding them. और *aur* is stressed in these usages: e.g.

वह बड़ा है, लेकिन आप और (भी) बड़े हैं। *vah barā hai, lekin āp aur (bhī) barē hain*, He is big, but you are bigger (even bigger).

और बड़ा संतूक ले आओ। *aur barā sandūq le āo*, Bring a bigger box.

2. When comparison is explicit (i.e. when an English translation equivalent makes use of the word 'than') the noun or pronoun with which the comparison is made is associated with the postposition से *se*, followed by the adjective in normal concord: e.g.

आप उससे बड़े हैं। *āp usse barē hain*, You are bigger than he.

3. Collocations of adjective with preceding सबसे *sabse* (usually written as one unit) may be compared with superlatives in English. They are used both attributively and predicatively.

वह बड़ा है, मैं भी बड़ा हूँ, लेकिन आप सबसे बड़े हैं। *vah barā hai, main bhī barā hūm, lekin āp sabse barē hain*, He is big and so am I, but you are the biggest (of us all).

कलकत्ता पहले भारत का सबसे बड़ा शहर था। *kalkattā pahle bhārat kā sabse barā shahr thā*, Calcutta used to be the biggest city in India (India's biggest city).

(a) Occasionally for the word सब *sab* in these locutions the adjective itself may occur. Such expressions are affective in tone, unlike those with सब *sab*, except in the case of a few standardized adverbial expressions.

उसके पास अच्छी से अच्छी किताबें हैं। *uske pās acchī se acchī kitābēn hain*, He's got excellent, really good books.

कम से कम *kam se kam*, at least

### COMPARISON

93

4. Adjectives which are direct borrowings from Sanskrit may form comparatives with the suffix *-tar* and/or superlatives with the suffix *-tam*. Some such forms found are:

उच्च *ucc*, high (cf. ऊँचा *ūmcā*, the common Hindi word) उच्चतर *uccatar*, higher

प्रिय *priy*, dear, beloved

प्रियतम *priyatam*, dearest

अनन्य *ananya*, unique

अनन्यतम *ananyatam*, quite unique, peerless

आधुनिक *ādhunik*, modern

आधुनिकतम *ādhuniktam*, most modern

वह उच्चतर अध्ययन के लिए आक्सफर्ड चले गए। *vah uccatar adhyayan ke lie āksfard cale gae*, He went to Oxford for advanced study.

These forms are comparatively rare except in verse, and are elsewhere largely confined to the written language. To use the forms described in sections 1-3 above is never really incorrect.

5. Occasionally other Sanskrit superlative forms are met with in Hindi, not always preserving strict superlative sense, and again usually in the written language. The commonest are:

ज्येष्ठ *jyēsth*, older, eldest

कनिष्ठ *kanīsth*, younger, youngest

श्रेष्ठ *śrēsth*, very good, best

बलिष्ठ *balīsth*, very strong

सर्वश्रेष्ठ *sarvśrēsth*, foremost, supreme

6. Much more common are a limited number of Persian comparatives and superlatives. The latter likewise have intensive force as much as superlative.

बेहतर *†behtar* better<sup>1</sup>

बेहतरीन *†behtarīn* best, choice<sup>1</sup>

बदतर *†badtar* worse

ज्यादातर *†zyādātar* most (of); most commonly, very much

आपको इस दुकान में हिंदुस्तान के बेहतरीन कपड़े मिलेंगे। *āpko is dūkān meḥ hindustān ke behtarīn kapre milēnge*, You'll find India's choicest fabrics (on sale) in this shop.

ज्यादातर विद्यार्थी हिंदी पढ़ते हैं। *zyādātar vidyārthī hindī paḥte hain*, Most of the students study Hindi.

मैं ज्यादातर यहाँ बैठता हूँ। *main zyādātar yahām baiḥtā hūm*, I very often sit here.

<sup>1</sup> The first vowel of these words is usually short [e].

### COMPARATIVE AND OTHER EXPRESSIONS WITH ज्यादा *zyādā* AND अधिक *adhik*

1. The invariable and equivalent words ज्यादा *zyādā* and अधिक *adhik* are common as adjectives, pronouns, and adverbs in locutions whose English equivalents contain expressions of quantity such as

more; (very) many; too many;  
much; very much; too much

इस साल अधिक विद्यार्थी हैं। *is sāl adhik vidyārthī haiṁ*, There are more, very many students this year.

आप ज्यादा काम न कीजिए। *āp zyādā kām na kijiē*, Please don't do any more work, too much work.

आप ज्यादा न खाइए। *āp zyādā na khāiē*, Don't eat any more, too much.

मैं अब वहाँ ज्यादा जाता हूँ। *main ab wahāṁ zyādā jātā hūṁ*, I go there a lot now.

Their emphasis can be increased by prefixing them with बहुत (ही) *bahut (hī)*: e.g.

इस साल बहुत (ही) ज्यादा विद्यार्थी हैं। *is sāl bahut (hī) zyādā vidyārthī haiṁ*, There are a very great number of students, too many students, this year.

मैं अब वहाँ बहुत ज्यादा जाता हूँ। *main ab wahāṁ bahut zyādā jātā hūṁ*, I go there a great deal now.

The translation of expressions containing ज्यादा *zyādā* and अधिक *adhik* depends, of course, on the context. Since they can occur in a wide range of contexts, translation equivalents can vary considerably.

(a) Note that as adjectives and pronouns ज्यादा *zyādā* and अधिक *adhik* signify 'a large amount of' or 'a greater amount of than', and are not normally exact equivalents of और *aur*, which means 'additional'. Compare the sentences

और लीजिए। *aur lijiē*, Please take some more.

ज्यादा लीजिए। *zyādā lijiē*, Please take a larger helping, please take a lot.

(b) Note the frequent use of इतना *itnā* 'as many, as much, as this', with following pleonastic ज्यादा *zyādā* or अधिक *adhik*: e.g.

आपको इतना ज्यादा काम न करना चाहिए। *āpko itnā zyādā kām na karnā chāhiē*, You shouldn't work as hard as this.

उतना *utnā*, the corresponding adjective of distant reference, is used in a similar way.

2. Preceding adjectives, ज्यादा *zyādā* and अधिक *adhik* have the senses 'rather', 'very', or 'too' (this last especially when emphasized by बहुत *bahut*): e.g.

भारत का जलवायु ज्यादा गरम है। *bhārat kā jalvāyū zyādā garm hai*, India's climate is very hot.

मेरे लिए भारत का जलवायु बहुत ज्यादा गरम है। *mere lie bhārat kā jalvāyū bahut zyādā garm hai*, India's climate is too hot for me.

### REPORTS OF STATEMENTS AND QUESTIONS

Reports of statements made and questions asked are very frequently made by citing the exact words attributed to the speaker, linked by the conjunction कि *ki* to the principal clause of the sentence. Two English sentences are rephrased below to illustrate the structure of their Hindi equivalents.

I said (that) I would write the letter: I said that I shall write the letter.

I asked him when he had come: I asked him that when did you come.

#### 1. Statements

उसने कहा कि मैं सच बोलूंगा। *usne kahā ki main sac bolūngā*, He said he would speak the truth.

मैंने उनसे कहा कि आप अच्छी हिंदी बोलते हैं। *mainne unse kahā ki āp acchī hindī bolte haiṁ*, I told him he spoke Hindi well.

उसने मुझसे कहा कि आप अच्छी हिंदी बोलते हैं। *usne mujhse kahā ki āp acchī hindī bolte haiṁ*, He told me that I spoke Hindi well.

(a) The construction can be ambiguous (as can the English construction, though the ambiguities are not the same). The sentence 'I told him you spoke Hindi well', for instance, is also a possible translation equivalent of the second example given. This is so because third person pronouns are not normally used in this construction to denote a speaker or a person actually addressed.

(b) As far as pronouns are concerned a thoroughly systematic use of this construction is not felt to be obligatory, especially in language that is at all removed from the colloquial, and notably in the Western-influenced, literary prose language. Where pronouns are not used in accordance with

the logic of the construction, verb concord of course varies accordingly. An equivalent of the first example above could thus be

उसने कहा कि वह सब बोलेंगा । *usne kahā ki vah sac boleṅgā*.

(c) Sentences expressing a person's train of thought are usually cast in the same form as reports of statements and questions: e.g.

उसने सोचा कि मैं दिल्ली जाऊँगा । *usne socā ki main dillī jāūṅgā*, He thought he would go to Delhi.

(d) Linking कि *ki* is very frequently omitted in colloquial usage.

## 2. Questions

उसने मुझसे पूछा कि आप कैसे हैं? *usne mujhse pūchā ki āp haise haiṁ?* He asked me how I was.

मैं उनसे पूछूँगा कि क्या आप दिल्ली जा रहे हैं? *main usse pūchūṅgā ki kyā āp dillī jā rahe haiṁ?* I shall ask him if he is going to Delhi.

क्या आप जानते हैं कि क्लास कब शुरू होती है? *kyā āp jānte haiṁ ki klās kab surū hotī hai?* Do you know when the class begins?

(a) The notes to the preceding section also apply to this section. Note the alternative English equivalents of the first two examples: 'He asked how you were' and (assuming a suitable context) 'I shall ask him if you are going to Delhi'.

## INDIRECT COMMANDS

A request or command which is to be passed on to another person may be expressed by a subordinate clause containing a third person subjunctive verb, linked to its principal clause by the conjunction कि *ki*. An English sentence is rephrased below to illustrate the structure of its Hindi equivalent.

Tell him to stop work: Tell him that he should stop work.

उससे कहिए कि वे मुझे एक पत्र लिखें । *usse kahie ki ve mujhe ek patr likhēn*, Please ask, tell, him to write me a letter.

मैंने उससे कहा कि वह काम खत्म करे । *main usse kahā ki vah kām khatm kare*, I asked, told, him to stop work.

(a) Alternatively an infinitive in oblique case may be used with either of the postpositions के लिए *ke lie* or को *ko*. The request or command is then rather more direct in tone: e.g.

मैंने उनसे यहाँ आने को कहा । *main usse yahān āne ko kahā*, I told, asked, him to come here.

मैंने उनसे यहाँ आने के लिए कहा । *main usse yahān āne ke lie kahā*, I told, asked, him to come here.

(b) कहना *kahnā* expressing indirect commands is normally used in construction with से *se*, as in other cases. Used in construction with को *ko* it implies a distinctly peremptory command: e.g.

उसको यहाँ आने को कहो । *uska yahān āne ko kaho*, Tell him to come here.

(c) The verb पूछना *pūchnā* means 'ask' in the sense 'inquire', not 'request', and is thus of course not used in expressing indirect commands.

## VOCABULARY

अध्ययन *adhyayan*, m., study

जलवायु *javāyu*, m., climate

तमिल *tamil*, f., 'Tamil'

जीवन *jīvan*, m., life

विषय *viṣay*, m., subject, matter, topic

पन्ना *paundā*, m., page

गली *galī*, f., narrow street, alley

गंगा *gaṅgā*, f., River Ganges

यमुना *yamunā*, f., River Jumna

पुस्तकालय *pustakālay*, m., library

मित्र *mitr*, m., friend

कम से कम *kam se kam*, at least

## EXERCISE 31

हिंदी तमिल से आसान है । हिंदी तमिल से आसान भाषा है । क्या शहर का जीवन गाँव के जीवन से दिलचस्प होता है? उस विषय पर कम से कम तीन पन्ने लिखिए । जितने लोग हिंदी बोलते हैं, उतने कोई दूसरी भारतीय भाषा नहीं बोलते । भारत दुनिया के सबसे दिलचस्प देशों में से<sup>1</sup> एक है । उसे भारत के बारे में बहुत कुछ मालूम है । मैंने उनसे कहा कि आपको इससे बहुत ज्यादा काम करना पड़ेगा । उसने मुझसे पूछा कि क्या कपड़ा बाजार की उस गली में मिल सकता है । क्या आपने उससे कहा कि मैं कल नहीं आ सकूँगा? मैंने उससे कहा कि यह काम कल तक खत्म करे ।

<sup>1</sup> मैं से *main se*, literally 'from among'. This usage is discussed in Supplement III, p. 178.



## EXERCISE 32

The Ganges is longer than the Jumna. Bombay is nowadays the biggest city in India. It seems that you do more work than he. You'll meet several Indian students there. I need more books. This library is too small. He told his friends that he had already eaten. He told his friends to come to<sup>1</sup> his house at 6.15 p.m. As soon as I got your letter I told him that you were coming to Delhi.

<sup>1</sup> पर *par*.

## LESSON XVII

## COMPOUND VERBS

COMPOUND verbs are composites of verb stems with one of a small number of auxiliary verbs; their basic meaning is that of the verb stem, modified or made specific in some sense by the particular auxiliary used. The independent meaning of an auxiliary is not present, or is only figuratively present, in compound verbs. The auxiliaries may thus be called 'dependent auxiliaries'. Compound verbs are used very freely in most styles of Hindi, and the student must learn to use them reasonably accurately if his Hindi is to seem at all convincing to a native speaker. This takes time and effort. The first difficulty is that the common auxiliaries do not always lend one and the same additional shade of meaning to all the stems with which they may be used; the force of the auxiliaries is conditioned by the sense and range of usage of individual stems. Furthermore, similar modifications of the sense of stems can sometimes be brought about by more than one auxiliary, though the student will rarely have a free choice of these in conjunction with any given verb. Finally the use or non-use of compound verbs is frequently a matter of style or taste. The student must train himself to observe just which collocations are used by native speakers or writers, and in which contexts.

The following discussion of the main dependent auxiliaries, with the attached general notes, should give sufficient guidance for most ordinary collocations to be intelligible.

1. जाना *jānā*

जाना *jānā* in general stresses the fact that an action is completed or carried through as a process. It stresses the element of action inherent in such intransitive verbs as होना *honā*, रहना *rahnā*, बैठना *baithnā*, which may express both action and non-active state. It occurs with both intransitive and transitive verbs. It is particularly common with verbs of motion.

वह दो बजे यहाँ सा जाएगा । *vah do baje yahūm ā jāgā*, He will arrive, get here, at two.

वह मर गया । *vah mar gayā*, He died, he's dead.

मैं ठीक समय पर दिल्ली पहुँच गया । *main thīk samay par dillī pahūnc gayā*.  
I arrived punctually in Delhi.

बारिश में घास हरी हो जाती है । *bāris meṁ ghās harī ho jātī hai*, When it rains the grass turns green.

हो गया? *ho gayā?* Have you finished? (your work, meal, etc.).<sup>1</sup>

मैं सब रोटियाँ खा गया । *main sab roṭiyāṁ khā gayā*, I ate all the rotis (finished them, ate them up).

वह कुर्सी पर बैठ गया । *vah kursī par baiṭh gayā*, He sat down on a chair.

बैठ जाइए! *baiṭh jāie!* Take a seat, please.

बरसात में पानी यहाँ रह जाता है । *barsāt meṁ pānī yahām rah jātā hai*, During the rainy season water collects here.

आप मेरी बात समझ गए होंगे । *āp merī bāt samajh gae hōnge*, You will have understood, grasped, what I've been saying.

लड़का पूरा पन्ना पढ़ गया । *laṛkā pūrā paṇnā paṛh gayā*, The boy read through the entire page.

(a) जाना *jānā* is only rarely used with the stem of the verb चलना *calnā* 'move, go'; चल जाना *cal jānā* has the sense 'begin, get going'. The senses 'move along, go away' are expressed by चला जाना *calā jānā*: e.g.

तीन आदमी रास्ते में चले जा रहे थे । *tin ādmī rāste meṁ cale jā rahe the*, Three men were walking along the road.

See further Supplement II, pp. 172 f.

## 2. लेना *lenā*

लेना *lenā* has a general reflexive sense, suggesting that the given action is of particular interest to the doer, and often carrying an implication that it is carried out with difficulty, cleverly contrived, etc. It is often used with its own stem *le*. It is rare with intransitive verbs.

मैं ग्यारह बजे खा लेता हूँ । *main gyārah baje khā letā hūm*, I have my meal at 11 o'clock.

मैं एक मकान खरीद लूँगा । *main ek makān kharīd lūngā*, I'm going to buy, going to buy myself, a house.

मैंने यह निश्चय कर लिया कि वह यहाँ नहीं रह सकता । *mainne yah niścay kar liyā ki vah yahām nahīm rah saktā*, I decided that he couldn't stay here (after some thought).

आपने बहुत हिंदी सीख ली । *āpne bahut hindī sikh lī*, You've learned a lot of Hindi.

<sup>1</sup> Literally 'has (it) become (finished)'.

राम से ले लो, और श्याम को दे दो । *rām se le lo, aur śyām ko de do*, Take it from Rām and give it to Śyām.<sup>1</sup>

मैं उसके साथ हो लिया । *main uske sāth ho liyā*, I went (along) with him, accompanied him.

## 3. देना *denā*

देना *denā* is frequently complementary to लेना *lenā*, suggesting that the given action particularly concerns some other person than the doer. Sometimes it simply stresses that an action is complete and done with. Note the common दे देना *de denā*; cf. ले लेना *le lenā* above. देना *denā* is not very common with intransitive verbs.

जज ने यह निर्णय कर दिया कि वह निरपराध है । *jj ne yah nirṇay kar diyā ki vah niraparādh hai*, The judge decided, determined, that he was innocent.

लड़के ने पूरा पन्ना पढ़ दिया । *laṛke ne pūrā paṇnā paṛh diyā*, The boy read out the entire page.

उसने अपने मित्र को छोड़ दिया । *usne apne mitr ko chor diyā*, He abandoned his friend.

चल दिए? *cal diē?* You're off?<sup>2</sup>

गाड़ी चल दी । *gārī cal dī*, The train left.

दरवाजा बंद कर दीजिए । *darvāzā band kar dijie*, Please close the door.

लड़की रो दी । *laṛkī ro dī*, The girl burst into tears (could not hold back her tears).

## 4. पड़ना *paṛnā*, उठना *uṭhnā*

These verbs, meaning literally 'fall' or 'be found', and 'rise', are often used with stems which themselves denote actions of falling and rising respectively (either literally or figuratively). They also often stress the idea of a change of circumstance, particularly a sudden one. The majority of relevant stems collocate with either one or the other, but with some stems both are used, and may express different degrees of the given action.

कागज़ फर्श पर गिर पड़ा । *kāgaz farś par gir paṛā*, The paper fell to the floor.

गाड़ी चल पड़ी । *gārī cal paṛī*, The train began to move.

लड़का पानी में कूद पड़ा । *laṛkā pānī meṁ kūd paṛā*, The boy jumped into the water.

<sup>1</sup> For दे दो *de do* 'give' see following section.

<sup>2</sup> For perfective forms used with reference to future time, as exemplified by दिए *diē* here, see Supplement II, pp. 170 f.

अंत में वह घर से बाहर निकल पड़ा । *ant mein vah ghar se bahar nikal payā*, Finally he emerged from the house.

कवि की आवाज़ कमरे में गूँज उठी । *havi kī āvāz kamre mein gūnj uṭhī*, 'The poet's voice rang out in the room.

वह बोल उठा कि . . . *vah bol uṭhā ki . . .*, He (suddenly) said, blurted out, that . . .

लड़की रो पड़ी । *larkī ro parī*, The girl burst into tears.

लड़की रो उठी । *larkī ro uṭhī*, The girl began to sob bitterly.

मैं हँस पड़ा । *main hamṣ payā*, I burst out laughing.

हम हँस उठे । *ham hamṣ uṭhe*, We roared with laughter.

वह शोर से चौंक पड़ा । *vah šor se caunkh payā*, He started at the noise.

वह शोर से चौंक उठा । *vah šor se caunkh uṭhā*, He started violently at the noise.

#### 5. डालना *ḍālā*

डालना *ḍālā*, meaning literally 'throw down', may suggest either that the given action is violent, decisive, or drastic, or that it is done in an off-hand, casual way.

उसने अपने भाई को मार डाला । *usne apne bhāī ko mār ḍālā*, He killed his brother.

उसने अपना सब माल बेच डाला । *usne apnā sab māl beḥ ḍālā*, He sold up, sold off, all his goods.

(a) मारना *mārā* used alone often means 'beat, strike'; मार डालना *mār ḍālā* regularly means 'kill'.

#### 6. बैठना *baiṭhā*

बैठना *baiṭhā*, meaning literally 'sit', most often suggests something anticlimactic, a deterioration of some kind. Often it implies that an action is censurable, e.g. done foolishly, thoughtlessly, maliciously or with cunning.

वह रास्ते में अपना सारा माल खो बैठा । *vah rāste mein apnā sārā māl kho baiṭhā*, He lost all his belongings on the way.

अरे यह क्या कर बैठे हैं? *are yah kyā kar baiṭhe hain?* Oh, what have you done, gone and done, now?<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> यह *yah* is used in a vague demonstrative way here, referring to the whole unpleasant situation.

देशद्रोही एक षड्यंत्र रच बैठे थे । *deśdrohī ek ṣaḍyantra rac baiṭhe the*, The traitors laid a plot.

सहसा वह उठ बैठा । *sahsā vah uṭh baiṭhā*, Suddenly he started up (involuntarily).

वह अपनी माँ से लड़ बैठा । *vah apnī mām se laṛ baiṭhā*, He quarrelled with his mother.

#### 7. आना *ānā*

आना *ānā* is complementary to जाना *jānā* (though not nearly as common), suggesting the completion or emphasizing the carrying through of actions directed towards a place, literal or figurative, from which they are considered. It is of course most common with verbs of motion.

मैं दो बजे पहुँच आया । *main do baje pahunch āyā*, I arrived at two o'clock.

बीस मिनट चलकर वह शहर से निकल आया । *bīs minuṭ culkar vah šahr se nikal āyā*, After walking twenty minutes he came out of the town.

दीवार पर लताएँ उग आई हैं । *dīvār par latācū uḡ āī hain*, Creepers have grown, grown up, over the wall.

(a) आना *ānā* is not used with the stem of the verb चलना *calnā* 'move, go'; note the collocation चला आना *calā ānā*, parallel to चला जाना *calā jānā*.

यह परंपरा हजारों बरस से चली आ रही है । *yah paramparā hazārūn baras se calī ā rahī hai*, This tradition has been carried on for thousands of years.

See further Supplement II, pp. 172 f.

#### 8. चलना *calnā*

This verb is sometimes used to stress the progressive element in an action.

शाम का समय था । अँधेरा हो चला था । *śām kā samay thā. andherā ho calā thā*, It was evening. Darkness was drawing on (it was getting dark).

#### 9. निकलना *nikalnā*

निकलना *nikalnā*, meaning literally 'emerge', sometimes suggests suddenness or unexpectedness of the given action, much as पड़ना *paṛnā*, with verbs of motion.

वह अचानक मेरे घर के सामने आ निकला । *vah acānak mere ghar ke sāmne ā niklā*, He suddenly appeared in front of my house.

बैल रस्सी तुड़ककर भाग निकला । *bail rassī tuṛākar bhāḡ niklā*, The ox broke the rope and escaped.

10. पहुँचना *pahūncnā*

पहुँचना *pahūncnā*, used with आना *ānā* and also जाना *jānā*, stresses the implications of arrival rather than the performance of the given action.

वह दो बजे आगरे आ पहुँचा । *vah do baje āgre ā pahūncā*, He reached Agra at two o'clock (after a long journey, for an impending meeting, etc.).

11. पाना *pānā*

पाना *pānā*, meaning literally 'get, find', stresses not so much ability to perform an action (cf. सकना *saknā*) as possibility of performing it, ability to complete it. Compound verbs containing पाना *pānā* are very often negated.

मैं यह काम नहीं कर पाया । *main yah kām nahīn kar pāyā*, I wasn't able to do this work (couldn't manage it).

12. रखना *rakhnā*

रखना *rakhnā* underlines the fact that the action results in the achievement of a state of some duration.

मैं पाँच बजे तक सोच रखूँगा । *main pāñc baje tak soe rakhūngā*, I shall make my mind up, decide, by five o'clock.

मैंने एक जगह रोक रखी है । *mainne ek jagah rok rakhī hai*, I've reserved a place, seat.

लड़की ने साड़ी पहन रखी है । *larkī ne sārī pahn rakhī hai*, The girl has on, is wearing, a sari.

## General notes

(a) Note particularly that although the force of compound verbs can often best be brought out by the use of English translation equivalents of colloquial character, compound verb usage in Hindi has nothing exclusively colloquial about it.

(b) Compound verbs (other than those with auxiliary पाना *pānā*) are relatively rarely negated in sentences of neutral style and emphasis. In so far as negatives occur in such sentences they precede stems; but in affective contexts they frequently occur between stem and auxiliary.

(c) Compound verbs are used in construction with ने *ne* when both the stem verb and the auxiliary are themselves used independently with ने *ne*, except that no compound verbs with auxiliary पाना *pānā* are used in

construction with ने *ne*. Of these verbs which are used independently both with and without ने *ne*, at least one can be used in either construction with transitive auxiliaries, viz. रो देना *ro denā* (usually without, sometimes with ने *ne*). See the examples above for illustrations.

(d) In some cases questions of syllable economy and a feeling for the balance of a given sentence may be sufficient to decide whether a compound verb will or will not be used. Sometimes the position of a verb in non-final or final clause is a deciding factor. A Hindi speaker will often feel that an idea expressed by means of a simple verb is somehow incomplete and presupposes something following in the same sentence, whereas use of a compound verb rounds off a sentence more effectively.

(e) Compound verbs do not normally form absolutes in *-kar/-ke*. Compare the following sentences:

वह बैठ गया । *vah baiṭh gayā*, He sat down.

वह बैठकर बोला कि . . . *vah baiṭhkar bolā ki . . .*, He sat down and said that . . .

(f) Note that compound verbs are in form identical with collocations of unextended absolute with following finite verb (from which they derive historically). In some cases the same form of words can be interpreted in different ways, dependent on its context, and, usually, intonation: e.g.

वह खाना खा गया है । *vah khānā khā gayā hai*  
could mean 'He's finished his meal', or, possibly 'he's eaten and left'.

(g) Compound verbs may be formed on the stems of conjunct verbs (see pp. 57 ff.) just as on other verb stems: e.g.

मैंने काम शुरू कर दिया है *mainne kām śurū kar diyā hai*, I've started work (compound verb formed on शुरू करना *śurū karnā*).

## VOCABULARY

घास <i>ghās</i> , f., grass	अंत <i>ant</i> , m., end
रोटी <i>rotī</i> , f., bread (chapatti)	कवि <i>kavī</i> , m., poet
निश्चय <i>niscay</i> , m., decision, resolve	आवाज़ <i>āvāz</i> , f., voice
निर्णय <i>nirṇay</i> , m., decision (between alternatives)	शोर <i>śor</i> , m., noise
फर्श <i>farś</i> , m., floor	माल <i>māl</i> , m., goods, belongings
	देशद्रोही <i>deśdrohī</i> , m., traitor

पडयंत्र * <i>ṣaḍyantra</i> , m., plot	चौंकना <i>caumkṇā</i> , start, be startled
लता <i>latā</i> , f., creeper	रचना <i>racnā</i> , create, produce
परंपरा <i>paramparā</i> , f., tradition	उठना <i>uṭhnā</i> , rise
बरस <i>baras</i> , m., year	लड़ना <i>laṛnā</i> , fight; quarrel
अंधेरा <i>andherā</i> , m., darkness; adj., dark	उगना <i>ugnā</i> , grow (intransitive)
बैल <i>bail</i> , m., ox, bullock	रोकना <i>roknā</i> , stop, check
रस्सी <i>rassī</i> , f., rope; string	तुड़ाना <i>tuṛānā</i> , break, cause to be broken
साड़ी <i>sārī</i> , f., sari	पहनना <i>pahnnā</i> , put on (clothes); पहन रचना <i>pahn rakhnā</i> , have on, be wearing
अगह <i>†jagah</i> , f., place	खोना <i>khonā</i> , lose
निरपराध <i>niraparādh</i> , innocent	सहसा <i>sahsā</i> , suddenly
छोड़ना <i>choṛnā</i> , leave, abandon	अरे <i>are</i> , oh! etc. (exclamation, often of surprise; also to attract attention)
गिरना <i>girnā</i> , fall	
कूदना <i>kūdnā</i> , leap, jump	
निकलना <i>nikalnā</i> , emerge	
गूँजना <i>gūmjnā</i> , resound	
हँसना <i>haṁsnā</i> , laugh	

## LESSON XVIII

## GROUPS OF VERBS OF RELATED STEM

MANY Hindi verbs may be classified in pairs or larger groups according to a similarity in the form of their stems, reflecting a loose semantic relationship. The larger groups may be built up from a consideration of related pairs, the characteristic types of which are discussed in sections 1 and 2 below. The most commonly contrasting pairs are of one intransitive and one transitive verb, or of two transitive verbs; members of a pair are distinguished from each other by one of a number of broadly regular vocalic alternations.

## 1. Intransitive and transitive verbs

A. The second member of the pair shows *-ā-* medially or finally in its stem; the corresponding stem syllable in the first member either shows *-a-*, or is normally non-realized,<sup>1</sup> with a preceding short vowel.

(i) Second member shows *-ā-* medially in the stem

मरना <i>marnā</i> , die	मारना <i>mārṇā</i> , heat; kill
निकलना <i>nikalnā</i> , emerge	निकालना <i>nikālṇā</i> , eject; extract
फटना <i>phaṭnā</i> , tear	फाड़ना <i>phāṛṇā</i> , tear
लदना <i>ladnā</i> , be laden	सादना <i>lādnā</i> , load
उतरना <i>utarnā</i> , descend, get down	उतारना <i>utārṇā</i> , take down, off
छपना <i>chapnā</i> , be printed	छापना <i>chāpnā</i> , print

(ii) Second member shows *-ā-* finally in the stem

बनना <i>bannā</i> , be made, exist, become	बनाना <i>banānā</i> , make
जलना <i>jalnā</i> , burn	जलाना <i>jalānā</i> , burn
उठना <i>uṭhnā</i> , rise	उठाना <i>uṭhānā</i> , raise
खिलना <i>khilnā</i> , bloom	खिलाना <i>khilānā</i> , make bloom
मिलना <i>milnā</i> , accrue, be available	मिलाना <i>milānā</i> , bring together, cause to meet

(a) Note in the pair फटना *phaṭnā* — फाड़ना *phāṛṇā* the extra distinctive feature of alternation between retroflex plosive *ṭ* and flapped *r*, and see other similar examples below.

<sup>1</sup> See p. xxiv.

B. The second member shows *-ā-* finally in the stem and a short vowel in the preceding syllable; the corresponding stem syllables in the first member show normally non-realized *-a<sup>1</sup>*, and a long vowel. (The usual vowel alternations are: *ā* — *a*; *ai* or *e* — *i*; *o* — *u*; *ū* — *u*).

जागना <i>jāgnā</i> , be awake, waken	जगना <i>jagānā</i> , waken
घूमना <i>ghūmnā</i> , wander, turn	घुमाना <i>ghumānā</i> , convey about, drive round; turn
बैठना <i>baiṭhnā</i> , sit	बिठाना <i>biṭhānā</i> , give a seat to <sup>2</sup>
लेटना <i>leṭnā</i> , lie down	लिटाना <i>liṭānā</i> , put lying down <sup>3</sup>
सोना <i>sonā</i> , sleep	सुलाना <i>sulānā</i> , put, rock to sleep
रोना <i>ronā</i> , weep	रुलाना <i>ruḷānā</i> , make weep

(a) Where stems of first members end in long vowels second members show a glide consonant (*l* in two examples above).

(b) Occasional transitives in *-o-* exist alongside transitives in *-ā-*, and may be preferred: e.g.

भीगना <i>bhīgnā</i> , be wet	भिगाना <i>bhigānā</i> (भिगना <i>bhigānā</i> ), make wet
------------------------------	---

C. The second member shows *-ū-* or (more commonly) *-o-* medially in the stem<sup>4</sup> where the first shows *-u-* or *-ū-*; or *-e-* where the first shows *-i-* or *-ī-*; or *-ī-* where the first shows *-i-*.

रुकना <i>rukṇā</i> , stop	रोकना <i>rokṇā</i> , stop
खुलना <i>khulnā</i> , open	खोलना <i>kholnā</i> , open
लुटना <i>luṭnā</i> , be looted	लूटना <i>lūṭnā</i> , loot
टूटना <i>ṭūṭnā</i> , break	तोड़ना <i>torṇā</i> , break
छूटना <i>chūṭnā</i> , leave	छोड़ना <i>chorṇā</i> , leave, abandon
फूटना <i>phūṭnā</i> , burst	फोड़ना <i>phorṇā</i> , burst
धुलना <i>dhulnā</i> , be, get washed	धोना <i>dhonā</i> , wash
दिखना <i>dikhṇā</i> , दिखना <i>dikhṇā</i> , be visible	देखना <i>dekhnā</i> , see
पिटना <i>piṭnā</i> , be beaten	पीटना <i>pīṭnā</i> , beat
खिंचना <i>khimcnā</i> , be drawn, pulled	खींचना <i>khimcnā</i> , pull
घिरना <i>ghirṇā</i> , be surrounded	घेरना <i>ghernā</i> , surround; besiege
बिकना <i>bikṇā</i> , be sold	बेचना <i>becnā</i> , sell

<sup>1</sup> See p. xxiv.

<sup>2</sup> Also बैठाना *baiṭhānā*.

<sup>3</sup> Also लेटाना *leṭānā*.

<sup>4</sup> Finally in धोना *dhonā* 'wash'.

(a) Note the consonantal alternations in the pairs टूटना *ṭūṭnā* — तोड़ना *torṇā*; छूटना *chūṭnā* — छोड़ना *chorṇā*; फूटना *phūṭnā* — फोड़ना *phorṇā*; बिकना *bikṇā* — बेचना *becnā*; also *l* in धुलना *dhulnā*, with which cf. धुलाना *dhulānā* below.

(b) Occasional transitives in *-e-* pair with intransitives from Group A: e.g.

बिखरना <i>bikhraṇā</i> , be scattered	बिखरेना <i>bikherṇā</i> , scatter
सिमटना <i>simatṇā</i> , shrink, contract	समेटना <i>samēṭnā</i> , collect together

## 2. Pairs of transitive verbs

These are classified according to the same criteria used for the pairs of one intransitive and one transitive verb in section 1 above.

### A (ii).

समझना <i>samajhnā</i> , understand	समझाना <i>samajhānā</i> , explain
पढ़ना <i>paṛhnā</i> , read	पढ़ाना <i>paṛhānā</i> , teach
गुनना <i>gunnā</i> , hear	गुनाना <i>gunānā</i> , relate, tell
करना <i>karnā</i> , do	कराना <i>karānā</i> , effect, bring about, cause to be done

### B.

लादना <i>lādṇā</i> , load	लदना <i>ladānā</i> , cause to be laden
देखना <i>dekhnā</i> , see	दिखाना <i>dikhānā</i> , show
सीखना <i>sikhṇā</i> , learn	सिखाना <i>sikhānā</i> , teach
तोड़ना <i>torṇā</i> , break	तुड़ाना <i>tuṛānā</i> , break, cause to be broken
छोड़ना <i>chorṇā</i> , leave, abandon	छुड़ाना <i>churānā</i> , cause to leave
पीना <i>pīnā</i> , drink	पिखाना <i>piṭhānā</i> , give to drink
खेलना <i>khelnā</i> , play	खिलाना <i>khilānā</i> , cause to play
खाना <i>khānā</i> , eat	खिलाना <i>khilānā</i> , feed
लेना <i>lenā</i> , take	लिवाना <i>livānā</i> , cause to be taken, brought
देना <i>denā</i> , give	दिलाना <i>dilānā</i> , cause to be given
धोना <i>dhouṇā</i> , wash	धुलाना <i>dhulānā</i> , cause to be washed
बोलना <i>bolnā</i> , speak, say	बुलाना <i>bulānā</i> , call, summon; invite

(a) Where stems of first members end in long vowels second members show a glide consonant (usually *l*, but also *v*; note लिवाना *livānā*).

(b) Note the vowel alternation *i* — *ī* in पीना *pīnā* — पिलाना *pilānā*, etc., of which no common example was adduced in section 1B above. The alternation in खाना *khānā* — खिलाना *khilānā* is exceptional.

(c) The verbs बताना *batānā* 'relate, inform' and कमाना *kamānā* 'earn' may be noted here. They do not pair formally with other verbs, but are relatable to the nouns बात *bāt* (and the verbal expression बात करना *bāt karnā*) and काम *kām*.

(d) The second member of a pair occasionally has an alternative form with *-ī* in final stem syllable, e.g. सिखलाना *sikhilānā*, दिखलाना *dikhilānā*, and बतलाना *batlānā*, equivalent in sense to the corresponding forms without *-ī*; and कहलाना *kahlānā*, common in the sense 'to be called, named'.

(e) Many second members of transitive pairs are used in construction with two sentence objects, a direct case object and an indirect (oblique case) object with को *ko*, which usually precedes it. Others are used with one object and agentive expressions containing the postposition से *se*. See the following examples, and the further discussion of these types of construction in the section on causative verbs, below.

वह घर से अभी नहीं निकला? तो निकाल दो! *vah ghar se abhī nahīm niklā? to nikāl do!*<sup>1</sup> He hasn't come out of the house yet? Then drive him out!

पुस्तक अगले हफ्ते छप जाएगी। *pustak agle hafte chap jāegī*, 'The book will be printed next week.

मैं उसे छापूंगा। *main use chāpūngā*, I shall print it.

यह लकड़ी नहीं जलती। *yah lakṛī nahīm jaltī*, This wood doesn't burn.

उसने तरकारी जलाई। *usne tarkārī jalāī*, He burned the curry.

सूरज से फूल खिलते हैं। *sūraj se phūl khilte haiṁ*, The sun brings the flowers out.<sup>2</sup>

मैं आपको अपनी गाड़ी में लंदन घुमाऊंगा। *main āpko apnī gārī meṁ landan ghumāūngā*, I'll drive you round London in my car.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> For तो *to* see Lesson XXIII, pp. 140 f.

<sup>2</sup> Agentive expressions containing the postposition से *se* can be used with many intransitive verbs, as in this sentence.

<sup>3</sup> The word लंदन *landan* is here used adverbially, not as an object of the verb; see Supplement I, p. 168.

माँ ने बच्चों को गेंद खिलाई। *maṁi uc bacchō ko gēnd khilāī*, The mother got her children to play ball.

मैं उससे बात करना चाहता हूँ। उसे बुलाइए। *main usse bāt karnā cāhtā hūṁ. use bulāīe*, I want to speak to him. Please call him.

यह छड़ी आगानी से नहीं टूटती। *yah chuṛī āsānī se nahīm ṭūṭtī*, This stick doesn't break easily.

मैं उसे तोड़ूंगा। *main use ṭoṛūṁgā*, I shall break it.

गाड़ी एक बजे छूटती है। *gārī ek baje chūṭtī hai*, 'The train leaves at one o'clock.

उसे छोड़ दो! *use chor do!* Leave that, him, alone!

हर सोमवार को कपड़े धुनते हैं। *har samvār ko kapṛe dhulte haiṁ*, Monday, washday.

बहुत दिनों से आप दिख नहीं। *bahut dinō se āp dikhe nahīm*, I haven't seen you, you haven't been about, for a good while.

हमने चित्र देखे। *hamne citṛ dekhe*, We looked at the pictures.

मैं हिंदी पढ़ रहा हूँ। *main hīndī paṛh rahā hūṁ*, I am studying, reading, Hindi.

मैं अपने बेटे को हिंदी पढ़ा रहा हूँ। *main apne bēṭe ko hīndī paṛhā rahā hūṁ*, I'm teaching my son Hindi.

मैंने उसे एक कहानी सुनाई। *main use ek kahānī sunāī*, I told him a story.

मैं आपसे यह काम कराऊंगा। *main āpse yah kām karāūngā*, I'll get you to do this work, get this work done by you.

मैं आपका उससे परिचय कराऊंगा। *main āpkā usse paricay karāūṁgā*, I'll introduce you to him (cause your acquaintance with him to be brought about).<sup>1</sup>

उसने दो आदमियों से गाड़ी चारे से लदा दी। *usne do ādmiyō se gārī cāre se ladā dī*, He got the wagon loaded up with fodder by two men.

मुझे अपनी पुस्तक दिखाइए। *mujhe apnī pustak dikhāīe*, Please show me your book.

बैल रस्सी को तुड़ाकर भाग निकला। *bail russī ko ṭuṛākar bhāg niklā*, The ox broke the rope and escaped.

मैं इस दुकान पर दस रुपए का नोट तुड़ाऊंगा। *main is dūkān par das rupae kā noṭ ṭuṛāūngā*, I shall change a 10 rupee note in this shop.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. the simpler मैं आपको उससे मिलाऊंगा *main āpko usse milāūngā*.

राजा ने किले से शत्रु के छत्के छुड़ाए । *rājā ne qile se śatru ke chakke chūṛāe*, The rajah drove off the enemy's detachments from the fort.

उसने मुझे एक गिलास पानी पिलाया । *usne mujhe ek gilās pānī pilāyā*, He gave me a glass of water (to drink).

उन्होंने आपको क्या खिलाया? *unhonne āpko kyā khilāyā?* What did they give you to eat?

मैंने दूकान से कुछ चीजें लीवाई । *mainne dūkān se kuch chīzēn livāīm*, I had some things brought from the shop.

भारत की राजधानी दिल्ली कहलाती है । *bhārat kī rājdhānī dillī kahlātī hai*, The capital of India is called Delhi.

Before leaving this section, note that not all verbs in *-ānā* are transitive. A considerable number are intransitive, including most of those based on nouns or adjectives: e.g.

लजाना *lajānā*, be ashamed, embarrassed, modest  
सुस्ताना *sustānā*, rest

Note also that some verbs are used intransitively and transitively without difference of form: e.g.

बदलना *badalnā*, change  
भरना *bharnā*, be filled; fill  
घबराना *ghabrānā*, be perturbed; make anxious

### 3. Three-member groups

Certain verbs figure in the above tables as both the second member of an intransitive-transitive pair and the first of a transitive-transitive pair. Thus triads of associated verbs can be set up: e.g.

लदना <i>ladnā</i>	लादना <i>lādnā</i>	लदाना <i>ladānā</i>
टूटना <i>ṭūṭnā</i>	तोड़ना <i>ṭoṛnā</i>	तुड़ाना <i>ṭuṛānā</i>
छूटना <i>chūṭnā</i>	छोड़ना <i>choṛnā</i>	छुड़ाना <i>chuṛānā</i>
धुलना <i>dhulnā</i>	धोना <i>dhonā</i>	धुलाना <i>dhulānā</i>
दिखना <i>dikhnā</i>	देखना <i>dekhnā</i>	दिखाना <i>dikhānā</i>

The student may find it helpful to think of the last verb of such a triad as a causative formed on the first, and of the second verb of transitive pairs as a causative referable either to a non-existent intransitive or passive verb or directly to the first transitive verb of the pair. But since both the construction of these verbs and the clarity with which they are seen to

express 'causation' varies, only the verbs described in the following section, which show a distinctive marker syllable and uniform construction, are described as causatives here.

### CAUSATIVE VERBS

Verbs showing final stem syllable *-vā-* are almost all used in construction with agentive expressions containing the postposition *se*. These verbs are conveniently described as causatives, and are all associated with two- or three-member groups of verbs of related stem. The following examples may be compared with forms given above.

मरवाना *marvānā*, have killed, arrange the killing of (by someone)

निकलवाना *nikalvānā*, to have put out, etc. ( " )

फड़वाना *phaṛvānā*, to have torn ( " )

लदवाना *ladvānā*, to have loaded ( " )

छपवाना *chapvānā*, to get printed ( " )

बनवाना *banvānā*, to get made ( " )

Similarly सुनवाना *sunvānā*; पिलवाना *pilvānā*; खिलवाना *khilvānā*; रकवाना *rukvānā*; खुलवाना *khulvānā*; तुड़वाना *ṭuṛvānā*; करवाना *karvānā*; बुलवाना *bulvānā*; फुड़वाना *phuṛvānā*; छुड़वाना *chuṛvānā*, etc.

मैं पुस्तक छपवाऊँगा । *main pustak chapvāūngā*, I shall have the book printed.

मैं अपने भाई से पुस्तक छपवाऊँगा । *main apne bhāī se pustak chapvāūngā*, I shall get my brother to print the book.

मैं अपने बेटे को अच्छे अध्यापक से हिंदी पढ़वा रहा हूँ । *main apne betē ko acche adhyāpak se hindī paṛhvā rahā hūn*, I'm having my son taught Hindi by a good teacher.

यह काम अच्छे मिस्त्री से करवाइए ! *yah kām acche mīstrī se karvāiē!* Get a good workman to do this job!

मैं आपका उससे परिचय करवाऊँगा । *main āpkā usse paricay karvāūngā*, I'll get you introduced to him.

राम कुमार को बुलवाइए । *rām kunār ko bulvāiē*, Please send for Rām Kunār (have him sent for).

उसने अपने शत्रु का मकान जलवा दिया । *usne apne śatru kā mahān jalvā diyā*, He had his enemy's house burnt down.

मैं मुलज़िम को पुलिस से छुड़ा दूँगा । *main mulzim ko pulis se churvā dūngā*, I shall get the police to set the accused free.



(a) Where a causative verb associates with a three-member group of verbs of related stem it will not be readily distinguishable in sense from the third member if the latter is also used in construction with *se*. Thus the verbs लदवाना *ladvānā*, धुलवाना *dhulvānā* are semantic and syntactical equivalents of लदाना *ladānā* and धुलाना *dhulanā* respectively, whereas दिखवाना *dikhvānā* is distinct in construction and sense from दिखाना *dikhānā* and दिखलाना *dikhlanā*.

मैं आपको पत्र दिख(ल)ाऊँगा । *main āpko patr dikh(l)āūngā*, I shall show you the letter.

मैं आपको मंत्री से पत्र दिखवाऊँगा । *main āpko mantrī se patr dikhvāūngā*, I shall get the secretary to show you the letter.

(b) Where a causative verb associates with a pair only of verbs of related stem, it is normally distinct in construction and sense from the second member of the pair, e.g. पढ़वाना *paṛhvānā*, सुनवाना *sunvānā*. But note that कराना *karānā* and करवाना *karvānā* show the same construction and, though they may be clearly distinguishable in sense in certain contexts (see examples above), are not necessarily so. The following two sentences, for example, may be interchangeable:

मैं आपसे यह काम कराऊँगा । *main āpse yah kām karāūngā*, I'll get you to do this work.

मैं आपसे यह काम करवाऊँगा । *main āpse yah kām karvāūngā*, I'll get you to do this work.

A semantic distinction is possible, however, between these sentences according to the attitude which they imply on the part of the speaker; the second could well be less circumspect, implying greater authority on the speaker's part, or power to get the work done.

(c) Where third and fourth members of a group of verbs are both used in construction with *se*, the *-vā-* form tends to be the more common.

## VOCABULARY

लकड़ी *lahrī*, f., wood  
तरकारी *tarkārī*, f., curry  
सूरज *sūraj*, m., sun  
फूल *phūl*, m., flower  
गेंद *gēnd*, f., ball  
छड़ी *chārī*, f., stick, cane

चित्र *citr*, m., picture  
चारा *cārā*, m., fodder  
नोट *not*, m., note (money)  
छक्का *chakkā*, m., squad, detachment  
(literally 'group of six')  
गिलास *gilās*, m., glass (for drinking)

अध्यापक <i>adhyāpak</i> , m., teacher	वाक्य <i>vākya</i> , m., sentence
मिस्त्री <i>mistrī</i> , m., mechanic, (skilled) workman	लेख <i>lekh</i> , m., essay, article
मुल्जिम <i>mulzim</i> , m., accused person	तुड़ाना <i>tuṛānā</i> , break, cause to be broken; get change for (money)
पुलिस <i>pulis</i> , f., police	बिछाना <i>bichānā</i> , spread
बिस्तर <i>bistar</i> , m., bedding	बहुत दिनों से <i>bahut dinon se</i> , for (i.e. since) a long time
सीट <i>sīt</i> , f., seat; नीचे की सीट <i>nīche hī</i> <i>sīt</i> , lower seat	परिचय <i>paricay</i> , m., acquaintance
गधा <i>gadā</i> , m., donkey, ass	पीछे से <i>pīche se</i> , from behind, from the rear
धोबी <i>dhobī</i> , m., washerman	

## EXERCISE 33

जैसे ही गाड़ी छटी, वैसे ही मैंने नीचे की सीट पर अपना बिस्तर बिछा दिया । फिर कपड़े बदलकर मैं लेट गया । उस गधे पर किसी से सामान लदवाओ । उसने अखबार में जो लेख छपवाया था, उसे पढ़कर वे हैंस पड़े । उसे समझाए कि वह अपना काम हमेशा समय पर खत्म करे । मैं उसे बुलाकर उसका आपसे परिचय कराऊँगा । अपने लड़के को किसी अच्छे स्कूल में पढ़वाइए । मैं आपको लंदन घुमाना चाहता हूँ । आप उस दूकान में अच्छे कपड़े बनवा सकते हैं ।

## EXERCISE 34

I got off the train at Allahabad. Kindly collect your luggage from the rear (of the bus).<sup>1</sup> Show me what you've written. What have you gone and done? You've broken the chair! You've learned a lot of Hindi. Who taught you? We get our clothes washed by a dhobi. The train doesn't stop here. The train has just left. I get you to write a few sentences in Hindi every day.

<sup>1</sup> Luggage from the roof storage rack of buses is often handed down to passengers at the rear. Use the verb उतारना *utārṇā*.

## LESSON XIX

### PASSIVE FORMS

COMPOSITE verbal expressions with passive force are used in the majority of aspectual, tense, and modal patterns and as infinitives. They consist of perfective participles collocating with appropriate following forms of the verb जाना *jānā*. Both parts of the composite show concord with subjects, except in impersonal constructions (see below). The action of an agent is expressed by use of the postposition से *se*. Negatives precede both parts of the composite in sentences of neutral style and emphasis. वे शत्रु से मारे जाएँगे । *ve śatru se māre jāēnge*, They will be killed by the enemy.

पत्र डाक से भेजा गया था । *patr dāk se bhejā gayā thā*, The letter was sent, had been sent by post.

हिंदी भारत में बोली जाती है । *hindī bhārat meṁ bolī jātī hai*, Hindi is spoken in India.

हिंदी इस देश में नहीं बोली जाती । *hindī is deś meṁ nahīn bolī jātī*, Hindi isn't spoken in this country.

#### 1. Passives of compound verbs

These are very frequently met with. The stem of the given verb (simple or conjunct) is followed by a passive form of the dependent auxiliary verb. पत्र डाक से भेज दिया जाएगा । *patr dāk se bhej diyā jāegā*, The letter will be forwarded by post (passive of भेज देना *bhej denā*).

हिंदी बहुत लोगों से राष्ट्रभाषा के रूप में स्वीकार कर ली गई थी *hindī bahut logon se rāṣṭrabhāṣā ke rūp meṁ svīkār kar lī gai thī*, Hindi was accepted as the national language by many people<sup>1</sup> (passive of स्वीकार कर लेना *svīkār kar lenā*).

#### 2. Impersonal passives

These are found for both transitive and intransitive verbs. They are 'neutral' in respect of concord (this 'neutrality' being expressed by the use of 3rd singular masculine concord forms in conjunction with absence of a sentence subject).

<sup>1</sup> के रूप में *ke rūp meṁ* 'in the form, capacity, of'; स्वीकार करना *svīkār karnā* 'accept' (conjunct verb).

### PASSIVE FORMS

117

कहा जाता है कि प्रेम अंधा होता है । *kahā jātā hai ki prem andhā hotā hai*, It is said that love is blind.

चला जाए? *calā jāe?* Shall we go (should it be gone)?

मुझसे सोया नहीं गया । *mujhse soyā nahīn gayā*, I couldn't sleep, couldn't get to sleep (it was not slept by me).

मुझसे अभी बाजार नहीं जाया जाएगा । *mujhse abhī bāzār nahīn jāyā jāegā*, I shan't be able to go to the bazaar just now (it won't be gone by me).

मुझे हिंदुस्तान भेज दिया गया था । *mujhe hindustān bhej diyā gayā thā*, I was sent to India (it was sent to India with respect to me).

(a) Note from the fourth example above that passive forms of the verb जाना *jānā* show जाया *jāyā*, not गया *gayā*, as first element.

(b) Only a slight change in emphasis distinguishes the above impersonal sentences from corresponding sentences showing personal subjects, viz. कहते हैं कि प्रेम अंधा होता है । *kahṭe hain ki prem andhā hotā hai*, People say that love is blind.

चलें? *calen?* Shall we go?

मैं सो नहीं सका । *main so nahīn sakā*, I couldn't sleep.

मैं हिंदुस्तान भेज दिया गया था । *main hindustān bhej diyā gayā thā*, I was sent to India.

The second example here is slightly less circumspect, because personal in its reference, than the corresponding impersonal expression. The last example somewhat stresses the identity of the subject referred by comparison with the corresponding impersonal expression, in which attention is focused less on the referend of the object मुझे *mujhe* than on the performance of the action itself.

#### 3. A limitation on the use of the passive

An English passive form frequently has as its most natural translation equivalent not a passive, but an intransitive verb. Thus the sentence 'only one man was saved' will generally be rendered

सिर्फ एक ही आदमी बच गया । *sirf ek hī ādmī bac gayā*.

This states the fact of the man's escape, whereas the possible alternative

सिर्फ एक ही आदमी बचाया गया । *sirf ek hī ādmī bacāyā gayā*

places more emphasis than the English might warrant on the actual action of his rescue.

CONJUNCT VERBS NOT INVOLVING करना *karnā*, होना *honā*

The use of pairs of conjunct verbs involving the verbal elements करना *karnā*, होना *honā* was noted in Lesson X. Other conjuncts, both transitive and intransitive, involve different verbal elements. Some examples follow.

1. याद रखना *yād rakhnā* 'bear in mind, remember'.

मैं यह बात हमेशा याद रखूँगा । *main yah bāt hameśā yād rakhūngā*, I shall always remember this (never forget it).

2. याद आना *yād ānā* 'come to mind'. Note that this intransitive expression is common in sentences whose English translation equivalent contains the transitive verb 'remember'.

उस समय मुझे राम याद आया । *us samay mujhe rām yād āyā*, At that moment I remembered Rām.

3. याद रहना *yād rahnā* 'remain in mind, be remembered'.

आज का दिन मुझे हमेशा याद रहेगा । *āj kā dīn mujhe hameśā yād rahegā*, I shall always remember today.

(a) Note that the noun याद *yād*, f., meaning 'memory, recollection' can be used in nominal-verbal constructs in which its grammatical identity is maintained, as well as in conjunct verbs proper; e.g. in conjunction with रहना *rahnā*:

उन दिनों की याद मेरे दिल में हमेशा के लिए ताज़ी रहेगी । *un dīnoṁ kī yād mere dīl meṁ hameśā ke lie tāzī rahegī*, 'The memory of those days will remain fresh in my heart for ever.

(b) For convenience, and because their sphere of usage is delimited by the existence of the above forms, mention of याद होना *yād honā* and याद करना *yād karnā* is also made here.

याद होना *yād honā* 'be in mind; be, become remembered'.

आपको मेरा नाम याद होगा । *āpkō merā nām yād hogā*, You probably remember my name.

मुझे रामचरितमानस की सौ पंक्तियाँ याद हो गई हैं । *mujhe rāmcāritmānas kī sau paṅktiyāṁ yād ho gāi haiṁ*, I've learned a hundred lines of the *Rāmcāritmānas* by heart.

याद करना *yād karnā* 'recollect; learn by heart'.

यह घटना मेरे शहर में अभी तक याद की जाती है । *yah ghaṭnā mere śahr meṁ abhī tak yād kī jāti hai*, This incident is still remembered in my town.

उसने रामचरितमानस की सौ पंक्तियाँ याद कीं । *usne rāmcāritmānas kī sau paṅktiyāṁ yād kīṁ*, He learned a hundred lines of the *Rāmcāritmānas* by heart.

4. दान देना *dān denā* 'give (as charity), donate'.

मैंने भिखारी को तीन पैसे दान दिए । *mainne bhikhārī ko tīn paise dāṁ diē*, I gave the beggar three pice.

5. मोल लेना *mol lenā* 'buy'.

उसने मकान मोल लेकर उसमें रहना शुरू किया । *usne makān mol lekar usmeṁ rahmā śurū kiyā*, He bought a house and moved into it (started to live in it).

6. दिखाई देना *dīkhāi denā* 'be visible, come into sight'.

सुनाई देना *sunāi denā* 'be audible'.

(See Lesson XII, p. 74.)

## SOME USES OF INFINITIVES

1. Infinitives characteristically have nominal function in Hindi. As nouns they may be equated formally with masculines in *-ā* (predominantly singular). They are negatived with preceding न *na*.

आपका घर लौटना आवश्यक है । *āpkā ghar lauṭnā āvāśyak hai*, Your return home is necessary.

ऐसा करना मना है । *aisā karnā manā hai*, To do this is forbidden.

ऐसा करने से आप सफल होंगे । *aisā karne se āp saṁphal hōṁge*, By doing this you'll be successful.

आपका यहाँ न रहना हमें बड़ी असुविधा का कारण होगा । *āpkā yahāṁ na rahnā hamēṁ burī asuvidhā kā kāraṇ hogā*, Your not staying here will be a cause of great inconvenience to us.

(a) Compare also the formal parallelism of the following locutions, of which one contains a noun in initial position, the other an infinitive.

नाले का पानी *nālē kā pānī*, stream water

पीने का पानी *pīne kā pānī*, drinking water

2. Some further examples of the very common sequence of oblique case infinitive with following postposition are given here.

उनके जाने के बाद मुझसे मिलिए । *unke jāne ke bād mujhse milīe*, (Come and) see me after he goes.

ऐसा होने पर भी आप नहीं जा सकते । *aisā hone par bhī āp nahīn jā sakte*, Even so (in spite of this being so) you can't go.

मैं बाहर जाने को हूँ । *mainī bāhar jāne ko hūn*, I am about to go out.

उसने हिंदी सीखने की कोशिश की । *usne hīndī sikhne kī kośiś kī*, He tried to learn Hindi.

उसने हिंदी सीखने का प्रयत्न किया । *usne hīndī sikhne kā prayatn kiya*, He tried to learn Hindi.

उसने मुझे सहायता देने से इनकार किया । *usne mujhe sahāyātā dene se inkār kiya*, He refused to help me.

मैंने उसे आने पर मजबूर किया । *mainī use āne par majbūr kiya*, I compelled him to come.

मैंने उसे आने पर बाध्य किया । *mainī use āne par bādhyā kiya*, I compelled him to come.

(a) Note particularly the force of को *ko* in the third example above; also the frequency of oblique infinitives in construction with nominal-verbal expressions based on nouns or adjectives (fourth example onwards).

(b) Note also from the above examples that infinitives are linked to nominal-verbal expressions in varying ways; most frequently, but not always, with का *kā* where nouns are involved (fourth, fifth, and sixth examples) and with other postpositions (never का *kā*) where adjectives are involved (last two examples).

3. In sentences expressive of purpose, oblique case infinitives may occur alone, or with following को *ka*, or with following के लिए *ke lie*.

मैं हिंदी सीखने भारत गया था । *mainī hīndī sikhne bhārat gayā thā*, I went to India to learn Hindi.

मैं हिंदी सीखने को भारत गया था । *mainī hīndī sikhne ko bhārat gayā thā*, I went to India to learn Hindi.

मैं हिंदी सीखने के लिए भारत गया था । *mainī hīndī sikhne ke lie bhārat gayā thā*, I went to India to learn Hindi.

वह खाना खाने बैठा । *vah khānā khāne baiṭhā*, He sat down to eat his meal.

(a) The oblique infinitive alone is the most common of these means of expressing purpose in the spoken language (being the most concise), but broadly speaking they are interchangeable. Feeling for sentence rhythm may lead to preference for one type of expression over the others in any given sentence.

4. Occasionally को *ko* and के लिए *ke lie* following an oblique case infinitive and preceding an adjective are interchangeable.

क्या आप जाने के लिए तैयार हैं? *kyā āp jāne ke lie taiyār hain?* Are you ready to go?

क्या आप जाने को तैयार हैं? *kyā āp jāne ko taiyār hain?* Are you ready to go?

मैं आपकी सेवा के लिए प्रस्तुत हूँ । *mainī apkī sevā ke lie prastut hūn*, I am at your service (ready for, to do your service).

मैं आपकी सेवा को प्रस्तुत हूँ । *mainī apkī sevā ko prastut hūn*, I am at your service.

## VOCABULARY

डाक *ḍāk*, f., post, postal service

प्रेम *preṃ*, m., love, affection

नाम *nām*, m., name

पंक्ति *pañkti*, f., line; row

भिलारी *bhikhārī*, m., beggar

असुविधा *asuvidhā*, f., inconvenience

नाला *nālā*, m., stream

सेवा *sevā*, f., service

आंदोलन *āndolan*, m., movement (social, political, etc.)

बुराई *burāi*, f., badness, wickedness; की बुराई करना *kī burāi karnā*, slander

बुरा *burā*, bad, wicked

दिल *ḍil*, m., heart

पैदावार *ṭpaidāvār*, f., produce

सावधानी *sāvdhānī*, f., care;

सावधानी से *sāvdhānī se*, carefully

सावधान *sāvdhān*, adj., careful

कविता *kavitā*, f., poem

फर्ज *ṭfarz*, m., duty

अभ्यास *abhyās*, m., practice;

का अभ्यास करना *kā abhyās karnā*, practise

प्रवेश *praveś*, m., entry, entrance;

प्रवेश करना *praveś karnā* (mem), enter

प्रयत्न *prayatn*, m., attempt;

का प्रयत्न करना *kā prayatn karnā*, try

रामचरितमार्स *rāmaritmāras*, m., name of a work by the medieval poet Tulsīdās

इन्कार *inkār*, m., refusal; इन्कार करना *inkār karnā* (se), refuse

स्वीकार करना *svīkār karnā*, accept

मोल लेना *mol lenā*, buy

मजबूर करना *ṭmajbūr karnā* (par, ke lie), compel

बाध्य करना *bādhyā karnā* (par, ke lie), compel

लेटना *leṭnā*, lie down

रूप <i>rūp</i> , m., form; के रूप में <i>ke rūp</i>	मना <i>manā</i> (invariable), forbidden
<i>men</i> , as, in the capacity of	प्रस्तुत <i>*prastut</i> , ready, prepared
भेजना <i>bhejṇā</i> , send	स्वाभाविक <i>svābhāvik</i> , natural
बचाना <i>bacānā</i> , save, rescue	दूसरा <i>dūsrā</i> , second; other
आराम <i>ārām</i> , m., rest, comfort;	ऐसा <i>aisā</i> , adj. and pron., of this sort;
आराम करना <i>ārām karnā</i> , rest	this sort of thing
अंधा <i>andhā</i> , blind	सफल <i>saphal</i> , successful
ताजा <i>tāzā</i> , fresh	

## EXERCISE 35

मेरी पुस्तकें एक महीने बाद भेज दी गई थीं। मुझसे न रहा गया। मुझे याद नहीं है। रास्ते में गाड़ियों का शोर सुनाई दे रहा था। हिंदी के लिए इस आंदोलन का होना स्वाभाविक है। सब बोलने पर भी दूसरे लोग आपकी बुराई करेंगे। उन्होंने उसे सब बोलने पर मजबूर किया। आप बाहर जाने को हैं? इस तस्वीर में आपको एक बैलगाड़ी दिखाई देती है। किसान आम तौर से ऐसी गाड़ियों पर अपनी पैदावार बाजार ले जाते हैं।

## EXERCISE 36

It can be said that Hindi will one day be accepted as India's national language. India, where Hindi and other languages also are spoken, is a most interesting country. I carefully remembered what you had said. When I saw him I remembered his face. You should learn some Hindi poems by heart. His books are being praised these days. I began work yesterday at nine o'clock. I shan't wait for you tomorrow. To speak the truth is a man's duty. By practising speaking you'll learn our language. The enemy tried to enter the fort. He went to the station to meet his friend. He lay down to rest.

## LESSON XX

## SUBORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS AND CLAUSES

SOME subordinate conjunctions (words identifying subordinate clauses) have been given and their use in complex sentences illustrated in Lessons XIV and XVI. The other chief subordinate conjunctions, whose use in sentences is discussed here, are found in broadly similar sentence patterns, i.e. they frequently introduce or occur in second position<sup>1</sup> in a subordinate clause, against which is balanced a following principal clause introduced by a linking word or phrase; but in certain cases a principal clause precedes a subordinate clause.

A. अगर *agar*, यदि *yadi* 'if'

These forms correlate with the conjunction तो *to* introducing the principal clause.

1. Future, subjunctive, and general present verbs are all commonly used in the subordinate clause when the verb in the principal clause is future (but see also section 3 below). Use of the subjunctive in these circumstances implies that the event in question is not envisaged as definitely as when a future or general present verb is used, but does not at all imply that it is unlikely to come about.

अगर मेहनत करोगे तो सफल होंगे। *agar mehnat karoge to saphal honge*, If you work you'll succeed.

अगर आप हिंदुस्तान आ जाएँ तो मैं आपको ताज महल जरूर दिखाऊँगा। *agar āp hindustān ā jāem to main āpko tāj mahl zarūr dikhāūngā*, If you come to India I shall certainly show you the Taj Mahal.

अगर आप चाहें तो मैं आपसे हिंदी बोलूँगा। *agar āp cāhem to main āpse hindī bolūngā*, If you like I'll speak Hindi to you.

अगर आप चाहते हैं तो मैं आपसे हिंदी बोलूँगा। *agar āp cāhte haiṁ to main āpse hindī bolūngā*, If you want me to I'll speak Hindi to you.

2. The verb in the subordinate clause is fairly regularly subjunctive and sometimes general present when the verb in the principal clause is not future (but see also sections 3 and 4 below).

<sup>1</sup> As indicated above for relatives, see p. 86.

अगर विदेशी अच्छी हिंदी न बोलें तो हम उनको कभी कभी नहीं समझते । *agar vidēśī acchī hindī na bolēn to ham unko kabhī kabhī nahīn samajhte*, If foreigners don't speak good Hindi we sometimes don't understand them.

अगर वह आए तो मेरा उससे परिचय कराइए । *agar vah āe to merā usse paricay karāiē*, If he comes please introduce me to him.

अगर आपको दिल्ली जाना है तो जरूर जाइए । *agar āpko dillī jānā hai to zarūr jāiē*, If you must go to Delhi, do so by all means.

3. Very commonly, however, perfective forms are used rather than futures or subjunctives in the subordinate clauses of sentences of the types illustrated above. This usage is especially common colloquially, and is an interesting illustration of the importance of aspect in the Hindi verbal system. By describing the action of the subordinate clause with a perfective verb and so stressing its completion, while that of the main clause is described with a non-perfective verb, one very adequately expresses the semantic relationship of the clauses in this type of sentence, in which the first clause describes a condition of action, and the second an action which ensues if the condition is met.

Perfective forms are not used in subordinate clauses referring to relatively unlikely happenings (whose completion is hardly envisaged) or to continuing events (specifically non-completed).

अगर मेहनत की तो सफल होंगे । *agar mehnat kī to safal hōgē*, If you work you'll succeed.

अगर वह आया तो मेरा उससे परिचय कराइए । *agar vah āyā to merā usse paricay karāiē*, If he comes please introduce me to him.

अगर उससे मुलाकात हुई तो मैं आपको बताऊंगा । *agar usse mulāqāt huī to main āpko batāūngā*, If I meet him I'll tell you.

4. To express an unrealised condition in the past, or a distinctly improbable one in the future, a special construction is used, the verb form in both clauses being an imperfective participle, or alternatively, if the reference is to past time, a perfective participle followed by the imperfective participle of होना *honā*.

अगर मैं भारत जाता तो ज्यादा हिंदी जरूर सीखता । *agar main bhārat jātā to zyādā hindī zarūr sīkhtā*, Had I gone to India I should certainly have learned more Hindi.

or, If I (should happen to) go to India I would certainly learn more Hindi.

अगर मैं भारत गया होता तो मैंने ज्यादा हिंदी जरूर सीखी होती । *agar main bhārat gayā hotā to mainne zyādā hindī zarūr sīkhī hotī*, Had I gone to India I should certainly have learned more Hindi.

5. (a) Introductory अगर *agar*, यदि *yadī* is very frequently omitted in informal usage. The presence of the linking तो *to* serves to establish the sentence type in such cases (though not entirely unambiguously, there being some possibility of confusion with sentences in which जब *jab* 'when' has been similarly omitted).

(b) In English the word 'if' may introduce an indirect question as well as a clause expressing a condition. In such cases its translation equivalent is of course always कि *ki*; see Lesson XVI.

उससे पूछो कि समझते हो या नहीं । *usse pūcho ki samajhte ho yā nahīn*, Ask him if he understands or not.

#### B. ज्योंही *jyōhī* 'as soon as'

This form correlates with त्योंही *tyōhī* introducing the principal clause.

ज्योंही *jyōhī*, like its equivalent जैसे ही *jaisē hī*, is used with a following future or subjunctive verb in the same way as अगर *agar*, यदि *yadī*. It is also used with perfective and general present forms in reference to past and present time.

ज्योंही आप वहाँ पहुँचें, त्योंही पत्र लिखिए । *jyōhī āp vahām pahunchēn, tyōhī patr likhiē*, Please write as soon as you get there.

ज्योंही वहाँ पहुँचूँगा, त्योंही पत्र लिखूँगा । *jyōhī vahām pahuncūngā, tyōhī patr likhūngā*, I'll write as soon as I get there.

ज्योंही मैं वहाँ पहुँचा, त्योंही काम शुरू किया । *jyōhī main vahām pahuncā, tyōhī kām surū kiya*, I started work as soon as I got there.

#### C. जब *jab* 'when'; जब तक *jab tak* 'as long as' (contd.)

Note that जब *jab* may correlate with तो *to* as well as with तब *tab*. जब *jab* and जब तक *jab tak* introducing references to future events are followed by subjunctive or future verbs in much the same way as अगर *agar*, यदि *yadī*; use of future verbs is somewhat more frequent.

जब वह आएगा तो मैं जाऊँगा । *jab vah āegā to main jāūngā*, When he comes I'll go.

जब वह आए तो मुझे खबर दीजिए । *jab vah āe to mujhe khabar dijie*, When he comes please let me know.

जब तक मैं यहाँ रहूँगा तब तक वे चुप रहेंगे । *jab tak main yahan rahūngā tab tak ve cup rahenge*, As long as I'm here they'll keep quiet.

(u) Introductory जब *jab* is quite often omitted in informal usage. See discussion of the similar and more frequent omission of अगर *agar*, यदि *yadi* above, par. A 5 (u).

D. अगरचे *agarce*, यद्यपि *yadyapi* 'although'

The first of these conjunctions usually correlates with फिर भी *phir bhī*, पर *par* or लेकिन *lekin*, the second usually, but not exclusively, with the form तथापि *tathāpi*.

The subjunctive is not used in the subordinate clause unless doubt is implied in the concession (e.g. by the introduction of some such word as शायद *śāyad* 'perhaps', संभव *sambhav* 'possible'. For the use of the subjunctive in sentences containing these words see Lesson XXI, pp. 130 f.).

अगरचे मैं कम हिंदी जानता हूँ, फिर भी बोलने की कोशिश करता हूँ । *agarce main kam hindi jāntā hūn, phir bhī bolne kī kośiś kartā hūn*, Although I don't know much Hindi I still try to speak it.

यद्यपि पंचवर्षीय योजना सफल होगी, तथापि और प्रयत्न आवश्यक होंगे । *yadyapi pañcvarṣīy yojanā saplaml hogī, tathāpi aur pratyatn āvaśyak hōnge*, Although the five-year plan will be successful, further efforts will be needed.<sup>1</sup>

यद्यपि पंचवर्षीय योजना कदाचित् पूर्णतः सफल हो, तथापि और अधिक प्रयत्न आवश्यक होंगे । *yadyapi pañcvarṣīy yojanā kañācit pūrṇataḥ saplāt ho, tathāpi aur adhik pratyatn āvaśyak hōnge*, Although the five-year plan will perhaps be completely successful, even further efforts will be needed.<sup>1</sup>

अगरचे इस क्लास के लड़के कभी चुप नहीं रहते, फिर भी अच्छे लड़के हैं । *agarce is klās ke laṛke kabhī cup nahīn rahṭe, phir bhī acche laṛke hain*, Although the boys in this class are never quiet they're a good lot.<sup>2</sup>

(a) अगरचे *agarce* is very frequently omitted, its correlative supplying the idea of the concession. Omission of यद्यपि *yadyapi* before its natural correlative तथापि *tathāpi* is less common.

<sup>1</sup> और *aur* is stressed.

<sup>2</sup> कभी . . . नहीं *kabhi . . . nahīn* 'never'.

(b) The form हालाँकि *halāmkī* is very common in informal usage for अगरचे *agarce*.

E. चूँकि *chūmkī*, क्योंकि *kyomkī* 'because, since'

चूँकि *cūmkī* correlates chiefly with इसलिए *islie* 'for this reason', or an expression of equivalent sense.

चूँकि आप हिंदी जानते हैं, इसलिए आप उत्तर भारत में हर जगह जा सकेंगे । *cūmkī āp hindi jāntē hain, islie āp uttar bhārat meḥ har jagah jā sakeṅge*, Since you know Hindi you'll be able to go everywhere in northern India.

(a) The initial conjunction may be omitted; and the locutions इस वजह से *is vajah se* 'for this cause', or the equivalent इस कारण (से) *is kāraṇ (se)*, may be substituted for इसलिए *islie*.

आप हिंदी जानते हैं, इस कारण से आप उत्तर भारत में हर जगह जा सकेंगे । *āp hindi jāntē hain, is kāraṇ se āp uttar bhārat meḥ har jagah jā sakeṅge*, You know Hindi, and therefore you'll be able to go everywhere in northern India.

(b) An alternative construction to that with चूँकि *cūmkī* shows the clause-order inverted, with the subordinate clause introduced in mid-sentence by the conjunction क्योंकि *kyomkī*.

आप उत्तर भारत में हर जगह जा सकेंगे, क्योंकि हिंदी जानते हैं । *āp uttar bhārat meḥ har jagah jā sakeṅge, kyomkī hindi jāntē hain*, You'll be able to go everywhere in northern India because you know Hindi.

Occasionally clauses introduced by क्योंकि *kyomkī* occur initially in their sentences, with following principal clauses.

(c) Also very common is the use of an inflected infinitive followed by the locutions की वजह से *kī vajah se* or के कारण *ke kāraṇ*.

आप हिंदी जानने के कारण उत्तर भारत में हर जगह जा सकेंगे । *āp hindi jānne ke kāraṇ uttar bhārat meḥ har jagah jā sakeṅge*, Because you know Hindi you'll be able to go everywhere in northern India.

F. जिससे *jisse*, ताकि *tāki*, 'so that'

These forms introduce clauses expressing purpose and containing



subjunctive verbs; in sentences of neutral style and emphasis they follow principal clauses. For ताकि *tāki* कि *ki* alone is sometimes found.

वह बैठ गया, जिससे वह और आसानी से पढ़ सके । *vah baiṭh gayā, jisse vah aur āsāni se paṛh sake*, He sat down so that he could read more easily.<sup>1</sup>

मैं पीछे हट गया कि वह पहले हाथ धो ले । *māin pīche haṭ gayā ki vah pahle hāth dho le*, I stepped back so that she could wash her hands first.<sup>2</sup>

## VOCABULARY

मेहनत <i>†mehnat</i> <sup>3</sup> , f., labour, effort	चुप <i>cup</i> , silent
विदेशी <i>videśī</i> , m.f., foreigner; adj., foreign	आवश्यक <i>āvaśyak</i> , necessary
मुलाकात <i>†mulāqāt</i> , f., meeting, encounter; मुलाकात होता <i>mulāqāt honā</i> (se), meet	जरूरी <i>†zarūrī</i> , necessary
योजना <i>yojanā</i> , f., scheme, plan; पंचवर्षीय योजना <i>pañcvarṣīy yojnā</i> , five-year plan	हटना <i>haṭnā</i> , move away, withdraw
उत्तर <i>uttar</i> , m., north	पकना <i>paknā</i> , ripen
दक्षिण <i>dakṣiṇ</i> , m., south	काटना <i>kāṭnā</i> , cut; harvest; bite (of animals)
फोन <i>fon</i> , m., telephone; मेरा फोन आया <i>merā fon āyā</i> , someone telephoned me; मैं उसको फोन करूँगा <i>māin usko fon karūngā</i> , I shall telephone him.	का काम देखना <i>kā kām dekhnā</i> , see to, take care of (someone's) work
फसल <i>fasl</i> , f., crop	कभी कभी <i>kabhī kabhī</i> , sometimes
जेब <i>jeb</i> , f., pocket	जरूर <i>†zarūr</i> , indeed, certainly, by all means
जवाब <i>†javāb</i> , m., answer; चिट्ठी का जवाब देना <i>ciṭhī kā javāb denā</i> , answer a letter	कदाचित् <i>*kadācit</i> , perhaps
सवाल <i>†savāl</i> , m., question	पूर्णतः <i>*pūrṇataḥ</i> <sup>4</sup> , fully
स्टेशन <i>ṣṭeṣan</i> , m., station	देर <i>der</i> , f., delay, lapse of time; पाँच मिनट देरे से आना <i>pānc minaṭ der se ānā</i> , come five minutes late
विचार <i>vicār</i> , m., thought; opinion	कम <i>kam</i> , adj., little (of quantity), few; adv. little
	गरम <i>garm</i> , hot; warm
	हर जगह <i>har jagah</i> , everywhere
	दूसरी बार <i>dūsri bār</i> , a second time, again
	या <i>yā</i> , or

<sup>1</sup> और *aur* is stressed.

<sup>2</sup> From the novel बड़ी बड़ी आँखें *Barī barī ānkhen* by Upendranath Ashk.

<sup>3</sup> First vowel usually short [e].

<sup>4</sup> See Supplement III, p. 179.

## EXERCISE 37

अगर आप आ सकें, तो आइए । अगर मेरा फोन आए तो यह कह दीजिए कि मैं फिर फोन करूँगा । अगर वह मुझे उस दिन मिलता तो मैं उसे पहचान लेता । जब आप दिल्ली पहुँचेंगे तो मैं आपको अपने कई मित्रों से मिलाऊँगा । ज्योंही किसानों की फसलें पक जाती हैं, त्योंही वे उन्हें काट लेते हैं । अगरबे गाड़ी ठीक समय पर छूटी, फिर भी पाँच मिनट देर से पहुँची । चूँकि उस समय उसे कुछ काम नहीं करना था, इसलिए उसने पत्र जेब से निकालकर दूसरी बार पढ़ना शुरू किया । वह आज मेरा काम देखेगा ताकि आपको दिल्ली घूमा सकूँ ।

## EXERCISE 38

If he writes to me I shall certainly answer his letter. If he had written to me before coming I'd have met him at<sup>2</sup> the station. Ask him if this is the right road or not. If I were to meet him I should certainly ask his opinion about this matter. 'Tell me when you're ready to go. Although I tried very hard I couldn't learn your language. I left Delhi in May because the weather was growing very hot then. I haven't seen you since you went to Delhi.

<sup>1</sup> यह *yah* here anticipates the following clause introduced with कि *ki*. This use of यह *yah* is very common, especially where following clauses are lengthy, or where their sense is emphasized.

<sup>2</sup> पर *par*.



## LESSON XXI

### USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

THE main uses of the subjunctive, apart from those in subordinate clauses, are noted or recapitulated here. The general consideration governing the use of the subjunctive is that it presents actions as in some way contingent or uncertain, rather than as objectively realised or envisaged.

#### 1. In asking questions or making suggestions:

मे जाऊँ? *main jāūn?* May I go?

चलें? *calen?* Shall we go?

चला जाए? *calā jāe?* Shall we go?<sup>1</sup>

अपना हाल लिखें। *apnā hāl likhēn*, Please write (saying) how you are (please write your state).

#### 2. In indirect commands and elsewhere where a wish is expressed about the activity of another person or thing:

नेहरू जी की जय हो! *nehru jī kī jay ho!* Long live Nehru Ji!

उनसे कहिए कि यहाँ आएँ। *unse kahie ki yahām āēn*, Tell him to come here.

उसे चाहिए कि यह किताब पढ़े। *use cāhie ki yah kitāb parhe*, He ought to read this book.

संदूक गिर न जाए, इसलिए उसे रस्से से बैलगाड़ी पर बाँधा गया। *sandūq gir na jāe, islie use russe se bailgāri par bāndhā gayā*, So that the box would not fall it was tied on to the ox-cart with a rope.

मे चाहता हूँ कि वह हिंदी सीख ले। *main cāhtā hūm ki vah hindī sikh le*, I want him to learn Hindi.

(a) Cf. with the last example the construction of चाहना *cāhnā* with an infinitive noted in Lesson VI, and used in simple sentences (i.e. where a person's wish to carry out an action himself is expressed).

मे हिंदी सीखना चाहता हूँ। *main hindī sikhnā cāhtā hūm*, I want to learn Hindi.

#### 3. In many locutions expressive of uncertainty; often in sentences containing the words शायद *śāyad* 'perhaps', संभव *sambhav* 'possible':

वह शायद आए, पता नहीं। *vah śāyad āe, patā nahīn*, Perhaps he'll come, I don't know.

<sup>1</sup> See Lesson XIX, p. 117.

### USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

131

संभव है कि वह फेल हो गया हो। *sambhav hai ki vah fel ho gayā ho*, It's possible that he may have failed.<sup>1</sup>

जो हो, सो हो। *jo ho, so ho*, What is to be, will be.<sup>2</sup>

मे क्या कहूँ? *main kyā kahūn?* What am I to say?

एक सवारी और ले लूँ, फिर चलता हूँ। *ek savārī aur le lūn, phir chaltā hūn*<sup>3</sup>, I shall (just) collect one more fare, then I'm going.

(a) Note that शायद *śāyad*, संभव *sambhav*, and the adverb संभवतः *sambhavataḥ*<sup>4</sup> are also used to express probability, and in this case are not followed by a subjunctive.

संभव है कि वह फेल हो गया है। *sambhav hai ki vah fel ho gayā hai*, He's probably failed.

यह किताब शायद आपके पास है। *yah kitāb śāyad āpke pās hai*, I expect you've got this book.

#### 4. Often where an object is presented generically, as typical of a class, rather than as an individual entity:

मुझे एक ऐसी किताब चाहिए जो बच्चों के लिए उपयुक्त हो। *mujhe ek aisī kitāb cāhie jo bacchōn ke lie upayukt ho*, I want a book suitable for children.

#### 5. Often in hypothetical comparisons involving such expressions as जैसे *jaise*, मानों *mānon* 'as if':

बच्चा दरवाजे पर खड़ा था जैसे किसी के इंतजार में हो। *baccā darvāze par khāṛā thā jaise kisī ke intazār meḥ ho*, 'The boy was standing at the door as if waiting for someone.

#### 6. With the expressions आवश्यक है *āvaiyak hai*, जरूरी है *zarūrī hai* 'it is necessary', उचित है *ucit hai*, मुनासिब है *munāsib hai* 'it is appropriate', and others which in greater or less degree partake of the nature of directives:

आवश्यक है कि हम आज पूर्व के बारे में कुछ जानें। *āvaiyak hai ki ham āj pūrv ke bāre meḥ kuch jānēn*, It is necessary for us to know something about the East today.

<sup>1</sup> For perfective subjunctive forms such as हो गया हो *ho gayā ho* see Supplement II, p. 172.

<sup>2</sup> सो *so* is an old demonstrative, little used in the standard language except in proverbial and gnomic expressions.

<sup>3</sup> और *aur* is stressed.

<sup>4</sup> See Supplement III, p. 179.

और उचित है कि इस उद्देश्य से एक भारतीय भाषा सीख लें। *aur ucit hai ki is uddēśya se ek bhārtīy bhāṣā sīkh lēn*, And it is appropriate that with this purpose we should learn an Indian language.

### THE VERB लगना *lagṇā*

The basic meaning of this intransitive verb can be generalized as 'to be applied'. It occurs in a very wide range of expressions, a selection of which is given below. The common collocation of लगना *lagṇā* with a preceding oblique case infinitive is noted separately.

1. The following sentences exemplify very common usages of लगना *lagṇā*. Subjects of equivalent English expressions showing transitive verbs usually correspond to oblique case nouns or pronouns with को *ko* (or equivalent pronominal object forms), in initial sentence position in sentences of neutral style and emphasis. Such oblique case forms are often not expressed if the sense of a sentence is clear.

आपको हिंदुस्तान कैसा लगता है? *āpko hindustān kaisā lagtā hai?* How do you like India?

अच्छा लगता है। *acchā lagtā hai*, I like it.

यहाँ मन लगना है। *yahāṁ mau lagtā hai*, I feel at home here (my heart is engaged, attached, here).

लगता है (कि) यह मकान खाली है। *lagtā hai (ki) yah makān khālī hai*, It seems as if this house is empty.<sup>1</sup>

बच्चा माँ जैसा लगता है। *baccā māṁ jaisā lagtā hai*, The child looks like his mother.<sup>2</sup>

डाकघराने जाने में कितनी देर लगेगी? *ḍākkhāne jāne mē kītṇī der lagegī?* How long will it take to get to the post office?

कोई पाँच मिनट लगेंगे। *koī pāñc minaṭ lageṅge*, It'll take about five minutes.

उसको चोट लगी। *usko coṭ lagī*, He got hurt.

उसे ठंड लगी है। *use thaṇḍ lagī hai*, He's got a cold.

मुझे ठंड लग रही है। *mujhe thaṇḍ lag rahī hai*, I'm cold; I'm getting cold.

पत्थर के मकानों में भी आग लग सकती है। *paṭṭhar ke makānōṁ mē bhī āg lag saktī hai*, Even stone houses can catch fire.

<sup>1</sup> Linking कि *ki*, जैसे *jaisē* introducing clauses dependent on लगना *lagṇā*, मालूम होना *mālūṁ honā*, etc., are frequently dropped in colloquial usage; see p. 96.

<sup>2</sup> जैसा *jaisā* is used postpositionally with माँ *māṁ* here; see p. 84.

मुझे भूख लगी है। *mujhe bhūkh lagī hai*, I am hungry.

मुझे प्यास लगी है। *mujhe pyās lagī hai*, I am thirsty.

(a) Note the use of the perfective participle in the last two sentences. Cf. the following sentences:

मुझे ग्यारह बजे के करीब भूख लगती है। *mujhe gyārah baje ke qarīb bhūkh lagtī hai*, I get hungry about eleven o'clock.

मुझे प्यास लग रही है। *mujhe pyās lag rahī hai*, I'm getting thirsty.

2. Collocating with a preceding oblique case infinitive, लगना *lagṇā* has the sense 'begin'. This type of collocation is extremely frequent.

कुछ क्षण चुप रहने के बाद वह बोलने लगा। *kuch kṣaṇ cup rahne ke bād vah bolne lagā*, After a few moments' silence he began to speak.

उसको प्यास लगने लगी। *usko pyās lagne lagī*, He began to feel thirsty.

दिन लंबे होने लगे। *din lambe hone lage*, The days started getting long, longer.

(a) Where personal subjects are involved collocations of oblique case infinitive with following लगना *lagṇā* are equivalent in sense to, and usually interchangeable with, those of infinitive with following शुरू, आरंभ करना *śurū, ārambh karnā*, e.g. in the first example above. Where non-personal subjects are involved, e.g. in the last two examples, use of लगना *lagṇā* is normal.

(b) Collocations of oblique case infinitive with following लगना *lagṇā* are negatived only rather rarely; any negative precedes the infinitive in sentences of neutral style and emphasis.

(c) लगना *lagṇā*, being intransitive, is of course not used in construction with ने *ne*.

### THE VERBS देना *denā* AND पाना *pānā* WITH PRECEDING OBLIQUE CASE INFINITIVES

1. देना *denā* often collocates with preceding oblique case infinitives in locutions expressing the granting of permission, and containing pronouns or nouns in oblique case with को *ko* (or equivalent pronominal object forms). It occurs in both active and passive (impersonal) constructions.

मैंने उसे जाने दिया । *mainne use jāne diyā*, I let him go, allowed him to go.  
 उसको जाने दिया गया था । *usko jāne diyā gayā thā*, He was allowed to go  
 (it was granted to him to go).

मेरे पिता जी मुझे सिग्रेट नहीं पीने देते थे । *mere pitā jī mujhe sigret nahīm pīne dete the*, My father used not to let me smoke cigarettes.

मैंने उसे जाने नहीं दिया । *mainne use jāne nahīm diyā*, I didn't let him go.

(u) In sentences of neutral style and emphasis, negatives tend on the whole to precede infinitives, but some speakers feel that they can often also be placed between infinitives and the verb देना *denā* without acquiring particular affective value.

(b) Collocations of perfective forms of देना *denā* with oblique case infinitives are used in construction with ने *ne*.

2. पाना *pānā* collocating with preceding oblique case infinitives expresses possibility of performing an action; these collocations are equivalent to compound verbs with पाना *pānā* as dependent auxiliary, and are giving ground to the latter in the modern language.

मैं बनारस नहीं जाने पाया, क्योंकि मुझे इलाहाबाद में ही काम था । *main banāras nahīm jāne pāyā, kyōnki mujhe ilāhābād meṁ hī kām thā*, It was impossible for me to go to Banaras, because I had work in Allahabad.

(u) Note that collocations of पाना *pānā* with oblique case infinitives are, like compound verbs showing पाना *pānā*, not used in construction with ने *ne*, and that they are very often negated, the negative most commonly preceding the infinitive in sentences of neutral style and emphasis.

## VOCABULARY

हाल *hāl*, m., state, condition  
 जय *jay*, f., victory; . . . की जय हो  
 . . . *kī jay ho*, long live . . .  
 रस्सा *rassā*, m., rope  
 मुझे पता नहीं (है) *mujhe patā nahīm*  
 (*hai*), I don't know, have no idea  
 सवारों *savārī*, f., passenger; vehicle  
 पूर्व *pūrv*, m., east  
 पश्चिम *paścim*, m., west

उद्देश्य *\*uddēśya*, m., aim, intention  
 मन *man*, m., mind; heart  
 डाकखाना *†dākḥānā*, m., post office  
 डाकघर *dākghar*, m., post office  
 पत्थर *patthar*, m., stone  
 आग *āg*, f., fire  
 भूख *bhūkh*, f., hunger  
 प्यास *pyās*, f., thirst  
 ठंड *thand*, f., cold; a cold

क्षण <i>kṣaṇ</i> , m., moment, instant	मुनासिब <i>†munāsib</i> , appropriate
मदद <i>†madad</i> , f., help; मदद देना <i>madad denā</i> ( <i>ko</i> ), help	खाली <i>khālī</i> (invariable), empty; free (not engaged)
प्रगति <i>pragati</i> , f., progress	बांधना <i>bāndhnā</i> , tie, bind
धूप <i>dhūp</i> , f., sun's heat or light	फेल होना <i>fel honā</i> , fail (examination)
लू <i>lū</i> , f., hot, dusty wind which blows in north India in May and June; लू लगना <i>lū lagnā</i> ( <i>ko</i> ), get sunstroke.	पिघलना <i>pighalnā</i> , intr., melt
संस्कृति <i>saṁskṛti</i> , f., culture	संभवतः <i>sambhavataḥ</i> , probably, perhaps
बर्फ <i>barf</i> , f., ice, snow	आसान <i>āsān</i> , easy, simple
उपयुक्त <i>upayukt</i> , suitable	बुनियादी <i>buniyādī</i> (invariable), basic; elementary
उचित <i>ucit</i> , appropriate	का अध्ययन करना <i>kā adhyayan karnā</i> , study

## EXERCISE 39

मैं चाहता हूँ कि आप उसे वह पत्र दिखाएँ । मैं उसको मदद देना चाहता था । वह शायद कल आए । वह शायद कल आएगा । उचित ही है कि आप भारत जाने से पहले एक भारतीय भाषा बोल सकें । मुझे वहाँ जाने में आधा घंटा लगा । लौटने में कितना समय लगेगा? अगर मैं सीधा जाऊँ तो इससे कम समय लगेगा । मालूम होता है, आप हिंदी लिखने में प्रगति कर रहे हैं । मुझे प्यास लगी है । चूँकि उसने सुबह से कुछ नहीं खाया था, इसलिए उसे भूख लगने लगी । सारा दिन धूप में रहने से उसे लू लग गई ।

## EXERCISE 40

I want to study Indian culture. I want my son to study Indian culture. Would you like me to show him that letter? Shall I ask<sup>1</sup> him to write you a letter? It will probably take you at least a month to learn to read and write<sup>2</sup> elementary Hindi. The snow began to melt in February. We're cold. His mother didn't let him go until his father had returned.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> कहना *kahnā*.

<sup>2</sup> Use सीखना *sikhnā* with preceding direct case infinitives.

<sup>3</sup> Perfective verb, rather than perfective past.

## LESSON XXII

COMPOSITE VERBAL EXPRESSIONS WITH रहना *rahnā*, जाना *jānā* (contd.), करना *karnā*, चाहना *cāhnā*

### 1. With रहना *rahnā*

COLLOCATIONS of participles (almost always imperfective) with following forms of the verb रहना *rahnā* stress the element of continuity in an action extending over a period of time. They are extremely common. Tense and aspectual and modal reference are determined by the form of रहना *rahnā* used.

वह दिन भर काम करता रहा । *vah din bhar kām kartā rahā*, He kept working, worked, all day long.<sup>1</sup>

वह दिन भर काम करती रहती थी । *vah din bhar kām kartī rāhtī thī*, She used to work all day long.

वे दिन भर काम करते रहते हैं । *ve din bhar kām karte rahte hain*, They work all day long.

जागते रहो! *jāgte raho!* Keep alert! (the night watchman's cry)

(a) Only those few perfective participles which express present state (see p. 19) are used in this way.

लड़की एक घंटा वहीं बैठी रही । *larkī ek ghaṇṭā vahām baiṭhī rahī*, The girl stayed sitting there for an hour.

वहाँ किसी के न मिलने के बावजूद वे ठहरे रहे । *vahām kisī ke na milne ke bāvajūd ve thahre rahe*, They went on waiting in spite of not finding anyone there.

वह दिन भर बिस्तर पर पड़ा रहेगा । *vah din bhar bistar par paṛā rahegā*, He'll lie on his bed (bedding) all day.

### 2. With जाना *jānā* (contd.)

Similar collocations of imperfective participles with forms of the verb जाना *jānā* stress rather the progressive nature of an action extending over a period of time, the way in which it advances from stage to stage. They too are extremely common.

वह काम करता गया, और मैं देखता गया । *vah kām kartā gayā, aur main dekhtā gayā*, He carried on with his work, and I kept on watching.

<sup>1</sup> For दिन भर *din bhar* see Supplement III, p. 179.

(a) The same English sentence may often serve as translation equivalent of Hindi sentences containing composite verbal expressions with either रहना *rahnā* or जाना *jānā*, but there is a difference in the implication of such Hindi sentences.

### 3. With करना *karnā*

Collocations of perfective participles showing invariable final -ā with following forms of the verb करना *karnā* stress the habitual nature of a given action. These also are very common.

हम हिंदी ही बोलते हैं, इसलिए अब अच्छी तरह बोलने लगे हैं । *ham hindī hī bolā karte hain, islie ab acchī tarah bolne lage hain*, We normally talk in Hindi, so now we're beginning to speak well.

पहले मेरे यहाँ आया करती थी, अब नहीं आती । *pahle mere yahām āyā kartī thī, ab nahīm ātī*, She used to visit me frequently but doesn't any more.<sup>1</sup>

अपना काम अच्छी तरह किया करो । *apnā kām acchī tarah kiya karo*, Always do your work well.

(a) Collocations of this type based on the verb जाना *jānā* show जाया *jāyā* (not गया *gayā*) as first element.

दिल्ली में रहता हूँ, लेकिन कलकत्ते जाया करता हूँ । *dillī mein rāhtā hūm, lekin kalkatte jāyā kartā hūm*, I live in Delhi, but I'm always going to Calcutta.

(b) Perfective forms of these collocations are relatively rare, and where they occur are not used in construction with ने *ne* (their sense being fundamentally the expression of habitual action).

तुम्हारे पूर्वज घास छीला किए! *tumhāre pūrvaj ghās chīlā kie!* Your forefathers scraped grass! (did menial work)

### 4. With चाहना *cāhnā*

Collocations of perfective participles showing invariable final -ā with following forms of the verb चाहना *cāhnā* express the idea that a given action is about to occur. There are other, more common ways of expressing

<sup>1</sup> मेरे यहाँ *mere yahām*, adverbial phrase meaning 'at, to, my place, house'. Similarly आपके यहाँ *āpke yahām*, उसके यहाँ *uske yahām*, etc.

this idea,<sup>1</sup> and these collocations are much less frequent than any of the above three types.

दो बजा चाहते हैं । *do bajā cāhte hain*, It's about to strike two, two is about to strike.

(a) Collocations of this type based on the verb जाना *jānā* show जाया *jāyā* as first element.

मैं बाहर जाया चाहता हूँ । *main bāhar jāyā cāhtā hūm*, I'm about to go out.

### VOCABULARY

पूर्वज <i>pūrvaj</i> , m., ancestor	ज्यों-ज्यों . . . त्यों-त्यों <i>jyom-jyom . . .</i>
घास <i>ghās</i> , f., grass	<i>tyom-tyom</i> , in proportion as . . .
राजपूत <i>rājput</i> , m., and adj., Rajput	so
छीलना <i>chīlnā</i> , scrape, pare	के बावजूद <i>ke bāvajūd</i> , in spite of
दिन भर <i>din bhar</i> , all day	हर कोई <i>har koi</i> , everyone

### EXERCISE 41

बारिश दो दिन होती रही । जब तक हम भारत न गए तब तक हिंदी पढ़ते रहे । हिंदी पढ़ते रहिए! ज्यों-ज्यों दिन लंबे होते जाते हैं, त्यों-त्यों रातें छोटी होती जाती हैं । जब मैं उत्तर भारत में रहता हूँ तो हिंदी बोला करता हूँ ।

### EXERCISE 42

I lie in bed till eight o'clock each day. At that time war was always going on between the Rajput rajahs. We began to speak in Hindi and went on in Hindi until the end of the hour.<sup>2</sup> Please make a habit of learning ten new words every day. I keep asking everyone this question. 'What is the answer to it?'<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See Lessons XIX, p. 120; XXV, p. 154.

<sup>2</sup> घंटे के खत्म होने तक *ghaṭe ke khatm hone tak* 'until the hour's ending'.

<sup>3</sup> To it: use इसका *iskā*.

## LESSON XXIII

### REDUPLICATIVE EXPRESSIONS

REDUPLICATION is a frequent syntactic device in Hindi sentences, and generally has a distributive connotation. Words belonging to a wide range of grammatical categories may be reduplicated, and types of translation equivalent vary greatly. Reduplicative expressions will often be found hyphenated. Careful users of Hindi will in general hyphenate those which they feel refer to a collective unity more readily than those which they feel refer to an aggregate of individual items.

आपने उनसे क्या क्या बातें कीं? *āpne unse kyā kyā bātēn kīn?* What (various things) did you talk about with them?

वहाँ कौन कौन लोग थे? *vahān kaun kaun log the?* Who were there?

गाड़ियाँ किस किस वक़्त चलती हैं? *gāriyān kis kis vaqt caltī hain?* When do the trains leave?

उनमें कोई कोई हँसता था, कोई कोई रोता था । *unmein koi koi hanstā thā, koi koi rotā thā*, Some of them were laughing, some were weeping.

किन्हीं किन्हीं गाँवों में तालाब नहीं है । *kinhīn kinhīn gāvōn mein tālāb nahīn hai*, In some (few, or unimportant) villages there's no tank.<sup>1</sup>

भारत में कहाँ कहाँ घूमे? *bhārat mein kahām kahām ghūme?* Where have you been in India? (to what different places)

लड़कों को पचास पचास पैसे मिले । *laṛkōn ko pacās pacās paise mile*, The boys got fifty pice each.

एक एक लड़के को पचास पचास पैसे मिले । *ek ek laṛke ko pacās pacās paise mile*, Each boy got fifty pice.

आपको लंदन में तरह तरह के मुहल्ले मिलेंगे । *āpko landan mein tarah tarah ke muhalle milenge*, You'll find various types of suburb in London.

मैं रास्ते के किनारे किनारे चला । *main rāste ke kināre kināre calā*, I kept to the edge of the road (all the way).

वे अपने अपने कामों में व्यस्त हैं । *ve apne apne kāmōn mein vyast hain*, 'They're busy with their (respective) tasks.

उसके बड़े बड़े कान हैं । *uske barē barē kān hain*, He has big ears.

आप धीरे धीरे बोलेंगे तो मैं समझूँगा । *āp dhīre dhīre bolenge to main samjhūngā*, If you speak slowly I'll understand.

<sup>1</sup> For किन्हीं *kinhīn* see p. 44.

लड़की ने सिसक सिसकर अपनी कहानी सुनाई । *larkī ne sisak sisakkar apnī kahānī sunāī*, Sobbing continuously, the girl told her story.<sup>1</sup>

हम धूप में चलते चलते थक गए । *ham dhūp meṁ calte calte thak gae*, We got tired walking in the sun (walking so long, continuously, etc.).

(a) In some cases reduplication does have intensive force: e.g.

गरम गरम चाय ले आओ! *garm garm cāy le āo!* Bring some tea, really hot!

But in most such cases a distributive idea is already present in the sentence: e.g.

उस खेत में बहुत-से बड़े बड़े पेड़ हैं । *us khet meṁ bahut-se bade bade ped hain*, There are a lot of very big trees in that field.<sup>2</sup>

(b) A few expressions of reduplicative structure are based on oblique case forms: e.g.

दिनों-दिन *dinon-din*, day by day

के बीचों-बीच *ke bicom-bic*, in the very middle of

(c) One or two common expressions contain the Persian preposition *ba* or a corrupted form of it: e.g.

दिनबदिन †*dinbadin*, day by day

रंगविरंगा †*rangbirangā*, many-coloured

हफ्ते बहफ्ते †*hafte bahafte*, week by week

### THE CONJUNCTION तो *to*

Correlative usages of this conjunction have been noted above.<sup>3</sup> It is also often used in non-correlative constructions, as a link between loosely connected sentences or parts of one sentence. Two general types of usage of तो *to* can be distinguished.

1. In initial sentence or clause position, तो *to* furnishes a semantically colourless link with what precedes. (Its correlative usages fall under this heading.) English translation equivalents depend on the sentence context.

अगर वह आए, तो मुझे खबर दीजिए । *agar vah āe, to mujhe khabar dijie*, If he comes, please let me know.

<sup>1</sup> Reduplicated absolutes show the first absolute in stem form; cf. p. 90, n. 2.

<sup>2</sup> The form बहुत-से *bahut-se* 'many' is explained in Lesson XXIV, pp. 147 f.

<sup>3</sup> Lesson XX, pp. 123 ff.

वे चलने लगे, तो मुझे उनसे बात करने का अवसर मिला । *ve calne lage, to mujhe unse bāt karne kā avasar milā*, He was going off when I got the chance to have a few words with him.

सभ्यता मनुष्यों को सब प्रकार से आराम देती है, तो भी वे असंतुष्ट रहते हैं । *sabhyatā manuṣyom ko sab prakār se ārām detī hai, to bhī ve asantuṣṭ rahate hain*, Civilisation gives men all kinds of comforts, but still they are unsatisfied.<sup>1</sup>

(a) Note the very common expression नहीं तो *nahīn to* 'otherwise', representing (अगर) नहीं, तो . . . (*agar*) *nahīn, to* . . . 'if not, then . . .'. Colloquially this expression is often contracted to the single word नहीं *nahīn* in initial position in its clause.

अपना काम देखो, नहीं (तो) अच्छा न होगा! *apnā kām dekho, nahīn (to) acchā na hogā!* Pay attention to your work, or there'll be trouble!

2. In non-initial sentence or clause position, तो *to* usually suggests that the given sentence or clause expresses an idea at variance in some way with what precedes (whether the content of a locution, an unexpressed thought or an action), or modifying it in some way.

बात तो यह है कि . . . *bāt to yah hai ki* . . . The fact is that . . . (contrary to what has been supposed)

नहीं, नहीं, मैं तो वैसे ही मजाक कर रहा था! *nahīn, nahīn, main to vaise hi masāq kar rahā thā!* No, no, I was just joking!<sup>2</sup>

(a) तो *to* may occur both initially and non-initially in a phrase or sentence, हमिद के लिए कुछ नहीं है, तो दो पैसे का दूध तो चाहिए ही । *hāmid ke lie kuch nahīn hai, to do paise kā dūdh to cāhie hī*, There is nothing (available) for Hamid, but he does certainly need two pice worth of milk.<sup>3</sup>

(b) तो *to* may occur in non-initial position in a sentence not connected with any preceding utterance or action.

आप अच्छे तो हैं? *āp acche to hain?* Are you getting on all right? (I expect you are, but please confirm it)

Here the force of तो *to* is to reduce the content of the inquiry, which is quite conventionalised and hardly a request for information.

<sup>1</sup> For तो भी *to bhī* 'but even so' see further Supplement III, p. 180.

<sup>2</sup> For वैसे ही *vaise hī* see Supplement III, p. 167.

<sup>3</sup> From the short story ईदगाह *Idgāh*, by Premchand (1880-1936).

THE EMPHATIC ENCLITIC *hī* (contd.)

The general function of *hī* as an enclitic of restrictive force, stressing the importance of the word or syntactic group immediately preceding it in a sentence, has been indicated above.<sup>1</sup>

1. Some examples illustrating its use with different grammatical forms, and its wide range of possible translation equivalents, are given in this section.

बनारस के लोग हिंदी ही बोलते हैं । *banāras ke log hindī hī bolte hain*, The people of Banāras of course speak Hindi.

शहर पास ही है । *shahr pās-hī hai*, The city is quite near, very near.

आपने जो इंतजाम किया है, वह बहुत ही अच्छा है । *āpne jo intazām kiya hai, vah bahut hī acchā hai*, 'The arrangements you've made are excellent.

वह अपनी ही किताब लाया । *vah apnī hī kitāb lāyā*, He brought his own book.

वह अच्छे आदमी नहीं थे, लेकिन वकील तो अच्छे थे ही । *vah acche ādmī nahīn the, lekin vakīl tō acche the hī*,<sup>2</sup> He wasn't a good man, but certainly was a good lawyer.

वह मन ही मन सोचने लगा कि . . . *vah man hī man socne lagā ki . . .*, The thought occurred to him that . . . (he started to think in his heart that . . .)

उस काम के लिए तीन ही आदमी कम होंगे । *us kām ke lie tīn hī ādmī kam hōnge*, Three men, only three men, will be too few for that job.

उसे उस काम के लिए एक ही रुपया मिला । *use us kām ke lie ek hī rupayā milā*, He only got one rupee for that work.

मैं आपसे जो कह रहा हूँ, उसे समझ ही गए होंगे । *main āpse jo kah rahā hūm, use samajh hī gae hōnge*, You'll certainly have understood what I'm saying to you.

2. *hī* coalesces with some personal and demonstrative pronominal forms. The emphatic forms of the personal and demonstrative pronouns are as follows:

Sg. Dir.	मैं ही	<i>main hī</i>	तू ही	<i>tū hī</i>	वही	<i>vahī</i>
Obl.	मुझी	<i>mujhī</i>	तुझी	<i>tujhī</i>	उसी	<i>usī</i>
Obj.	मुझे ही	<i>mujhe hī</i>	तुझे ही	<i>tujhe hī</i>	उसे ही	<i>use hī</i>
Poss.	मेरा ही	<i>merā hī</i>	तेरा ही	<i>terā hī</i>	उसी का	<i>usī kā</i>

<sup>1</sup> Lesson V, pp. 27 f.

<sup>2</sup> Affective word-order.

Pl. Dir.	हम ही	<i>ham hī</i>	तुम ही	<i>tum hī</i>	वे ही	<i>ve hī</i>
Obl.	हमों	<i>hamōn</i>	तुम्हीं	<i>tumhīn</i>	उन्हीं	<i>unhīn</i>
Obj.	हमें ही	<i>hamēn hī</i>	तुम्हें ही	<i>tumhēm hī</i>	उन्हें ही	<i>unhēm hī</i>
Poss.	हमारा ही	<i>hamārā hī</i>	तुम्हारा ही	<i>tumhārā hī</i>	उन्हीं का	<i>unhīn kā</i>

Sg. Dir.	यही	<i>yahī</i>	आप ही	<i>āp hī</i>
Obl.	इसी	<i>isī</i>	आप ही	<i>āp hī</i>
Object	इसे ही	<i>ise hī</i>	आपको ही	<i>āpko hī</i>
Possessive	इसो का	<i>isī kā</i>	आपका ही	<i>āpkā hī</i>

Pl. Dir.	ये ही	<i>ye hī</i>	आप ही	<i>āp hī</i>
Obl.	इन्हीं	<i>inhīn</i>	आप ही	<i>āp hī</i>
Object	इन्हें ही	<i>inhēm hī</i>	आपको ही	<i>āpko hī</i>
Possessive	इन्हीं का	<i>inhīn kā</i>	आपका ही	<i>āpkā hī</i>

आप उन्हीं पुस्तकों को पढ़िए । *āp unhīn pustkōn ko parhīe*, Please read those same books, those very books.

यही कारण है कि हम आपका प्रस्ताव नहीं स्वीकार कर सकते । *yahī kāraṇ hai ki ham āpkā prastāv nahīn svīkār kar sakte*, This is the reason we can't accept your suggestion.

हम आपका प्रस्ताव इसीलिए नहीं स्वीकार कर सकते । *ham āpkā prastāv isīlie nahīn svīkār kar sakte*, We can't accept your suggestion for this reason.

उसी समय मेरे पिता जी आगरे में थे । *usī samay mere pitā jī āgre meṁ the*, At that very time, that particular time, my father was in Agra.

उन्हीं दिनों में उनके शत्रु लड़ाई की तैयारियाँ कर रहे थे । *unhīn dinon meṁ unke śatru larāi kī taiyāriyān kar rahe the*, During that very period their enemies were making preparations for war.

मैं लाल मिर्च खा ही नहीं सकता । *main lāl mirch khā hī nahīn saktā*, I can't eat red pepper at all.

3. Note that while emphatic *hī* may separate parts of composite and other verbal expressions (see last example above) it does not normally separate a word that it stresses from any post-position associated with it.

कवि के ही शब्दों में *kavi ke hī śabdōn meṁ*, in the poet's own words, the words of the poet himself

हम लड़ाई के पहले से ही यहाँ आया करते हैं । *ham larāi ke pahle se hī yahān āyā karte hain*, We've been coming here since even before the war.

But while this is the most general usage, it is not invariably followed.



4. Notice particularly the frequent collocation of oblique case imperfective participles in *-e* with following *ही hi*, in sentences whose most direct English translation equivalent usually contains the phrase 'as soon as'. Its use is straightforward in sentences which refer throughout to activity on the part of the same persons or things. Whatever the gender and number of the sentence subject, the participle is always in the *-e* form (these being adverbial, not adjectival expressions).

मैं आते ही काम करने लगा । *main āte hī kām karne lagā*, I started work as soon as I arrived.

आते ही मैं काम करने लगा । *āte hī main kām karne lagā*, As soon as I arrived I started work.

मैं आते ही काम करने लगी । *main āte hī kām karne lagī*, I started work as soon as I arrived (f. sg. subject).

हम आते ही काम करने लगे । *ham āte hī kām karne lagē*, We started work as soon as we arrived (f. pl. subject).

(a) Where a sentence of this sort describes the activity of different persons or things we usually find not a direct case noun or pronoun associated with the participle, but the corresponding possessive form. Again the participle is always in the *-e* form.

वह मेरे आते ही काम करने लगा । *vah mere āte hī kām karne lagā*, He started work as soon as I arrived.

मेरी बहन के आते ही मैंने आपका हाल पूछा । *merī bahn ke āte hī mainne āpkā hāl pūchā*, As soon as my sister came I asked how you were.

There are exceptions to this, however, especially where non-personal subjects and participles of intransitive verbs are involved: e.g.

नजर मिलते ही उसने झुका ली । *nazar milte hī usne ānkhen jhukā lī*, As soon as (my) glance met (hers) she lowered her eyes.

5. Some common adverbs formed with *ही hi* are:

अभी *abhī*, now, at this particular time (see Lesson V)

तभी *tabhī*, then, at that particular time

कभी *kabhī*, sometimes; at some time

यहीं *yahī*, here, at this particular place (यहाँ *yahām* + ही *hī*)

वहीं *valū*, there, at that particular place (वहाँ *vahām* + ही *hī*)

मैं कभी वहाँ गया था । *main kabhī vahām gayā thā*, I went there once (on one occasion).

मैं कभी कभी वहाँ जाता था । *main kabhī kabhī vahām jātā thā*, I used to go there sometimes.

वह इन दिनों कभी वहाँ नहीं जाता । *vah in dinon kabhī vahām nahīn jātā*, He never goes there these days.

मैं इलाहाबाद में विद्यार्थी था । वहाँ हिंदी सीखी । *main ilāhābād meṁ vidyārthī thā. vahān hindī sikhī*, I was a student at Allahabad. It was there that I learned Hindi.

(a) Note from the third example the use of कभी *kabhī* in negated sentences whose translation equivalent usually contains the word 'never'.

## VOCABULARY

महल्ला *mahallā*, m., suburb

किनारा *kinārā*, m., bank, edge

नजर *nazar*, f., sight; glance

कान *kān*, m., ear

नाक *nāk*, f., nose

अवसर *avasār*, m., opportunity, occasion

सभ्यता *sabhyatā*, f., civilisation

प्रकार *prakār*, m., type, kind;

सब प्रकार से *sab prakār se*, in every way

मजाक *mazāk*, m., joke; मजाक करना *mazāk karnā*, joke

इंतजाम *intazām*, m., arrangement, arrangements

वकील *vakil*, m., lawyer

प्रस्ताव *prastāv*, m., suggestion

तैयारियाँ *taiyāriyāṁ*, f. pl., preparations; की तैयारियाँ करना *kī taiyāriyāṁ karnā*, prepare for

शब्द *śabd*, m., word

सिपाही *sipāhī*, m., soldier

तरक्की *tarakkī*, f., progress

विश्वविद्यालय *viśvavidyālay*, m., university

माँग *māṅg*, f., request

ब्यस्त *byast*, busy

संतुष्ट *santust*, satisfied

असंतुष्ट *asantust*, dissatisfied

मिर्च *mīrc*, f., pepper; chilli

सिसकना *sisaknā*, sol

मुकाना *jhuknā*, lower

धीरे, धीरे धीरे *dhīre, dhīre dhīre*, slowly

(के) लायक *(ke) lāyaq*, suitable for; देखने लायक *dekhne lāyaq*, worth seeing (के *ke* is very often omitted in construction with infinitives)

मनुष्य *manuṣya*, m., man, human being



## EXERCISE 43

आप लोग<sup>1</sup> रोज़ दस दस नए शब्द सीखा कीजिए। हर एक राजपूत ने शत्रु के कई कई लिपाहियों को मार डाला। लोग दूर दूर से गंगा में स्नान करने के लिए इलाहाबाद आते हैं। आप तो हिंदी समझते हैं? गाड़ी छूटी तो ठीक वक्त पर, लेकिन वह पाँच मिनट देर से पहुँची। आप रोज़ दस ही शब्द सीखने पर भी तर्कती करेंगे। मैंने उस रेस्टरेंट में कभी खाना नहीं खाया। मैं देखते ही आपको पहचान गया। उसके बैठते ही हम उससे तरह तरह के प्रश्न पूछने लगे।

## EXERCISE 44

What did you do in the vacation? What people did you meet at the University yesterday? You'll find small villages in the countryside around the city which are worth seeing. He usually spoke slowly, but even then<sup>2</sup> I didn't always<sup>3</sup> understand. Speak slowly, otherwise I shan't understand. If you want to learn Hindi you should speak Hindi. On that very day my father arrived from Delhi. On hearing his request they burst out laughing. As soon as the train left I started reading my paper.

<sup>1</sup> For आप लोग *āp log*, pl., see Supplement I, p. 165.

<sup>2</sup> तब भी *tab bhī*.

<sup>3</sup> कभी कभी *kabhi kabhī*.

## LESSON XXIV

THE ADJECTIVAL PARTICLE सा *sā*

THIS particle, which shows normal adjectival flexion, is found suffixed to various parts of speech, most commonly adjectives. It is used in a variety of ways, to express the notion of 'general resemblance'. It is usually written hyphenated to the word to which it is suffixed.

1. Suffixed to most adjectives it denotes, broadly speaking, a reduced degree of a quality.

यमुना नदी का नीला-सा पानी। *yamunā nadī kā nīlā-sā pānī*, the bluish water of the river Jumna

मैं एक अच्छी-सी किताब पढ़ रहा हूँ। *main ek acchī-sī kitāb paṛh rahā hūn*, I'm reading a rather good book, quite a good book.

मुझे दोनों मकान एक-से दिखाई देते हैं। *mujhe donon mahān ek-se dikhāī dete hain*, Both houses look similar, much the same, to me.

2. Suffixed to quantitative adjectives (e.g. बहुत *bahut*, थोड़ा *thoṛā* 'a little') and sometimes other adjectives expressing bulk or size (especially बड़ा *barā*, छोटा *choṭā*), it introduces an element of vagueness to the interpretation of the quantity or size.

उसने मुझे बहुत रुपया दिया था। *usne mujhe bahut rupayā diyā thā*, He gave me a lot of money.

उसने मुझे बहुत-सा रुपया दिया था। *usne mujhe bahut-sā rupayā diyā thā*, He gave me a lot of money (it doesn't matter how much, more than sufficient, etc.).

माघ मेले में बहुत-से लोग आते हैं। *māgh mele mein bahut-se log āte hain*, Many people come to the Māgh Melā.

उसने दो हिरण और एक बड़ा-सा शेर मारा। *usne do hiran aur ek barā-sā śer mārā*, He killed two deer and a big tiger.

पहले उसकी एक छोटी-सी दुकान थी। *pahle uskī ek choṭī-sī dūkān thī*, Formerly he used to have a little shop.

(a) Note particularly that the form बहुत-से/सी *bahut-se/sī*, pl., 'many' is an adjective only, whereas unsuffixed बहुत *bahut* may be either an adjective or an adverb, and before an adjective is always interpreted as an adverb.

Compare the following sentences:

उस खेत में बहुत बड़े पेड़ हैं । *us khet mem bahut bāre per hain*, There are some very big trees in that field.

उस खेत में बहुत-से बड़े पेड़ हैं । *us khet mem bahut-se bāre per hain*, There are many big trees in that field.

(b) A sentence such as

मैं एक बहुत अच्छी-सी किताब पढ़ रहा हूँ । *main ek bahut acchī-sī kitāb parh rahā hūm*

means 'I am reading a very good book', not 'I am reading quite a good book'. Here *sī* is associated with the entire locution बहुत अच्छी *bahut acchī*, rather than with अच्छी *acchī* alone.

(c) Note the use of कोई-सा *koī-sā* 'any out of a number of possibilities or choices':

विद्यार्थी कोई-से तीन विषय पढ़ सकते हैं । *vidyārthī koī-se tīn viṣay parh sakte hain*, Students can read any three subjects (of a syllabus, etc.).

(d) Similarly कौन-सा *kaun-sā* means 'which out of a number of possibilities or choices'.<sup>1</sup>

मैं श्रीवास्तव बोल रहा हूँ । — कौन-सा? *main śrīvāstav bol rahā hūm, —kaun-sā?*  
This is Śrīvāstav speaking.—Which Śrīvāstav?

3. Suffixed to other forms it expresses likeness.

उसका शेर-सा दिल है । *uskā śer-sā dil hai*, He has a heart like a lion.

उसका शेर का-सा दिल है । *uskā śer kā-sā dil hai*, He has a heart like a lion's.

मुझ-सा गरीब आदमी यह कैसे कर सकता है? *mujh-sā garīb ādmī yah kaise kar saktā hai?* How can a poor man like me do this?

कुत्ते-से जीवन जीने से मर जाना बेहतर है । *kutte-se jīvan jīne se mar jānā behtar hai*, It is better to die than live one's life like a dog.<sup>2</sup>

बंदर दीवार पर नाच-भा उठा । *bandar dīvār par nāc-sā uṭhā*, The monkey started a kind of dance on the wall.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See p. 45.

<sup>2</sup> कुत्ते-से *kutte-se* 'like a dog'; *se* in concord with कुत्ते *kutte*. Where सा *sā* suffixed to a noun has no other referend in its sentence than that noun, it regularly shows concord with it.

<sup>3</sup> नाच उठना *nāc uṭhnā* compound verb. सा *sā* shows the same concord as the verb.

(a) Note from the third and fourth examples above that सा *sā* is suffixed to oblique case forms of pronouns and nouns.

(b) In this type of expression the form जैसा *jaisā* is usually interchangeable with सा *sā*; also the rather less common सरीखा *sarīkhā* (with nouns and pronouns).

#### INVERTED COMPOUND POSTPOSITIONS

The distinctive elements of certain compound postpositions whose first element is के *ke* will often be found dissociated from के *ke*, and preceding the word with which the compound postposition as a whole is syntactically related. This inversion is common colloquially, but is also not unknown in the more formal language. It is most frequent with the postpositions के बिना *ke binā* 'without', के मारे *ke māre* 'because of', के सिवा(य) *ke tsivā(y)* 'except for', के अलावा *ke alāwā* 'apart from', के बगैर *ke bagair* 'without', and के बजाय *ke bajāy* 'instead of'.

1. Some examples of both constructions with nouns follow.

बिना आपकी सहायता के हम सफल न हो सके । *binā āpkī sahāyātā ke ham saṃphal na ho sake*, We couldn't have been successful without your help.

आपकी सहायता के बिना हम सफल न हो सके । *āpkī sahāyātā ke binā ham saṃphal na ho sake*, We couldn't have been successful without your help.

वह मारे खुशी के नाचने लगा । *vah māre khnī ke nācne lagā*, He began to dance for joy.

सिवा आपके मेरा कोई मित्र नहीं है । *sivā āpke merā koī mītr nahīn hai*, I have no friend but you.

आपके सिवा मेरा कोई मित्र नहीं है । *āpke sivā merā koī mītr nahīn hai*, I have no friend but you.

2. In the case of such postpositions associated with verbs there are further variations in the construction. The distinctive element of the postposition usually precedes an oblique case perfective participle (-e form) without following के *ke* (i.e. functions as a preposition). Most of the postpositions concerned may also be used according to the normal postpositional pattern, with preceding के *ke* and an oblique case infinitive (-e form).

सिवा यह कष्ट उठाए और क्या चारा है? *sivā yah kaṣṭ uṭhāe aur kyā cārā hai?*  
What can be done, what recourse is there, except to go to this trouble?<sup>1</sup> (there is no way of avoiding it)

<sup>1</sup> और *aur* is stressed in this and the following example.

यह कष्ट उठाने के सिवा और क्या चारा है? *yah kaṣṭ uthāne ke sivā aur kyā cārā hai?* What can be done except to go to this trouble?

(a) Note that with preceding verbs the compound forms के बिना *ke binā*, के बगैर *ke bagair* are normally replaced by बिना *binā*, बगैर *bagair* alone, and that the verb forms in question are oblique case perfective participles (-e form), not infinitives.

बिना तकलीफ़ उठाए हम तरक्की नहीं करेंगे। *binā taklif uthāe ham taraqqī nahīm karenge*, Without making an effort we won't progress.

तकलीफ़ उठाए बिना हम तरक्की नहीं करेंगे। *taklif uthāe binā ham taraqqī nahīm karenge*, Without making an effort we won't progress.

### VOCABULARY

मेला <i>melā</i> , m., festival; fair; माघ मेला <i>māgh melā</i> , bathing festival held at the confluence of the Ganges and Jumna at Allahabad in the month of Māgh	चारा <i>cārā</i> , m., recourse, course of action
हिरण <i>hiraṇ</i> , m., deer	डर <i>dar</i> , m., fear
शेर <i>śer</i> , m., tiger; lion	पाँव <i>pānv</i> , m., foot, leg
दिल <i>dil</i> , m., heart	संकोच <i>saṅkoc</i> , m., shyness, embarrassment
कुत्ता <i>kuttā</i> , m., dog	दाढ़ी <i>dāṛhī</i> , f., beard
बंदर <i>bandar</i> , m., monkey	कोट <i>koṭ</i> , m., coat
कष्ट <i>kaṣṭ</i> , m., difficulty, inconvenience	नीला <i>nīlā</i> , blue; dark blue or green
तकलीफ़ <i>taklif</i> , f., difficulty, inconvenience	थोड़ा <i>thorā</i> , a little; थोड़ी-सी हिंदी <i>thorī-sī hindī</i> , a little Hindi
	नाचना <i>nācnā</i> , dance
	बँधना <i>bandhnā</i> , be tied, bound
	नहाना <i>nahānā</i> , bathe

### EXERCISE 45

उन्होंने कई लंबी-सी कहानियाँ लिखी हैं। बहुत-से लोग हर एक दिन नदी में नहाते हैं। मैं थोड़ी-सी हिंदी जानता हूँ। उसके पाँव डर के कारण बँध-से गए। उसके अलावा वहाँ कोई और नहीं था। बिना काम किए किसी को तरक्की करने की आशा नहीं हो सकती। संकोच के मारे वह अक्सर हिंदी नहीं बोलता।

### EXERCISE 46

He has quite a long beard. Many important people<sup>1</sup> work in that building. Apart from myself there was no one else there. Don't go out without putting on a coat.

<sup>1</sup> बड़े लोग *barē log*.

## LESSON XXV

### REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

THE common reflexive pronouns are आप *āp* and its equivalents: the Persian loanword खुद *khud*, and the Sanskrit loanword स्वयं *\*svayam*. These refer to nouns and pronouns in their sentences, in the same way as the possessive अपना *apnā*, and all have various translation equivalents: 'myself', 'yourself', 'himself', etc. Note that स्वयं *svayam* is pronounced with final [m].<sup>1</sup>

1. All the above forms are used in direct case, often with following ही *hī*. मैं यह काम आप (ही) करूँगा। *main yah hām āp (hī) karūngā*, I shall do this work myself.

हमने यह खाना खुद ही बनाया। *hamne yah khānā khud (hī) banāyā*, We made this food ourselves, all on our own.

मैं कल आप दिल्ली जाऊँगी। *main kal āp dillī jāūngī*, I shall go to Delhi myself tomorrow. (f. subject)

तब वह स्वयं परलोक सिधारे। *tab vah svayam parlok sidhāre*, Then he himself passed away (departed to the other world).

2. As oblique case forms of आप *āp* both अपने *apne* and अपने आप *apne āp* are found, the latter most commonly in conjunction with को *ko*. खुद *khud* and स्वयं *svayam*, which are invariable, are less freely used than these forms in oblique case.

मैं अपने को सहनशील आदमी समझता हूँ। *main apne ko sahnśīl ādmī samajhtā hūm*, I consider myself a tolerant man.

चोर ने अपने आप को छत पर छिपा लिया। *cor ne apne āp ko chat par chipā liyā*, The thief hid himself on the roof.

अपने लिए ऐसा करेंगे, दूसरों के लिए नहीं। *apne lie aisā karenge, dūsroṁ ke lie nahīm*, He'll do it for himself, but not for others.

(a) Since अपना *apnā* is itself a possessive, it and अपने आप *apne āp* combine differently with compound postpositions whose first element is के *ke*; see the last example above, and cf. Lesson VI, p. 34.

<sup>1</sup> Use of *anusvāra* to indicate final [m] is a Sanskrit spelling device.

(b) अपने आप *apne āp* is also used adverbially without following postposition, in the sense 'of one's own accord'.

मैं हिंदी अपने आप सीखने लगा । *māin hindī apne āp sīkhne lagā*, I started learning Hindi of my own accord.

(c) Note that अपने आप *apne āp* is also used to some extent as a direct case form of the same force as आप *āp*, खुद *khud*, स्वयं *svayaṃ*. The sentence

मैंने यह काम अपने आप किया था । *māinne yah kām apne āp kiya thā* can mean either 'I did this work of my own accord' or (less commonly) 'I did this work myself'.

3. The collective noun आपस *āpas* 'kindred, fraternity' is used in locutions expressing mutuality or reciprocity of action, often with the postpositions में *meṃ*, का *kā*. An invariable adjectival derivative आपसी *āpsī* 'mutual, one another's' is also found.

भाइयों के लिए आपस में लड़ना-झगड़ना अच्छा नहीं है । *bhāiyoṃ ke lie āpas meṃ laṛnā-jhagarnā acchā nahīn hai*, It's not good for brothers to be fighting and quarrelling among themselves.

उनके आपसी संबंध अच्छे थे । *unke āpsī sambandh acche the*, They were on good terms with one another.

(a) Note the adverb and adjective परस्पर *\*paraspar*, a Sanskrit loanword synonymous with आपस में *āpas meṃ*, आपसी *āpsī* which is common in the written language.

4. An oblique case form आपे *āpe* is used as a noun meaning 'oneself' in some expressions with postpositions.

वह छोटी छोटी बात पर आपे से बाहर हो जाता है । *vah choṭī choṭī bāt par āpe se bahar ho jātā hai*, He gets beside himself over trifles.

#### THE FORMATIVE ELEMENT -वाला *-vālā*

This formative element makes derivatives used as both adjectives and nouns; it is particularly common colloquially, in association chiefly with nouns, the oblique form of infinitives, and adverbs. Some examples of its use follow:

1. With nouns and adverbs it indicates that these are in a general adjectival relationship to a following noun, expressed or understood.

टोपीवाला लड़का सबसे पीछे बैठा है । *ṭopīvālā laṛkā sabse pīche baiṭhā hai*, The boy with the hat is sitting right at the back.

मुझे एक पंद्रह पैसेवाला टिकट चाहिए । *mujhe ek pandrah paisevālā ṭikaṭ chāhiē*, I want a 15 pice stamp, please.

लाल साड़ीवाली औरत कुएँ के पास बैठी थी । *lāl sārīvālī aurat kuēṃ ke pās baiṭhī thī*, A woman wearing a red sari was sitting by the well.

वह ऊपरवाले कमरे में काम कर रहा है । *vah ūparvāle kamre meṃ kām kar rahā hai*, He is working in the room upstairs.

गांववाले कभी शहर आ जाते हैं । *gāmvāle kabhī śahr ā jāte hain*, The villagers sometimes come to the city.

स्टेशन के बाहर एक ही रिक्शेवाला इंतज़ार कर रहा था । *ṣṭeṣan ke bahar ek hī rikṣevālā intazār kar rahā thā*, There was just one rickshaw-wallah waiting outside the station.

(a) Note that use of -वाला *-vālā* is often the simplest and concisest way of expressing what would be adjective phrases, or relative clauses involving expressions such as 'the one who', etc. in English.

(b) Nouns on which -वाला *-vālā* derivatives are formed show oblique case frequently. This usage is regular in the plural: e.g.

यह मकान चारा काटने की मशीनोंवाले सरदार लहना सिंह का है । *yah makān cārā kātne kī maṣīnoṃvāle sardār lahnā sīṃh kā hai* (Ashk), This house belongs to Sardār Lahnā Singh, the fodder-cutting-machine man.

In the singular the only nouns whose case is apparent are the masculines in final *-ā*; these sometimes, but not always, show oblique *-e* in conjunction with -वाला *-vālā*. Thus alongside रिक्शेवाला *rikṣevālā* the form रिक्शावाला *rikṣāvālā* exists, and is quite acceptable.

(c) Note that -वाला *-vālā*, being of adjectival force, is usually superfluous with adjectives themselves, but that it is sometimes used in informal language with adjectives.

उसकी दाढ़ी पहलेवाले साधु की तरह लंबी है । *uskī dāṛhī pahlevāle sādhu kī tarah lambī hai*, His beard is long, like (that of) the first sādhu.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> पहलेवाले साधु की तरह *pahlevāle sādhu kī tarah*: the syntax of this phrase is explained in Supplement III, p. 178, paragraph (b).

(d) Quite frequently the two parts of -वाला -*vālā* derivatives are written or printed as separate words.

2. With verbs it has agentive force.

मैं इलाहाबाद का रहनेवाला हूँ। *main ilāhābād kā rahnevālā hūm*, I'm a resident of Allahabad.

हम भारत के रहनेवाले हैं। *ham bhārat ke rahnevāle haim*, We are citizens of India.

हिंदी सीखनेवाले विद्यार्थियों को मेरी ओर से बधाई दीजिएगा। *hindī sikhnevāle vidyārthiyon ko merī ōr se badhāi dijiegā*, Please give my congratulations (congratulations from my side) to the students who are learning Hindi.

स्त्रियों और बच्चों पर तोड़े जानेवाले अत्याचारों की खबरों ने इस भाग पर तेल का काम किया। *striyon aur bacchon par toṛe jānevāle atyācāron kī khabaron ne is āg par tel kā kām kiyā* (Ashik), The news of the excesses being committed against the women and children added fuel to this fire.<sup>1</sup>

मैं यूनिवर्सिटी जानेवाला हूँ। *main yūniversitī jānevālā hūm*, I am about to go to the University; I am on my way to the University.

राधा भारत जानेवाली थी कि बीमार पड़ गई। *rādhā bhārat jānevālī thī ki bīmār paṛ gāī*, Rādhā was about to go to India when she fell ill.<sup>2</sup>

(a) Note the syntactic convenience of the use of -वाला -*vālā* with verbs, as with nouns and adverbs, in forming equivalent expressions to adjective phrases and relative clauses.

(b) Note from the second last example above that -वाला -*vālā* verbal derivatives followed by a form of the verb होना *honā* have the sense either 'to be about to . . .' or 'to be engaged in . . .', depending on context.

(c) The two parts of -वाला -*vālā* verbal derivatives can be separated by the enclitic ही *hī* (though some users of Hindi may prefer always to place ही *hī* after -वाला -*vālā*): e.g.

राधा भारत जाने ही वाली थी कि बीमार पड़ गई। *Rādhā bhārat jāne hī vālī thī ki bīmār paṛ gāī*, Rādhā was on the very point of leaving for India when she fell ill.

<sup>1</sup> तोड़े जानेवाले *toṛe jānevāle*, literally 'being broken'; तोड़ा जाना *toṛā jānā*, passive infinitive of तोड़ना *toṛnā*.

<sup>2</sup> For the use of कि *ki* here see Supplement III, p. 183.

But even where no ही *hī* intervenes they are, like -वाला -*vālā* derivatives based on nouns and adverbs, quite often written or printed as separate words.

## VOCABULARY

परलोक <i>parloh</i> , m., the other world,	तेल <i>tel</i> , m., oil
next world; परलोक सिधारना <i>parloh sidhānā</i> , depart for the next world	यूनिवर्सिटी <i>yūniversitī</i> , f., university
चोर <i>cor</i> , m., thief	अत्याचार <i>atyācār</i> , m., excess, harsh action
छत <i>chat</i> , f., roof	सहनशील <i>sahnśīl</i> , tolerant
संबंध <i>sambandh</i> , m., connection, relationship	बीमार <i>bīmār</i> , ill
टिकट <i>tikaṭ</i> , m.f., stamp	बनाना <i>banānā</i> , make, construct
साड़ी <i>sāṛī</i> , f., sari	छिपाना <i>chipānā</i> , trans., hide
रिक्शा <i>rikṣā</i> , m., rickshaw	भगड़ना <i>bhagaṛnā</i> , quarrel
तांगा <i>tāngā</i> , m., tonga (two-wheeled horse-drawn vehicle) [टांगा <i>tāngā</i> ]	मिलाना <i>milānā</i> ( <i>se</i> ), introduce (to), cause to meet with
मशीन <i>mašin</i> , f., machine	पार करना <i>pār karnā</i> , trans., cross
बधाई <i>badhāī</i> , f., congratulations	पैदल <i>paidal</i> , adv., on foot
	पैदल चलनेवाला <i>paidal calnevālā</i> , pedestrian

## EXERCISE 47

हम आपको अपने मित्रों से मिलाने के लिए स्वयं ले चलेंगे। तांगावाले, मुझे कितने पैसे में स्टेशन ले चलेंगे? उस लाल फूलवाले पेड़ का क्या नाम है? राजाओं में परस्पर लड़ाई होती रहती थी।

## EXERCISE 48

He did this work himself, without anyone's help. Pedestrians must cross the street here.<sup>1</sup> Although the lower rooms are small, they are more comfortable than the upper ones. I'm going out. Give me five fifteen paise stamps, please.

<sup>1</sup> यहीं *yohīm* if 'here' is stressed; otherwise यहाँ *yahām* (with different sense).

## LESSON XXVI

## NON-FINITE PARTICIPIAL CONSTRUCTIONS

IMPERFECTIVE and perfective participles frequently occur otherwise than as bases for members of the conjugational patterns of finite verbs noted in Lessons IV and V. They function then as independent (non-finite) units in sentences, and their syntax shows adjectival, substantival, and adverbial characteristics. The form हुआ *huā* may occur following and in the same concord as non-finite participles, in most cases where there is a clear implication that the participles denote a certain condition or a continued state of activity. If such an implication is strong, हुआ *huā* is more likely than not to occur.

The chief types of non-finite participial construction are illustrated below under separate headings according as they show (either wholly or predominantly) adjectival, substantival, or adverbial characteristics.

## 1. Adjectival constructions

The great majority of these are quite straightforward. Imperfective and perfective participles may be used attributively (preceding and forming syntactic units with nouns) or predicatively (otherwise).

चलती (हुई) गाड़ी से कूद पड़ना बेवकूफी है । *calī (hui) gārī se kūd paṛnā bevaqūfī hai*, To jump from a moving train is stupid, stupidity.

अच्छी तरह पढ़ी (हुई) किताब कभी भूली नहीं जाती । *acchī tarah paṛhī (huī) kitāb kabhī bhūlī nahīn jātī*, A book well read is never forgotten.

औरत गाती (हुई) आई । *aurat gātī (huī) āī*, 'The woman came singing, was singing as she came.

लड़का दौड़ा (हुआ) आया । *larhā daurā (huā) āyā*, 'The boy came running, at a run.

एक साधु जमीन पर बैठा (हुआ) दिखाई दे रहा था । दूसरा खड़ा (हुआ) था । *ek sādhu zamīn par baiṭhā (huā) dikhāī de rahā thā. dūsarā khayā (huā) thā*. One holy man could be seen sitting on the ground. The other was standing.<sup>1</sup>

यह किताब मेरी पढ़ी (हुई) है । *yah kitāb merī paṛhī (huī) hai*, I've read this book, this book is one I've read.

<sup>1</sup> The word खड़ा *khayā* 'standing' is an adjective, not a participle, but can be followed by हुआ *huā*.

(a) In the last example note the possessive form preceding the participle and denoting the activity of an agent other than the referend of the sentence subject.

(b) Note that some expressions showing adjectival concord of participles are adverbial in force, and that in these हुआ *huā* does not appear.

लौटते समय हम बात करने लगे । *lauṭte samay ham bāt karne lage*, On the way back we began to talk (at returning-time).

मैं जाती दफ़ा आपको अपनी पुस्तक दे दूंगा । *main jātī dafā āpko apnī pustak de dūngā*, I shall give you my book when I go (at going-time).

वह नाश्ता करते समय समाचारपत्र पढ़ता था । *vah nāštā harte samay samācarpatr paṛhātā thā*, He used to read the paper while he was having his breakfast.

चोर दबे पाँव मकान में घुस गया । *cor dabe pānv makān men ghus gayā*, 'The thief crept stealthily into the house (with 'suppressed footsteps').

(c) Note particularly that participles qualifying oblique case nouns or pronouns are for the most part used only attributively. Predicative usages of participles with oblique case nouns or pronouns are adverbial, and are discussed below.

(d) Reduplicated participles are sometimes used adjectivally: e.g.

मैं दिल्ली में पड़ा पड़ा बेजार हो गया । *main dillī mein paṛā paṛā bezār ho gayā*, I got fed up with staying all the time in Delhi.

Adverbial construction of reduplicated participles, especially imperfective participles, is more common, however, as these tend to express states of activity engaged in, rather than to describe attributes of a person or object adjectivally. Examples are given below. Reduplicated participles are never extended with हुआ *huā*.<sup>1</sup>

## 2. Substantival constructions

The following sentences show participles functioning syntactically as nouns in that they are preceded by possessive forms or by the possessive postposition, or are followed by other postpositions, or function as sentence subject or object. The implication of the participles is frequently such that they are extendable with हुआ *huā*, while like other nouns they may serve

<sup>1</sup> No doubt because the reduplication itself already emphasizes the continuing nature of a condition or action.

also as the basis for oblique case adverbial constructions. Both direct and oblique case participles are found; of the latter, note particularly those preceded by a possessive form or expression, which characteristically denotes the activity of an agent other than the referend of the sentence subject.

#### Direct case

मरता क्या न करता? *martā kyā na kartā?* What wouldn't a dying man do?<sup>1</sup>  
आप मेरा कहा (हुआ) मानिए। *āp merā kahā (huā) mānie*, Please accept what I say (what I have said).<sup>2</sup>

#### Oblique case

हम तकलीफ उठाए बिना आगे नहीं बढ़ेंगे। *ham taklif uṭhāe binā āge nahīn barhēnge*, Without making an effort, taking trouble, we won't advance.<sup>3</sup>

गिरों को (गिरे हुए को) उठाओ, सोतों को (सोते हुए को) जगाओ। *giroṁ ko (gire huōh ko) uṭhāo, sotōh ko (sote huōh ko) jagāo*! Raise up the fallen, awaken the sleeping!

उसके आते ही मैं काम करने लगा। *uske āte hī mēn kām karne lagā*, As soon as he came I started work.<sup>4</sup>

वह मेरे रोके (हुए) न रुका। *vah mere roke (hue) na rukā*, I didn't succeed in stopping him (he didn't stop despite my trying to stop him).

सीता के जीते (हुए) घर में कोई कमी नहीं होती थी। *sītā ke jīte (hue) ghar meṁ koi kamī nahīn hotī thī*, While Sītā lived no want was felt in the home.

### 3. Adverbial constructions

It has been convenient to mention certain adverbial constructions above, but the majority can be most clearly presented in a separate section. In these constructions participles show final -e irrespective of the gender of the word to which they refer. Their function is to indicate that in conjunction with the action denoted by the finite verb a certain further condition or state of activity obtains. This function is usually not clearly

<sup>1</sup> For the use of करता *kartā* in this expression see Supplement II, p. 170.

<sup>2</sup> But आप मेरा कहना मानिए *āp merā kahnā mānie* would be a more common expression. मानना *mānnā* 'consider, accept as; believe; obey'.

<sup>3</sup> See Lesson XXIV, pp. 149 f.

<sup>4</sup> See Lesson XXIII, p. 144.

distinguishable from that of हुआ *huā*, and as a result most adverbial usages of participles may show following हुए *hue*.

In the case of adverbial constructions of participles it is useful to distinguish those based on imperfective from those based on perfective participles.

#### Based on imperfective participles

(i) In conjunction with direct case forms.

मैं आते ही काम करने लगा। *maiṁ āte hī kām karne lagā*, As soon as I arrived I started work.<sup>1</sup>

मैं यह कहते (हुए) डरता हूँ। *maiṁ yah kahṭe (hue) ḍartā hūṁ*, I'm afraid to say this.

औरत गाते (हुए) आ रही थी। *aurat gāte (hue) ā rahī thī*, The woman was coming along singing.

दोनों लड़कियाँ काम करते करते थक गईं। *donōṁ laṛkiyāṁ kām kartē kartē thak gaiṁ*, The two girls grew tired as they worked on.

लड़की दौड़ते दौड़ते आई। *laṛkī daurṭe daurṭe āī*, The girl came running up.

(a) Reduplicated participles are never extended with हुआ *huā*; see above.

(ii) In conjunction with oblique case forms.

राम ने किताबें मेज़ पर रखते (हुए) कहा कि... *rām ne kitābēṁ meṁ par rakhte (hue) kahā ki...*, (As he was) putting the books down on the table Rām said...

आप उसे आते (हुए) देखेंगे। *āp use āte (hue) dekheṁge*, You will see him, her, coming.

(a) Adverbial construction of predicatively used participles is normal in these cases, except that where definite direct objects are involved some Hindi speakers may optionally use participles in 'neutral' or 'impersonal' -ā, and might accordingly replace the second example above with the sentence

आप उसे आता (हुआ) देखेंगे। *āp use ātā (huā) dekheṁge*.

(b) Note especially the construction of participles with noun and pronoun forms followed by को *ko* (or equivalent pronominal object forms) which

<sup>1</sup> See Lesson XXIII, p. 144.



are not definite direct objects (cf. second example in subsection (ii) above); this construction typically expresses passage of time.

उसको विश्वविद्यालय में पढ़ते (हुए) दो वर्ष हो चुके हैं। *usko viśvavidyālay meṁ paṛhte (hue) do varṣ ho cuke haiṁ*, He has been studying at the university for two years now (two years have already passed while he has been studying at the university).

There are parallel usages of perfective participles; see below.

#### Based on perfective participles

Adverbial construction of perfective participles of transitive verbs is extremely common to denote states arising from the carrying out of actions.

#### (i) In conjunction with direct case forms.

लड़की साड़ी पहने (हुए) है। *laṛkī sārī pahne (hue) hai*, The girl is wearing a sari (in the state of having put on a sari).

लड़का टोपी पहने (हुए), चादर ओढ़े (हुए) था। *laṛkā ṭopī pahne (hue), cādar oṛhe (hue) thā*, The boy was wearing a hat and had a shawl wrapped round himself.

एक आदमी पाँव पर पाँव रखे (हुए) फर्श पर बैठा (हुआ) था। *ek ādmī pāṁv par pāṁv rakhe (hue) farś par baiṭhā (huā) thā*, A man was sitting on the floor with his legs crossed.

साधु हाथ उठाए (हुए) मंत्र जप रहा था। *sādhū hāth uṭhāe (hue) mantra jap rahā thā*, The holy man, hand held in the air, was reciting incantations.

मैं समझे (हुए) था कि ... *main samjhe (hue) thā ki* ... , I thought, had thought that ...

(a) Note that in very many cases where participles in this construction are followed by other verbs than होना *honā* they are replaceable with absolutes: e.g.

एक आदमी पाँव पर पाँव रखकर फर्श पर बैठा (हुआ) था। *ek ādmī pāṁv par pāṁv rakhkar farś par baiṭhā (huā) thā*.

(b) Compare with the first example in subsection (i) above the following sentences, showing ने *ne* and participles used as parts of finite verbs in concord with sentence objects:

लड़की ने साड़ी पहनी है। *laṛkī ne sārī pahnī hai*, The girl has put on a sari.

लड़की ने साड़ी पहन रखी है। *laṛkī ne sārī pahn rakhī hai*, The girl is wearing, has on a sari.<sup>1</sup>

#### (ii) In conjunction with oblique case forms.

उसने किताब हाथ में लिए (हुए) कहा कि ... *usne kitāb hāth meṁ lie (hue) kahā ki* ... , While holding the book in his hand he said ...

उसने उसे सोए (हुए) देखा। *usne use soe (hue) dekhā*, He saw him, her, asleep.

(a) Adverbial construction is normal here, as with imperfective participles.

(b) Note the common adverbial construction of perfective participles (transitive or intransitive) with noun or pronoun forms followed by को *ko* (or equivalent pronominal object forms) which are not definite direct objects; this typically expresses passage of time. Cf. the parallel usage of imperfective participles illustrated above.

उसको विश्वविद्यालय में पढ़े (हुए) दो वर्ष हो चुके हैं। *usko viśvavidyālay meṁ paṛhe (hue) do varṣ ho cuke haiṁ*, Two years have (already) passed since he finished studying at the university.

मुझे यहाँ आए (हुए) एक महीना हो गया है। *muṛhe yahāṁ āe (hue) ek mahinā ho gayā hai*, It's a month since I came, I've been here a month.

आपको बनारस गए (हुए) कितने दिन हुए हैं? *āpko banāras gae (hue) kitne din hue haiṁ?* How long is it since you went to, have been in Banaras?

#### VOCABULARY

बेवकूफ <i>†bevaqūf</i> , stupid	मंत्र <i>mantra</i> , m., incantation, verse or utterance of religious significance
बेवकूफी <i>†bevaqūfī</i> , f., stupidity	
जमीन <i>†zamīn</i> , f., land	पुल <i>pul</i> , m., bridge
दफा <i>†dafā</i> , f., time, occasion	कुरता <i>kurtā</i> , m., collarless shirt
नाश्ता <i>nāstā</i> , m., breakfast, first light	पाजामा <i>pājāmā</i> , m., light cotton meal of the day
	trousers
कमी <i>kamī</i> , f., want, shortage, deficiency	गाय <i>gāy</i> , f., cow
चादर <i>cādar</i> , f., shawl; sheet	लाठी <i>lāṭhī</i> , f., staff
	बेज़ार <i>bezār</i> , displeased, bored

<sup>1</sup> For रखना *rakhnā* as dependent auxiliary see Lesson XVII, p. 104. (Note that this sentence is an equivalent of the first sentence given in subsection (i) above, but not of the sentence immediately preceding it in note (b).)



यूरोपीय <i>yūropīy</i> , noun (m.f.) and adj., European	दौड़ना <i>daurnā</i> , run
तीखा <i>tīkhā</i> , sharp, piercing	बढ़ना <i>barhnā</i> , advance; rise
नीचा <i>nīcā</i> , low; नीचा करना <i>nīcā</i> <i>karnā</i> , lower	ओढ़ना <i>oṛhnā</i> , wrap round, wrap about one
दबना <i>ḍabnā</i> , be suppressed, res- trained; दबे पाँव <i>dabe pāuv</i> , stealthily	जपना <i>japnā</i> , repeat mechanically (a god's name, an incantation)
घुसना <i>ghusnā</i> , creep, slink	कटना <i>kaṭnā</i> , be cut, cut off
	चरना <i>carṇā</i> , graze
	देर से आना <i>der se ānā</i> , arrive late

## EXERCISE 49

बनारस से गाड़ियाँ गंगा का पुल पार करती हुई<sup>1</sup> देखी जा सकती हैं। एक कटा हुआ पेड़ मकान के सामने जमीन पर पड़ा था। लड़की रोती हुई मेरे पास आई। मैं यह कहते डरता हूँ। जब मैं उससे कल मिला, तब वह कुरता और पाजामा पहने था। आज तो वह संभवतः यूरोपीय कपड़े पहने होगा। मैंने उसे कभी दफ्तर में देर से आते नहीं देखा। आपको भारत आए कितने दिन हो गए हैं? हमें मिले बहुत दिन हो गए हैं। मेरी और तीखी नजर से देखते हुए उन्होंने कहा "मैं इसीलिए आपको वहाँ भेज रहा हूँ"। वह किताब हाथ में लिए कमरे के बाहर चला गया।

## EXERCISE 50

I saw a cow grazing. The women were singing as they worked. A holy man was sitting in front of the temple door with head bowed. The old man stood up, and walked off in the direction of the village with his staff in his hand. I've been studying Hindi for a month. It's two days since she finished the work.

<sup>1</sup> Or करते हुए, *karte hue*.

## SUPPLEMENT

## I

## FURTHER ASPECTS OF THE GRAMMAR OF NOMINAL FORMS

## 1. Feminine forms of nouns

Words referring to animate beings often show variation in form to denote male and female sex. The most common feminine endings are:

## (a) -ī

लड़का <i>laṛkā</i> , boy	लड़की <i>laṛkī</i> , girl
बेटा <i>beṭā</i> , son	बेटी <i>beṭī</i> , daughter
पुत्र <i>putr</i> , son	पुत्री <i>putrī</i> , daughter
बंदर <i>bandar</i> , monkey	बंदरी <i>bandarī</i> , female monkey

Sanskrit loanwords may show -ī as well as native Hindi words, e.g. पुत्री *putrī* above.

## (b) -iyā

बेटा <i>beṭā</i> , son	बिटिया <i>biṭiyā</i> , daughter
बूढ़ा <i>būṛhā</i> , old man	बुढ़िया <i>būṛhiyā</i> , old woman
कुत्ता <i>kuttā</i> , dog	कुतिया <i>kutiya</i> , bitch

Note that long vowels are frequently modified and double consonants shortened before -iyā; also that -iyā feminines may exist alongside -ī feminines. In this case they may have diminutive (affectionate or pejorative) force, but the use made of the forms varies.

## (c) -in

लोहार <i>lohār</i> , blacksmith	लोहारिन <i>lohārīn</i> , blacksmith's wife
नाई <i>nāī</i> , barber	नाइन <i>nāīn</i> , barber's wife
दूल्हा <i>dūlhā</i> , bridegroom	दुल्हिन <i>dulhin</i> , bride <sup>1</sup>
बाघ <i>bāgh</i> , tiger	बाघिन <i>bāghīn</i> , tigress
मालिक <i>mālik</i> , master	मालकिन <i>mālikīn</i> , mistress

## (d) -nī

बाघ <i>bāgh</i> , tiger	बाघनी <i>bāghnī</i> , tigress
हाथी <i>hāthī</i> , elephant	हाथनी <i>hāthnī</i> , she-elephant <sup>2</sup>
मास्टर <i>māstar</i> , schoolmaster	मास्टरनी <i>māstarnī</i> , schoolmistress

<sup>1</sup> Note short -u-.  
Note short -a-.

For *-nī* the Sanskrit spelling *-inī* sometimes appears, e.g. in हथिनी *hathinī*. Note that *-nī* feminines may exist alongside *-in* feminines.

(e) *-āin*

पंडित *pandit*, pandit पंडिताइन *paṇḍitāin*, pandit's wife  
साहू, साहु *sāh*, *sāhu*, merchant सहूआइन *sahuāin*, merchant's wife<sup>1</sup>

(f) *-āuī*

नौकर *naukar*, servant नौकरानी *nauhrānī*, female servant

(g) *-ā*

छात्र *chātr*, student छात्रा *chātrā*, student (f.)

This suffix represents the common *-ā* ending of Sanskrit feminine nouns, see Lesson I. (A very few Persian or Arabic loanwords also happen to show feminines in *-ā*).

(h) *-trī*

अभिनेता *abhineta*, actor अभिनेत्री *abhinetrī*, actress

This suffix pairs almost exclusively with *-tā* of some masculine loanwords from Sanskrit (exemplified by दाता *dātā*, Lesson I).

(i) *-ikā*

अध्यापक *adhyāpak*, teacher अध्यापिका *adhyāpikā*, schoolmistress  
लेखक *lekhaḥ*, writer लेखिका *lekhiḥkā*, writer (f.)

This suffix pairs with agentive *-ak* of Sanskrit loanwords.

(j) *-inī*

विद्यार्थी *vidyārthī*, student विद्यार्थिनी *vidyārthini* student (f.)

This suffix is quite rare in the spoken language (but see (d) above and section 8 following).

<sup>1</sup> Note short *-a-*.

Words referring to inanimate objects also sometimes occur in pairs; feminine members of such pairs usually denote smaller or more delicate varieties of objects. Some examples are:

घंटा	<i>ghaṇṭā</i> , bell; hour	घंटी	<i>ghaṇṭī</i> , small bell
थाल	<i>thāl</i> , large platter	थाली	<i>thālī</i> , platter
रस्सा	<i>rassā</i> , rope	रस्सी	<i>rassī</i> , rope; string

2. *Periphrastic plurals*

Periphrastic plurals, formed with the plural noun लोग *log* 'people', are quite common for nouns denoting members of classes or types of persons.

साधु लोग हर साल यहाँ आ जाते हैं । *sādhu log har sāl yahān ā jāte haiṁ*, Holy men come here every year.

The locutions तुम लोग *tum log*, आप लोग *āp log* are very common where the reference of the pronouns is to a plural number of persons and not merely honorific, similarly हम लोग *ham log* where the reference is to more than two persons.

आप लोगों का कहना ठीक है । *āp logon kā kahnā thīk hai*, What you people say is correct.

3. *Two common usages of the pronoun हम ham*

(a) Quite frequently, especially in the eastern part of the Hindi language area, the first personal plural form हम *ham* is used with singular reference, i.e. as an equivalent of मैं *main*. This usage cannot be called 'incorrect', but should perhaps be avoided by foreigners.

(b) हम *ham* is quite often used by women in masculine plural verb concord, especially where an activity is felt to have a somewhat collective character.

4. *Use of adjectives as nouns*

This is common.

बेचारी क्या करेगी? *becārī kyā karegī?* What will the poor woman do?

हमारे जवान देश की रक्षा करेंगे । *hamāre javān deś kī rakṣā karenge*, Our soldiers will defend the country.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> जवान *javān* 'young; young man; soldier'.

थानेवालों ने आकर कितनों को पकड़ा! *thānevālōn ne ākar kitnōn ko pakṛā!*  
What a lot of people the police came and arrested!<sup>1</sup>

### 5. Masculine nouns in final -iyā: orthography

Nouns like डाकिया *ḍākiyā* 'postman', पहिया *pahiyā* 'wheel', etc. show alternative oblique singular and direct plural spellings without -y-, viz. डाकिए *ḍākie*, पहिए *pahie* etc., which are often preferred by careful users of the language. (The -y- represents a glide between vowels, whose presence between *i* and *e* is less obtrusive than between *i* and *ā*.)

### 6. Concorde implying unexpressed feminine nouns

Such concords imply a noun of generalised sense, such as बात *bāt*, बार *bār*, as being understood, and are common colloquially: e.g.

उसकी एक भी नहीं चलती। *uskī ek bhī nahīn caltī*, Nothing he wants to do is successful.

उसकी आजकल खूब चल रही है। *uskī ājkal khūb cal rahī hai*, He's getting on splendidly these days.<sup>2</sup>

पिछले साल नैनीताल गया था। अबकी कश्मीर जाऊंगा। *pichle sāl nainītāl gayā thā. abkī kashmīr jāūngā*, Last year I went to Nainital. This time I'm going to Kashmir (on vacation, etc.)

### 7. Some usages of pronominal adjectives

(a) इतना *itnā* 'as many, much, as this'. This form, like most pronominal adjectives, functions as pronoun and adverb as well as adjective. Some further examples of its use are:<sup>3</sup>

इतना तो कहा जा सकता है कि... *itnā to kahā jā saktā hai ki...*, This much, at least, can be said, that...

इतने में मेरी बहन कमरे में आ गई। *itne mein merī bahn kamre mein ā gai*, With this, with that, my sister came into the room.

वह अंधेरे से इतना डरती है कि... *vah andhere se itnā ḍartī hai ki...*, She is so afraid of the dark that...

Note (last example) that इतना *itnā* may be used adverbially in direct case.

<sup>1</sup> थाना *thānā*, m., '(small) police station'.

<sup>2</sup> खूब *khūb* 'splendid(ly), excellent(ly)'.

<sup>3</sup> See also p. 94.

(b) ऐसा *aisā* 'of this sort'; वैसा *vaisā* 'of that sort'.

मैंने कहा था कि वह फेल हो जाएगा। और ऐसा ही हुआ। *maimne kahā thā ki vah fel ho jāegā. aur aisā hī huā*, I said he would fail. And that is just what happened.

वह ऐसे बोला कि मुझे गुस्सा आ गया। *vah aise bolā ki mujhe gussā ā gayā*, He spoke in such a way that I grew angry.

ऐसा आदमी किसी काम के क़ाबिल नहीं है। *aisā ādmī kisī kām ke qābil nahīn hai*, Such a man is not capable of anything.

वैसे तो वह सच्चा बनता है, लेकिन वह भूठा आदमी है। *vaise to vah sacchā bantā hai, lekin vah jhūthā ādmī hai*, It's like this: he seems to be a trustworthy person but is not.<sup>1</sup>

वैसे मैं बोलने आनेवाला नहीं था, लेकिन बोलना पड़ रहा है। *vaise maim bolne ānevālā nahīn thā, lekin bolnā pāṛ rahā hai*, Well, I didn't come to speak, but (I see) I have to.

मेरी बात बुरी न मानें, मैंने वैसे ही कह दी थी। *merī bāt burī na mānēn, maimne vaise hī kah dī thī*, Don't take what I said amiss, I said it without thinking, casually.<sup>2</sup>

Note particularly the use of introductory वैसे *vaise*, वैसे तो *vaise to*, and वैसे ही *vaise hī* 'merely, simply; casually'. All these expressions are extremely common in the spoken language.

(c) कम *kam* 'little (of quantity), few'.

मैं कम हिंदी जानता हूँ। *maim kam hindī jāntā hūm*, I know little Hindi.

वह कम किताबें पढ़ता है। *vah kam kitābēn pāṛtā hai*, He reads few books.

मैं अब वहाँ कम जाता हूँ। *maim ab vahān kam jāntā hūm*, I go there little now.

(d) थोड़ा *thorā* 'a little; little'.

मुझे थोड़ी हिंदी आती है। *mujhe thorī hindī ātī hai*, I know a little Hindi.

मैं यह थोड़े ही जानता था कि आप यहाँ होंगे। *maim yah thorē hī jāntā thā ki āp yahān hōnge*, I little knew that you would be here.

<sup>1</sup> बनना *bannā*, which is often a close equivalent of हो जाना *ho jānā*, here has the sense 'appear as, make a pretence of being...'; भूठा *jhūthā* 'false, lying; a liar'.

<sup>2</sup> मानना *mānnā* 'consider, accept as; believe; obey'.

थोड़ा *thoṛā* is mainly used adjectivally; as an adverb कम *kaṁ* is more common.

The compound adjective थोड़ा-बहुत *thoṛā-bahut* is used in the sense 'a certain amount of'.

मैं थोड़ी-बहुत हिंदी जानता हूँ । *māim thoṛī-bahut hindī jāntā hūm*, I know a certain amount of Hindi.

#### 8. Some Sanskrit endings used adjectivally in Hindi

The Sanskrit feminine inflexional endings *-ā*, *-inī* (see 1(g), (j) above) and *-matī*, *-vatī* (with corresponding masculines in *-mān*, *-vān*, see pp. 196 f.) are sometimes used adjectivally, chiefly in formal language: e.g.

नागरी प्रचारिणी सभा *nāgarī pracāriṇī sabhā*, Society for the Propagation of Nāgarī (a title)<sup>1</sup>

सुशीला स्त्री *susīlā strī*, a virtuous woman

श्रीमती वर्मा *śrīmatī varmā*, Mrs. Varmā

दीप्तिमती प्रतिभा *dīptimatī pratibhā*, brilliant genius

कलावती नर्तिका *kalāvātī nartikā*, a gifted, artistic, dancer

युवती स्त्री *yuvatī strī*, young woman<sup>2</sup>

#### 9. Some expressions of place

Names of towns are sometimes used colloquially without postpositions as expressions of place, equivalent to expressions showing the postposition में *meṁ*: e.g.

जब मैं इलाहाबाद था, तो रोज़ काफ़ी हाउस जाता था । *jab māim ilāhābād thā, to roz kufī hāus jātā thā*, When I was in Allahabad I used to go everyday to the Coffee House.

उस समय मैं आगरा रहता था । *us samay māim āgrā rahtā thā*, At that time I was living in Agra.

#### 10. Multiplicatives (contd.)

Some other multiplicatives than those given in Lesson XI are

इकहरा *ikahrā*, 'onefold'; thin

<sup>1</sup> For *ṇ* in the word प्रचारिणी *pracāriṇī* see p. 189.

<sup>2</sup> The corresponding masculine form is युवा *yuvā* 'young; a youth or young man'.

दोहरा, दुहरा *dohrā, duhrā*, twofold; ample; fat

तेहरा, तिहरा *tehrā, tihṛā*, threefold<sup>1</sup>

चौहरा *cauhrā*, fourfold

मैं आपसे दोहरा (दुगुना) काम करता हूँ । *māim āpse dohrā (dugunā) kām kartā hūm*, I do twice as much work as you.

उस कंबल में चौहरी तह लगाना ! *us kambal meṁ cauhrī tah lagānā* ! Fold that blanket into four!<sup>2</sup>

(a) A few fractional forms in *-ā* are also found:

पौना *paunā*,  $\frac{1}{2}$  the amount of

सवाया *savāyā*,  $\frac{1}{4}$  times the amount of

ढ्योढ़ा *dyoḍhā*  $1\frac{1}{2}$  times the amount of

उसे पिछले हफ्ते सवाई तनखाह मिली । *use picheḥ hafte savāi tankhāh mili*, Last week he got one and a quarter times his (usual) wage.

<sup>1</sup> The first vowel of this word is usually short [ɛ], sometimes [i].

<sup>2</sup> तह *tah*, f. 'fold'.

## II

### FURTHER ASPECTS OF THE GRAMMAR OF VERBS

#### 1. Routine imperfective

In past narration imperfective participles are commonly used without auxiliaries to describe routines of action, i.e. not actions presented as actually occurring, but actions presented as those which would typically occur, in given circumstances.

बूढ़ा शाम को रोज़ बाग में घूमने जाता । *būṛhā śām ko roz bāg meḥ ghūmnē jātā*, The old man would go for a walk in the park every evening.

डाइनिंग हाल में खाना मैं पहले भी खाता था, और कई बार उस पाँत में भी खाता था, जिसमें देवा जी और उनका परिवार रहता । *ḍāining hāl meḥ khānā main pahle bhī khātā thā, aur kaī bār us pānt meḥ bhī khātā thā, jismēḥ devā jī aur unkā parivār rahatā* (Ashk), I had used to eat in the dining hall before that, too, several times in the very row in which Devā Jī and his family would sit (to eat).

#### 2. Use of imperfective participles to denote hypothetical events (contd.)

It was noted in Lesson XX that imperfective participles are used in conditional sentences to denote hypothetical events or events very unlikely to occur. Some illustrations of similar usages in non-conditional sentences are:

काश (कि) मैं वहाँ जा सकता! *kāś (ki) main vahūn jā saktā!* How I wish I could go there!<sup>1</sup>

मैं तुमसे क्यों न ईर्ष्या करता? *main tumse kyōn na īṛyā kartā?* Why should I not have envied you?<sup>2</sup>

इतना चाहता हूँ कि वह मुझसे मिलने आता । *itnā cāhtā hūn ki vah mujhse milne ātā*, I long for him to come to see me (but I fear he will not).

#### 3. Usages of perfective participles

(a) The use of perfective participles with future time reference in conditional sentences has been noted in Lesson XX. It is common elsewhere, usually with an affective value.

<sup>1</sup> काश (कि) *kāś (ki)* 'would that . . .'. This expression also occurs with subjunctive verbs.

<sup>2</sup> ईर्ष्या *īṛyā*, f. 'envy; jealousy'.

### FURTHER ASPECTS OF THE GRAMMAR OF VERBS 171

पानी लाओ! — लाया, साहब! *pāuī lāo! — lāyā, sāhab!* Bring some water!  
Very good, sir!<sup>1</sup>

मैं अभी आया । *main abhī āyā*, I'll be back in a moment.

तो चल दिए? *to cal diē?* You're off, then?

(b) Note the common use of रहा *rahā*, rather than a form of होना *honā*, in affective expressions serving to point out an object in a certain place.

देखिए, वह रहा मंदिर! *dekhie, vah rahā mandir!* Look, there's a temple! (over there).<sup>2</sup>

(c) Note the use of हुआ *huā* in concord with preceding nouns in the adverbial sense 'ago' (i.e. expressing the completion of a period of time).

एक साल हुआ	<i>ek sāl huā,</i>	a year ago
एक हफ्ता हुआ	<i>ek haftā huā,</i>	a week ago
दो हफ्ते हुए	<i>do hafte hue,</i>	two weeks ago

#### 4. Subjunctive usages

(a) Note the very common use of न जाने *na jāne*, and colloquially, un-negatived जाने *jāne*, in the sense 'one cannot tell', 'Heaven knows', etc.

न जाने क्यों मैं उसे देख नहीं सकता । *na jāne kyōn main use dekh nahīn saktā*,  
For some reason I can't stand the sight of him.

और जाने क्या क्या कहा । *aur jāne kyā kyā kahā*, Heaven knows what else he said.

गीत विरह का था, पर जाने क्यों मुझे करुण नहीं लगा । *gīt virah kā thā, par jāne kyōn mujhe karuṇ nahīn lagā* (Ashk), The song was one of separation, but for some reason it did not strike me as sad.

(b) The form चाहे *cāhe* 'one may wish' is used reduplicated, with subjunctive verbs, in the conjunctive sense 'whether . . . or'; also singly with a correlative such as लेकिन *lekin*, etc.

<sup>1</sup> An alternative expression would be लाता हूँ *lātā hūn*; this would convey less of the idea that the servant is about to carry out, and complete, the action at the given time.

<sup>2</sup> वह *vah* is here not the subject of रहा *rahā*, but is used in a vague demonstrative way similar to that exemplified for यह *yah* on p. 102; the subject of रहा *rahā* is मंदिर *mandir*.

चाहे वह बुरा हो, चाहे अच्छा हो, फिर भी हमारा बेटा हो है। *cāhe vah burā ho, cāhe acchā ho, phir bhī hamārā betā hī hai*, Whether he be good or bad, he is still our son.

चाहे आप यहाँ रहें, लेकिन मैं नहीं रहूँगा। *cāhe āp yahān rahen, lekin main nahīn rahūngā*, You can stay if you like, but I shan't.

(c) Perfective subjunctive forms are available to define verbal actions as of possible occurrence, completed. They show perfective participles with subjunctive forms of होना *honā* as auxiliaries.

तुमने जो कुछ लिखा हो, उसे दिखाना। *tumne jo kuch likhā ho, use dikhānā*, Show me whatever you've written.

(d) Imperfective and continuous subjunctive forms are also available: e.g. अगर मैं लिखता होऊँ तो मुझे न बुलाना। *agar main likhitā hoūn to mujhe na bulānā*, If I'm writing don't call me.

अगर वह आ रहा हो तो आप भी आ जाइएगा! *agar vah ā rahā ho to āp bhī ā jāiegā*! If he's coming (going to come), you come too by all means!

#### 5. Negatived sentences with verb unexpressed

Present tense forms of the verb होना *honā* are often felt to be superfluous in sentences negatived with नहीं *nahīn*, and are omitted, especially in informal usage.

कुएँ में पानी नहीं। *kuēn men pānī nahīn*, There's no water in the well.

#### 6. Intensives

Forms which may be described as 'intensives' exist associated with compound verbs and some other composite verbal expressions. They usually stress in some way that an action is in progress or is immediately impending at a particular time. Intensives of intransitive verbs are usually based on perfective participles in adjectival concord with subjects, those of transitive verbs regularly on adverbially used -e forms of perfective participles.

##### (i) Intensives showing perfective participles in concord

बर्फ पिघली जाती है! *barf pighli jātī hai*! The ice is melting! (Something should be done about it.)

उसकी माँ उसके पीछे मरी जाती है। *uskī mām uske piche marī jātī hai*, His mother works herself to death for him.

(a) Intensives of verbs of motion are quite common, stressing that the action is in progress, e.g. चला जाना *calā jānā* 'move (along), go (away)'; भागा जाना *bhāgā jānā* 'flee (away)'. They usually have less affective force than other intensives (this applies especially to चला जाना *calā jānā*.)

##### (ii) Intensives showing -e forms

मैं आपसे यह कहे देता हूँ कि... *main āpse yah kahe detā hūn ki...*, I tell you this...

मुझे बचाओ, यह मुझे मारे डालता है! *mujhe bacāo, yah mujhe māre dālta hai*! Save me, this fellow is killing me!

बच्चे का तुतलाना मन को मोहे लेता था। *bacce kā tutlānā man ko mohe letā thā*, The baby's prattling used to be absolutely delightful.<sup>1</sup>

बच्चे का तुतलाना आपके मन को मोहे लेगा। *bacce kā tutlānā āpke man ko mohe legā*, The baby's prattling will absolutely delight you.

(a) Intensives containing the auxiliaries देना *denā*, लेना *lena*, and डालना *dālānā* show imperfective participles of these verbs in the great majority of cases.

(b) Intensives in which the -e form is followed by जाना *jānā* express very much the same sense as composites of imperfective participle + जाना *jānā* (see p. 136), but often with a slightly different emphasis which may be characterised in general as 'intensive'. They differ in their range of occurrence from the intensives already noted in this subsection, in that जाना *jānā* often occurs in non-imperfective forms.

बर्फ पिघले जाती है! *barf pighle jātī hai*! The ice is melting!\*

वह सारे दिन रामचरितमानस पढ़े जाता है, करता कुछ नहीं *vah sāre din rāmcarit-mānas paṛhe jātā hai, kartā kuch nahīn*, He does nothing but read the Rāmcaritmānas all day.

जब तक मुझमें शक्ति है, मैं काम किए जाऊँगा। *jab tak mujhmen śakti hai, main kāṁ kie jāūngā*, As long as I have the strength I shall press on with the work (actively).

मैं उसे हजार रुपया महीना दिए जाऊँगा। *main use hazār rupayā mahīnā diē jāūngā*, I shall give him a thousand rupees a month (unconditionally, positively).

<sup>1</sup> तुतलाना *tutlānā* 'babble, lisp'; मोहना *mohnā* 'enchant, charm'.

\* An equivalent of the sentence given on p. 172.

(c) Note that verbal expressions showing जाना *jānā* following an *-e* form are not necessarily intensives as defined above; their contexts may require that the verb जाना *jānā* be interpreted in its literal sense 'go': e.g.

उसे क्यों छोड़े जाती है? *use kyon chōṛe jāti hai?* Why is she going off and leaving him?

### 7. Syntax of absolutive expressions

(a) Note the frequency of unrelated absolutives in passive constructions (most usually impersonal passive constructions).

मशीन गिर न जाए, इसलिए उसे रस्सियों से कसकर बाँधा गया। *mašin gir na jāe, isliye use rassiyon se kashar bāndhā gayā* (Ashk), So that the machine would not fall off it was tied on tightly with ropes (pulled tight and tied on with ropes)<sup>1</sup>

(b) Note that verbs and other parts of sentences often intervene between absolutives and clauses dependent on them.

मुझे यह सुनकर बड़ी खुशी है कि... *mujhe yah sunkar barī khusī hai ki...*, I'm very glad to hear that...

वह अपने बच्चों से कहकर जाती कि तुम किसान की बातें सुनकर मुझे बताना। *vah apne bacchon se kahkar jāti ki tum kisān kī bātēn sunkar mujhe batānā*, On leaving she would tell her children to listen to what the farmer said and report it to her.

(c) Note the common collocations जान पड़ना *jān pāṛnā* 'seem', देख पड़ना *dekh pāṛnā* 'be visible', सुन पड़ना *sun pāṛnā* 'be audible' showing stem absolutives.<sup>2</sup>

(मुझे) जान पड़ता है कि... (*mujhe*) *jān pāṛtā hai ki...*, It seems (to me) that...

मुझे कोने में एक साँप देख पड़ा। *mujhe kone me ek sānp dekh pāṛā*, I caught sight of a snake in the corner.

(d) Where there is an implication that the action denoted by an absolutive is closely associated with that denoted by a finite verb, stem absolutives (rather than extended absolutives showing *-kar*, *-ke*) are common. This is clear in collocations of stem absolutive + finite verb such as ले जाना *le*

<sup>1</sup> कसना *kasnā* 'bind, pull tight'.

<sup>2</sup> Equivalents of मालूम होना *malūm honā*, दिखाई देना *dikhāi denā*, and सुनाई देना *sunāi denā* respectively.

*jānā*, etc., but note that stem absolutives do not necessarily immediately precede finite verbs of their sentences: e.g.

वह अमर का हाथ पकड़ कमरे में ले गया। *vah amar kā hāth pakṛ kamre me le gayā*, Taking Amar by the hand he led him into the room.

### 8. Variants of inflexional forms

More than one spelling is current for many verb forms. These variant spellings usually involve analogical extensions of the graph *y*, representing a semi-vocalic glide between vowels, from spellings of forms in whose pronunciation the glide is prominent. Spellings without *y* are often preferred by careful users of the language. Some representative pairs of spellings of forms of the verb आना *ānā* are:

आई	<i>āi</i>	आयी	<i>āyi</i>	(influence of आया <i>āyā</i> )
आए	<i>āe</i> (perfective and subjunctive)	आये	<i>āye</i>	(influence of आया <i>āyā</i> )
आई	<i>āim</i>	आयीं	<i>āyim</i>	(influence of आया <i>āyā</i> )
आएगा	<i>āegā</i>	आयेगा	<i>āyegā</i>	(influence of आये <i>āye</i> )

Similar pairs are:

पिए	<i>pie</i>	पिये	<i>piye</i>
सिमो	<i>sio</i>	सियो	<i>siyo</i>
बोलिए	<i>bolie</i>	बोलिये	<i>boliye</i>
चाहिए	<i>cāhie</i>	चाहिये	<i>cāhiye</i> , etc.

A few variant spellings depend on the de-stressing of final or medial syllables of inflexional forms. For example alongside

जाए	<i>jāe</i>	जाये	<i>jāye</i>	also occurs	जाय	<i>jāy</i>
जाएँ	<i>jāem</i>	जायें	<i>jāyem</i>	"	जायें	<i>jāyam</i>
जाएगा	<i>jāegā</i>	जायेगा	<i>jāyegā</i>	"	जायगा	<i>jāygā</i> , etc.

Third person subjunctive forms of verbs whose stem ends in *-ā* sometimes show a glide *v* in both pronunciation and spelling, for example alongside

आए	<i>āe</i>	occurs	आवे	<i>āve</i>
पाए	<i>pāe</i>	"	पावे	<i>pāve</i>
दिखाएँ	<i>dikhāem</i>	"	दिखावें	<i>dikhāvem</i> , etc.

Forms of this last type are relatively frequent in speech, less so in the written language.

## 9. -ic and -icgā forms (contd.)

These forms, which were discussed for convenience under the heading 'Imperative forms', are, as was stated in that section, very far from being true imperatives in force, their force being equatable much rather with that of the subjunctive forms of modern Hindi. They in fact represent third person singular passive subjunctive, and earlier passive indicative forms of the older language. Their affiliation with subjunctives is clearly seen in the fact that they often occur in questions which cannot be construed as requests, and even in subordinate clauses. Their use emphasises (sometimes with irony) that questions and statements are circumspect or considerate in some way. Sometimes, as in the last example below, their original passive force is quite clear.

(आप) अंडा कैसे खाइएगा? (*āp*) *aṇḍā kaise khāicgā?* How would you like your egg?

फिर आप कहाँ जाइएगा? *phir āp kahām jāicgā?* Where are you going next?

फिर आप चलिएगा कहाँ? *phir āp calicgā kahām?* Where are you going then? (please be so good as to tell me).

अगर आप दिल्ली चलिए (गा), तो मैं भी हो लूँ। *agar āp dillī calic(gā), to main bhī ho hūn*, If you should go to Delhi, I'd like to go with you.

किताबें न खरीद सकिए (गा), तो लाइब्रेरी में जाकर पढ़िए। *kitābēn na kharīd sakie(gā), to lāibrerī meṁ jākar paṛhie*, If you can't buy the books, go and study in the library.

जी चाहता था, वहीं सो रहिए। *jī cāhtā thā, vahīm so rahie*, I longed to lie down and sleep right there.

## 10. Concord of infinitives

Infinitives of transitive verbs immediately preceding such verbs as सीखना *sikhnā*, चाहना *cāhnā*, and शुरू करना *surū karnā* usually show the same concord as these when they are in construction with ने *ne*.

उन्होंने हिंदी लिखनी सीखी। *unhomne hindī likhnī sikhī*, He learned to write Hindi.

उन्होंने किताब बेचनी चाही। *unhomne kitāb becnī cāhī*, They wanted, tried to sell the book.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> वे किताब बेचना चाहे *ve kitāb becnā cāhe* is also possible, चाहना *cāhnā* not being always used in construction with ने *ne*.

मैंने किताब पढ़नी शुरू की। *mainne kitāb paṛhnī surū kī*, I began to read the book.

But in some persons' usage, especially spoken usage, both infinitive and finite verb show -ā. Thus for the last sentence

मैंने किताब पढ़ना शुरू किया। *mainne kitāb paṛhnā surū kiya* is also possible.



### III

#### FURTHER ASPECTS OF THE GRAMMAR OF POSTPOSITIONS, ADVERBS, AND CONJUNCTIONS

##### 1. Postpositional usages

(a) Postpositions do not always occur singly. A particularly common postpositional pair is में से *meṁ se* 'from inside, from among'; note also pairs showing final का *kā*, e.g. पर का *par kā* 'the . . . on'.

इन किताबों में से आप दो-तीन चुन लें। *in kitābōṁ meṁ se āp do-tīn cun leṁ*, Please pick out two or three of these books.

कुएँ में से पानी निकालने के लिए बाल्टी इस्तेमाल हो सकती है। *kuēṁ meṁ se pānī nikālne ke lie bālṭī istemāl ho saktī hai*, A bucket can be used for drawing water from a well.

गाड़ी पर का सामान उतरवा दो। *gāṛī par kā sāmān utarvā do*, Get the luggage on the car unloaded.

(b) The postposition का *kā* does not occur in first position in postpositional pairs. Note the syntax of such a sentence as

मेरी निगाहें फिर उससे जा मिलीं। *merī nigāheṁ phir usse jā milīṁ* (Ashk), My eyes once more met hers (literally, 'met her'),<sup>1</sup>

and the difference between the syntax of the following sentence, in which the word कुरसी *kursī* is repeated, and that of its English translation equivalent:

मेरी कुरसी पर न बैठकर उसकी कुरसी पर बैठिए। *merī kursī par na baiṭhkar uskī kursī par baiṭhiē*, Don't sit in my chair, sit in his.

(c) Constructions involving the postposition का *kā* can sometimes be confusing, in that between का *kā* and a noun with which it is in concord other parts of a sentence may intervene.

मकान का ऊपर का कमरा। *makān kā ūpar kā kamrā*, the room at the top of the house

पिटो के ज़िंदा रहते, मुझे नगर के उस शोर-शराबे और भीड़-भबभर का कभी अहसास न हुआ था। *pitto ke zindā rahte, mujhe nagar ke us šor-šarābe aur bhīṛ-bhabbhār kā kabhī ahsās na huā thā* (Ashk), While Pitto was alive, I had never noticed that din and turmoil of the city.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> निगाह *nigāh*, f. 'look, glance'.

<sup>2</sup> ज़िंदा *zindā*, see p. 7; शोर-शराबा *šor-šarābā*, भीड़-भबभर *bhīṛ-bhabbhār*, see p. 201; अहसास *ahsās*, m. 'perception, feeling'.

#### POSTPOSITIONS, ADVERBS, AND CONJUNCTIONS 179

(d) Where more than one oblique case noun is associated with a single postposition this is usually expressed with the last noun only: e.g.

वे अपने दोस्तों और रिश्तेदारों से मिलने आए थे। *ve apne dostōṁ aur riṣṭedārōṁ se milne āe the*, They had come to meet their friends and relatives.

##### 2. Formation of adverbs

Note the common use of the collocation . . . रूप से . . . *rūp se*, and the use of the suffix -तः *-taḥ*, in forming adverbs from adjectives in the more formal language; also the Sanskrit inflexional ending -या *-yā* which occasionally forms adverbs from borrowed feminine nouns in -ā. Certain other Sanskrit inflexional endings are also very occasionally used in the same way.

सामान्य रूप से *sāmānya rūp se*, in general.

विशेष रूप से *viśeṣ rūp se*, in particular

संभवतः *sambhavataḥ*, probably, possibly

पूर्णतः *pūrṇataḥ*, fully, in full

पूर्णतया *pūrṇatayā*, " " "

कृपया *kṛpayā*, kindly, of your kindness<sup>1</sup>

##### 3. शायद ही *śāyad hī*; तक *tak*; भर *bhar*

(a) Note the use of शायद ही *śāyad hī* in the senses 'scarcely; scarcely ever'.

मेरे जीवन में ऐसा शायद ही कभी हुआ हो कि . . . *mere jīvan meṁ aisā śāyad hī kabhī huā ho ki* . . . (Premchand), It can scarcely ever have happened in my life that . . .

(b) तक *tak* is used adverbially in the sense 'even' with preceding direct, not oblique, case nouns.

मेरे पास पैसे तक न रहा। *mere pās paisā tak na rahā*, I didn't have a pice left.

(c) भर *bhar*, i.e. the stem of the verb भरना *bharnā* 'fill', is used in various adverbial expressions with preceding nouns in oblique case.

दिन भर *din bhar*, all day

हफ्ते भर *hafte bhar*, all week

पेट भर खाना *peṭ bhar khānā*, eat one's fill<sup>2</sup>

पल भर *pal bhar*, (for) just a moment

<sup>1</sup> In making somewhat formal requests.

<sup>2</sup> Very occasionally भर *bhar* is used as a prefix, e.g. भरपेट खाना *bharpeṭ khānā*, synonymous with the above expression.

4. भी *bhī* (contd.)

Most of the usages of this enclitic will be found to give little difficulty of interpretation if its inclusive force, complementary to that of restrictive ही *hī*, and its general translation equivalents 'also', 'even' are borne in mind. Some further examples of the use of भी *bhī*, in construction with verbs and in some standardised locutions, are given here.

चलिए भी! *calie bhī!* Come on then, do come on!

उसे रहने भी दो। *use rahne bhī do*, Do leave that alone, for goodness sake leave that alone.<sup>1</sup>

दफ्तर में काम करते, मित्र-शत्रुओं, अफसरों या चपरसियों से बातें करते हुए भी, मैंने उसको देखती रहती थी। *daftar mein kām harte, mitr-shatruon, afsaron yā caprasiyon se bātēn karte hue bhī, āmkhēm usko dekhtī rahī thīn* (Ashk), Even when (I was) working in the office, talking to friends and enemies, officers or messengers, I kept seeing her in my mind's eye.<sup>2</sup>

कुछ भी *kuch bhī*, anything at all

कोई भी *koī bhī*, anyone at all

अब भी *ab bhī*, even now

और भी *aur bhī*, even more

तो भी *to bhī*, but even so

भी... भी *bhī... bhī*, both... and

वह बच्चों के लिए किताबें भी लाया और खिलौने भी। *vah bacchon ke lie kitābēn bhī lāyā aur khilāune bhī*, He brought both books and toys for the children.

5. कहीं *kahīm* 'somewhere'

Note that कहीं *kahīm* is not an interrogative, despite its apparent connection with कहाँ *kahān*. Some common locutions showing कहीं *kahīm* are given here, and others in section 7 below.

कहीं नहीं *kahīm nahīm*, nowhere

सब कहीं *sab kahīm*, everywhere

कहीं भी *kahīm bhī*, anywhere at all

जहाँ कहीं *jahām kahīm*, wheresoever

कहीं और *kahīm aur*, somewhere else

कहीं कहीं *kahīm kahīm*, in different places

<sup>1</sup> Or 'leave him alone'.

<sup>2</sup> Literally '... (my) eyes kept seeing her'. भी *bhī*, though expressed only with the second participle, is to be taken with the first also.

6. Affective usages of न *na*

Affective usages of न *na* are very common, especially with imperatives, in the locution जो है न *jo hai na* in informal speech, and in certain reduplicative expressions: e.g.

'बताइए न संगीत जी', उसने फिर आग्रह के साथ कहा। *'batāie na saṅgīt jī'*, *usne phir āgrah ke sāth kahā*, 'Please do tell (me), Saṅgīt jī', she repeated eagerly.<sup>1</sup>

वहाँ जो गाड़ी खड़ी है न, वह मेरी है। *vahān jo gārī khārī hai na*, *vah merī hai*, You see that car over there? It's mine.<sup>1</sup>

कोई न कोई *koī na koī*, someone or other

कुछ न कुछ *kuch na kuch*, something or other

कभी न कभी *kabhī na kabhī*, at one time or another

कहीं न कहीं *kahīm na kahīm*, somewhere or other

## 7. Other affective usages

Many affective usages of interrogative words are similar to English affective usages and give no difficulty, especially those involving कैसा *kaisā* and कितना *kitnā*, and many with क्या *kyā*: e.g.

वे कैसे अच्छे आदमी हैं! *ve kaise acche ādmī haiṁ!* What a good man he is!

राजपूतों की वीरता का क्या कहना! *rājputon kī vīrtā kā kyā kahnā!* What stories there are of the Rajputs' heroism!<sup>2</sup>

Others, especially those involving कहाँ *kahām*, कहीं *kahīm*, and कब *kab*, are more difficult. Note कहीं *kahīm* used with न *na* in the sense 'lest', and कितना ही... क्यों न *kitnā hī... kyōn na* 'however much'.

वह कहाँ जगाए जगाए उठता था? *vah kahām jagāe jagāe uthtā thā?* Would he ever get up, even after being repeatedly awakened (where, in what case, used he to get up)?<sup>3</sup>

यह पुस्तक उससे कहीं अच्छी है। *yah pustak usse kahīm acchī hai*, This book is far better than that (better to how great an extent).

<sup>1</sup> न *na* following verb forms has a rising intonation.

<sup>2</sup> कहना *kahnā* is used as a noun; plural कहने *kahne* (with के *ke*) is also possible here.

<sup>3</sup> जगाए जगाए *jagāe jagāe* here represents (किसी के) जगाए जगाए (*kisī ke jagāe jagāe* 'on being awakened (by someone)').

चलो यहाँ से, बदमाश कहीं का! *calo yahām se, badmāsh kahīm kā!* Clear out of here, you villain (villain of how great a degree)!

मुझे डर था कि कहीं सब पुस्तकें गिर न जाएँ। *mujhe dar thā ki kahīm sab pustkē gir na jāēn*, I was afraid that (it might happen that) all the books would fall.

नहीं तो मैं दिल्ली कब का चला गया होता। *nahīm to main dillī kab kā calā gayā hotā*, Otherwise I would have gone to Delhi long since (at what time would I have gone? — Long since).

उनके पास कितना ही पैसा क्यों न हो, फिर भी कोई उनका आदर नहीं करता। *unke pās kitnā hī paisā kyom na ho, phir bhī koi unkā ādar nahīm kartā*, However much money he may have, no one respects him.<sup>1</sup>

उसे हिंदी तो क्या, बँगला भी आती है। *use hindī to kyā, baṅglā bhī ātī hai*, He knows Hindi of course, and Bengali too (what of Hindi, he also knows Bengali).

काम शुरू कर रहे हैं? — हाँ, और क्या? *kām surū kar rahe hain? — hān, aur kyā?* Are you starting work? — Yes, of course!<sup>2</sup>

#### 8. Conjunctions: forms and usages

(a) Alongside और *aur* 'and' there are the equivalent Sanskrit loanwords तथा *tathā* and एवं *evam*<sup>3</sup> in the formal language. Alongside पर *par*, लेकिन *lekin* 'but' the Sanskrit loanwords परंतु *parantu*, किंतु *kintu* and the Persian loanword मगर *magar* occur, and alongside या *yā* 'or' the Sanskrit loanword (अथ)वा *(ath)vā* occurs. Note also the Persian forms -ओ- -o-, व *va*, used in expressions of a more or less stereotyped nature, the first very largely in expressions of specifically Urdu character, the second more widely.

दिलोजान से *dilojān se*, with heart and soul

आबोहवा *ābohavā*, climate (water and air)

नाम व पता *nām va patā*, name and address

ये जानवर दिन में व रात में शिकार करते हैं। *ye jānvar din mein va rāt mein śikār karte hain*, These animals hunt (both) by day and by night.

<sup>1</sup> कितना ही . . . क्यों न *kitnā hī . . . kyom na* is often followed by फिर भी *phir bhī*, लेकिन *lekin*, etc.; and the word कितना *kitnā* may be preceded by concessive चाहे *cāhe*.

<sup>2</sup> और *aur* is stressed.

<sup>3</sup> Pronounced with final [m].

(b) The following pairs of conjunctions are common. Note that तो *to* usually occurs following the first member of these pairs in sentences of neutral style and emphasis.

या . . . या *yā . . . yā*, either . . . or

न . . . न *na . . . na*, neither . . . nor

मैं या तो बनारस जाऊँगा, या इलाहाबाद। *main yā to banāras jāūngā, yā ilāhābād*, I shall go either to Banaras or Allahabad.

मैं न तो बनारस जाऊँगा, न इलाहाबाद। *main na to banāras jāūngā, na ilāhābād*, I shall go neither to Banaras nor to Allahabad.

मैं न बनारस जाऊँगा, न तो इलाहाबाद। *main nā banāras jāūngā, na to ilāhābād*, I shall not go to Banaras, nor to Allahabad either.

(c) The form बल्कि *balki* means 'but, but rather, in addition' and is common after negative clauses. The forms वरन् *\*varan*, अपितु *\*apitu* are also found.

वह किताब लाया ही नहीं, बल्कि उसने मुझे उसे पढ़ने में मदद दी। *vah kitāb lāyā hī nahīm, balki usne mujhe use pāṛhne mein madad dī*, He not only brought the book but helped me to read it.

(d) The form कि *ki*, which is really a link of non-specific force between parts of sentences, is often used instead of जब *jab* 'when' to join clauses when the action described in the second clause is a sudden, fresh development in the context of that described in the first. It is also common for या *yā* in the locution या नहीं *yā nahīm* 'or not'.

राधा भारत जानेवाली थी कि बीमार पड़ गई। *rādhā bhārat jānevālī thī ki bīmār paṛ gai*, Radha was about to go to India when she fell ill.

यह ठीक रास्ता है कि नहीं? *yah thīk rāstā hai ki nahīm?* Is this the right road or not?

Its use pleonastically with relative words (usually, but not always, following these) is common colloquially.

वह एक ऐसा आदमी है जो कि बहुत दूर जाएगा। *vah ek aīsā ādmī hai jo ki bahut dūr jāegā*, He is a man who will go far.

जैसे कि मैं आपसे कह रहा था . . . *jaise ki main āpse kah rahā thā . . .*, As I was telling you . . .

The locution न कि *na ki* has the sense 'and not' in such a sentence as

उसने बँगला सीखी थी, न कि हिंदी । *usne baṅglā sikhī thī, na ki hindī*, He learned Bengali, not Hindi.

(e) As an equivalent of the expression नहीं तो *nahīn to* 'otherwise' the Arabic loanword वरना *varnā* is common.

अपना काम देखो, यरना अच्छा न होगा! *apnā kām dekho, varnā acchā na hogā!*  
Do your work properly, or there'll be trouble!

## IV

## SANDHI

The word *sandhi* means 'union, junction'. The 'rules of *sandhi*' describe ways in which vowels and consonants combine or are modified in the formation of various types of Sanskrit words, chiefly compounds and derivatives. Sanskrit loanwords, and new formations in Hindi on Sanskrit words, normally show correct Sanskritic *sandhi*, and some acquaintance with the main *sandhis* will help the student in recognizing and using these words.

## 1. Vowel sandhi

(a)	Skt. $a, ā + a, ā > ā$
	Skt. $i, ī + i, ī > ī$
	Skt. $u, ū + u, ū > ū$

Skt. नियम <i>niyama</i> , rule	+ अनुसार <i>anusāra</i> , usage	: H. नियमानुसार <i>niya-mānusār</i> , according to rule
Skt. हिम <i>hima</i> , snow	+ आलय <i>ālaya</i> , abode	: H. हिमालय <i>himālay</i> , Himālaya
Skt. आत्मा <i>ātmā</i> , self	+ अभिमान <i>abhimāna</i> , pride	: H. आत्माभिमान <i>ātmā-bhimān</i> , self-respect; conceit
Skt. सुधि <i>sudhī</i> , understanding	+ इन्द्र <i>indra</i> , Indra	: Skt. H. सुधीन्द्र, सुधीन्द्र <sup>1</sup> <i>sudhīndra</i> (personal name)

(b)	Skt. $a, ā + i, ī > e$
	Skt. $a, ā + u, ū > o$
	Skt. $a, ā + r > ar$

Skt. गण <i>gaṇa</i> , multitude	+ ईश <i>īśa</i> , lord	: H. गणेश <i>gaṇeś</i> (name of a god; personal name)
Skt. महा <i>mahā</i> , great	+ ईश <i>īśa</i> , lord	: H. महेश <i>mahēś</i> (title of a god; personal name)

<sup>1</sup> For the alternative spellings see p. xxviii. Use of conjuncts in cases such as this in Hindi is common where the nasal precedes dentals or labials, less common where it precedes other plosives.

Skt. ग्राम <i>grāma</i> , village	+ उद्योग <i>udyoga</i> , endeavour	: H. ग्रामोद्योग <i>grāmodyog</i> , village industry
Skt. सीमा <i>sīmā</i> , border	+ उल्लङ्घन <i>ullaṅghana</i> , crossing	: H. सीमोल्लङ्घन <i>sīmollaṅghan</i> , violation of frontier
Skt. महा <i>mahā</i> , great	+ ऋषि <i>ṛṣi</i> , sage	: Skt. H. महर्षि <i>maharṣi</i> , great sage

(c)	Skt. $a, ā + e > ai$
	Skt. $a, ā + o > au$

Skt. सदा <i>sadā</i> , always	+ एव <i>eva</i> , just so	: H. सदैव <i>sadaiṣ</i> , always
-------------------------------	---------------------------	----------------------------------

*ai* and *au* are called *vrddhi* forms of *i* and *ī*, *u* and *ū* respectively.<sup>1</sup> The corresponding *vrddhi* form of *a* is *ā*, and of *ṛ*, *ār*. The occurrence of *vrddhi* forms in derivative words is noted in Supplement V.

(d)	Skt. $i, ī > y$ before vowels of different quality.
	Skt. $u, ū > v$ before vowels of different quality.

Skt. प्रति <i>prati</i> (distributive prefix)	+ एक <i>eka</i> , one	: H. प्रत्येक <i>pratyek</i> , each
Skt. इति <i>iti</i> , thus	+ आदि <i>ādī</i> , and so on	: Skt. H. इत्यादि <i>ityādi</i> , et cetera
Skt. अनु <i>anu</i> , according to	+ अय <i>aya</i> , going	: H. अन्वय <i>anvay</i> , union

## 2. Consonant sandhi

(a) Before vowels and voiced consonants other than nasals the voiceless plosives are voiced:

$k > g$
$c > j$
$t > d$
$t > d$
$p > b$

<sup>1</sup> That is, forms produced by the process of *vrddhi* 'increase'.

Skt. जगत् <i>jagat</i> , world	+ ईश <i>īśa</i> , lord	: H. जगदीश <i>jagdiś</i> (name)
Skt. भगवत् <i>bhagavat</i> , divine; divine being	+ गीता <i>gītā</i> , song	: Skt. H. भगवद्गीता <i>bhagavadgītā</i> , Song of the Lord
Skt. षट् <i>ṣaṭ</i> , six	+ ऋतु <i>ṛtu</i> , season	: Skt. H. षड्रतु <i>ṣaḍṛtu</i> , the six seasons

(b) Before nasal consonants all plosives become corresponding nasals:

$k, g > ṅ$
$c, j > ñ$
$t, d > n$
$t, d > n$
$p, b > m$

Skt. वाक् <i>vāk</i> , speech	+ मय <i>mayā</i> , composed of	: H. वाङ्मय <i>vāṅmay</i> , literature <sup>1</sup>
Skt. उद् <i>ud</i> , up	+ नति <i>nati</i> , bowing	: H. उन्नति <i>unnati</i> , progress

(c) *t* before voiced *j* or *l* becomes *j*, *l* respectively.

Skt. सत् <i>sat</i> , existent, good	+ जन <i>jana</i> , person	: H. सज्जन <i>sajjan</i> , good person
Skt. तत् <i>taṭ</i> , that	+ लीन <i>līna</i> , attached to	: H. तल्लीन <i>tallīn</i> , absorbed in that, engrossed

(d) *t* and *d* before voiceless *c* become *c*, and combine with following voiceless *t* as *ch*.

Skt. सत् <i>sat</i> , being	+ चित् <i>cit</i> , thought + आनन्द <i>ānanda</i> , bliss	: H. सच्चिदानन्द <i>saccidānand</i> , pure being, thought and bliss
Skt. उद् <i>ud</i> , up	+ स्वास <i>svāsa</i> , breath	: H. उच्छ्वास <i>ucchvās</i> , sigh

(e)  $d + h > ddh$

Skt. उद् <i>ud</i> , up	+ हरण <i>harana</i> , carrying	: H. उद्धरण <i>uddharan</i> , extract, citation
-------------------------	--------------------------------	---

<sup>1</sup> The word साहित्य *sāhitya* is much more common.

(f) Final *s* not preceded by *a* or *ā* becomes *r* before a vowel or voiced consonant.

Skt. दुस् <i>duṣ</i> , bad	+ देव <i>daiva</i> , fate	: H. दुर्देव <i>durdain</i> , evil fate
Skt. निस् <i>niṣ</i> , not, without	+ भय <i>bhaya</i> , fear	: H. निर्भय <i>nirbhay</i> , fearless
Skt. निस् <i>niṣ</i> , not, without	+ आमिष <i>āmiṣa</i> , meat	: H. निरामिष <i>nirāmiṣ</i> , vegetarian

(g) Before voiceless *k*, *kh*, *p* or *ph* it becomes *ś*; and before voiceless *c*, *ś*. Before voiceless *t* it remains in a few formations (but in Sanskrit the group often becomes *śt*).

Skt. निस् <i>niṣ</i> , not, without	+ फल <i>phala</i> , fruit	: H. निष्फल <i>niṣphal</i> , fruitless
Skt. दुस् <i>duṣ</i> , bad, difficult	+ कृ <i>kr</i> (> <i>kara</i> ), do	: H. दुष्कर <i>duṣkar</i> , hard to accomplish
Skt. दुस् <i>duṣ</i> , bad, difficult	+ चिन्ता <i>ciñtā</i> , thought	: H. दुश्चिन्ता <i>duṣciñtā</i> , wicked thought
Skt. निस् <i>niṣ</i> , not, without	+ तन्द्रा <i>tandrā</i> , idleness	: H. निस्तन्द्र <i>nistandra</i> , unweariness

(h) Final *-as* becomes *-o* before a voiced consonant.

Skt. मनस् <i>manas</i> , mind	+ नीत <i>nīta</i> , led	: H. मनोनीत <i>manovīt</i> , preferred
Skt. अधस् <i>adhas</i> , down	+ मुख <i>mukh</i> , face	: H. अधोमुख <i>adhomukh</i> , facing down

(i) Final *-ar* or *-as* before voiceless *k*, *kh*, *p* or *ph* becomes *aḥ*; before voiceless *c*, *aś*; and before voiceless *t*, *aś*.

Skt. अन्तर <i>antar</i> , within	+ पुर <i>puṛa</i> , stronghold	: H. अंतःपुर <i>antaḥpur</i> , women's quarters
Skt. प्रातर <i>prātar</i> , early	+ काल <i>kāla</i> , time	: H. प्रातःकाल <i>prātaḥkāla</i> , morning
Skt. पुनर् <i>punar</i> , again	+ च् <i>ca</i> , and	: H. पुनश्च <i>punaśca</i> , PS. (postscript)
Skt. अन्तर <i>antar</i> , within	+ तल <i>tala</i> , surface, level	: H. अंतस्तल <i>antastal</i> , heart

Skt. अधस् <i>adhas</i> , down	+ पतन <i>patana</i> , falling	: H. अधःपतन <i>adhahpatan</i> , decline
Skt. अधस् <i>adhas</i> , down	+ तल <i>tala</i> , surface, level	: H. अधस्तल <i>adhastal</i> , lower room, level.

(j) Final *m* (e.g. in the prefix *sam* 'together with') before a plosive becomes the corresponding nasal.

संकोच	H. <i>sañhoc</i> , embarrassment
संज्ञय	H. <i>sañjay</i> (name)
संदेश	H. <i>sandēś</i> , message
संप्रदाय	H. <i>saṃpradāy</i> , community

Before other consonants it is pronounced variously, as indicated on p. xxviii, and always written as *anusvāra*.

संयोग	H. <i>saṃyog</i> , chance
संस्था	H. <i>saṃsthā</i> , organization

(k) Dental *n* becomes retroflex *ṇ* under the influence of a preceding retroflex *ṣ*, *ṣ*, or *r* in most cases where a palatal, retroflex or dental consonant (excluding *y*) does not intervene. This principle accounts for various spellings with *ṇ* which tend to be overlooked by learners.

(नागरी) प्रचारिणी (सभा) (*nāgarī*) *pracārīṇī* (*sabhā*), Society for the Propagation of Nāgarī

रामायण H. *rāmāyaṇ*, name of a Sanskrit poem

रमणी Skt. H. *ramaṇī*, delightful lady

## FORMATION OF WORDS

Many words, chiefly nouns and adjectives, are formed by prefixation and suffixation. Some are made by modification of the form of roots or stems, or by the use of verb stems as different parts of speech.

## 1. Prefixation

Words formed by prefixation are mainly Sanskrit loanwords or later formations on Sanskrit models. The sense of the loanwords sometimes differs from their Sanskrit sense. Their pronunciation is very frequently somewhat Sanskritised, with 'inherent' vowels, which would be silent in words of Hindi origin of the same form, tending to be pronounced to a variable degree and with *s* and *n* realised as retroflexes. There are a few Persian, Arabic, and Hindi prefixes. The commonest prefixes are:

- a-*, *an-*, not, without (Skt. and H.)  
 अपरिचित *aparicit*, unacquainted  
 अनादर *anādar*, disrespect  
 अनेक *anek*, different (not one)  
 अनदेखा *andekhā*, unseen  
 अलग *alag*, separate, different

The form *an-* is used with Sanskrit words beginning with vowels only, but is quite common with Hindi words beginning with consonants also.

- ati-*, exceedingly (Skt.)  
 अतिशीर्ष *atikṣīṣ*, very slight, weak

- adhas-*, down (Skt.)  
 अधःपतन *adhahpātan*, decline

- antar-*, within; internal (Skt.)  
 अंतःकरण *antahkaraṇ*, spirit  
 अंतर्राष्ट्रीय *antarrāṣṭriy*, international<sup>1</sup>  
 अंतर्देशीय *antardeśīy*, inland (adj.)

<sup>1</sup> The spelling अंतरराष्ट्रीय *antarrāṣṭriy* is also found. (Neither of these spellings shows correct Sanskrit sandhi, which would produce a form *antārāṣṭriy*, unused in Hindi.)

- adhi-*, additional; above (Skt.)  
 अधिकार *adhikār*, authority

- anu-*, according to (Skt.)  
 के अनुसार *ke anusār*, according to  
 अनुवाद *anuvād*, translation

- apa-*, away, back; down (Skt.)  
 अपशब्द *apashabd*, term of abuse

- abhi-*, towards; particular (Skt.)  
 अभियोग *abhiyog*, accusation

- ava-*, away; down (Skt.)  
 अवनति *avanati*, decline

- ā-*, to, towards; up to (Skt.)  
 आरक्षा *ārakṣā*, security  
 आगमन *āgaman*, arrival

- ud-*, upwards (Skt.)  
 उत्पादन *utpādan*, produce  
 उद्भव *udbhav*, origin  
 उन्नति *unnati*, progress

- upa-*, subsidiary (Skt.)  
 उपकुलपति *upakulpati*, vice-chancellor  
 उपभाषा *upabhāṣā*, dialect

- ku-* bad; deficient (Skt. and H.)  
 कुपुत्र *kuputr*, bad son  
 कुचाली *kucālī*, of bad conduct

- du-*, bad; difficult (Skt.)  
 दुश्चिन्ता *duścintā*, wicked thought  
 दुर्दैव *durdaiv*, ill fate  
 दुष्कर *duṣkar*, hard to accomplish

*nis-*, without; away (Skt.)

निस्संकोच *nissankoc*, without constraint

निष्पाप *niṣpāp*, sinless

निश्चल *niṣcal*, motionless

निष्कासन *niṣkāsan*, exile

*para-*, other (Skt.)

परतंत्र *partantra*, subjugated

*pari-*, around; abundantly (Skt.)

परिधि *paridhi*, circle

परिचित *paricit*, acquainted

परिपूर्ण *paripūrṇ*, replete

*punar-*, again (Skt.)

पुनर्जागरण *punarjāgarāṇ*, renaissance

*pra-*, forward; exceedingly (Skt.)

प्रगति *pragati*, progress

प्रबंध *prabandh*, arrangement

प्रोत्साहन *protsāhan*, encouragement

प्रखर *prakhar*, very hard

*prati-*, against; every; per (Skt.)

क प्रतिफल *ke pratikūl*, contrary to

प्रतिदिन *pratidin*, every day

प्रतिशत *pratiśat*, per cent

प्रतीक्षा *pratikṣā*, expectation; waiting

*vi-*, apart; different, opposite; particular (Skt.)

विलग *vilag*, disconnected

विदेश *videsh*, abroad, foreign lands

विमल *vimal*, without stain, pure

विशुद्ध *viśuddh*, pure, very pure

विनीत *vinīt*, humble, submissive

*sa-*, with, possessing (Skt.)

सपरिवार *saparivār*, with one's family

सहृदयता *sahṛdayatā*, good-heartedness, friendliness

*sam-*, together with; complete(ly) (Skt.)

संस्था *samsṭhā*, organisation

संयोग *samyog*, chance

समाप्त *samāpt*, finished

संपूर्ण *sampūrṇ*, complete

*sama-*, same, equal (Skt.)

समतल *samtal*, level

समसामयिक *samsāmayik*, contemporary<sup>1</sup>

*saha-*, together with (Skt.)

सहकार्यकर्ता *sahkāryakartā*, colleague

सहानुभूति *sahānubhūti*, sympathy, fellow-feeling

सहचर्य *sahcarya*, life together, married life

*su-*, good; easy (Skt. and H.)

सुपुत्र *suputr*, good son

सुगम *sugam*, accessible; easy

सुदौल *sudaul*, well-built (physically)

*sva-* one's own (Skt.)

स्वदेश *svades*, one's own country

स्वभाव *svabhāv*, nature, temperament

*gair-*, without; against (Ar.)

गैरहाज़िर *gairhāzīr*, absent

*uā-*, without, non- (P.)

नाक़ाबिल *nāqābil*, incapable

नादान *uādān*, ignorant

*fī*, per (Ar.)

फ़ी सदो *fī sadī*, per cent

*be-*, without (P.)

बेकार *bekār*, unemployed; pointless

<sup>1</sup> -ā- in this form is explained on p. 195.



*lā-*, without (Ar.)

लाजवाब *lājavāb*, speechless, without an answer

लापरवाही *lāparvāhī*, carelessness

लापता *lāpatā*, of unknown whereabouts<sup>1</sup>

## 2. Suffixation

Words formed by suffixation include both words of Hindi origin and loan-words from Sanskrit, Persian, and Arabic.

(a) Common Hindi suffixes which form nouns and adjectives from verb or nominal stems (sometimes with vowel or consonant modification) are:

Forming nouns:

- āī (f.) पढ़ाई *pañhāī*, reading, study
- लंबाई *lambāī*, length
- āv (m.) घेराव *gherāv*, encirclement, siege
- āvā (m.) दिखावा *dikhāvā*, evidence, display
- ān (m. f.) उड़ान *uḍān*, flight
- āvāṭ (f.) रुकावट *rukāvāṭ*, obstacle (cf. रोकना *roknā*)
- āhaṭ (f.) घबराहट *ghabarāhaṭ*, confusion
- कड़वाहट *karvāhaṭ*, bitterness
- ī (m. f.) फेरी *phērī*, circuit, ambit
- बोली *bolī*, speech, language
- तेली *telī*, oil seller
- an (m. f.) सूजन *sūjan*, swelling
- लगन *lagan*, affection; desire
- चलन *calan*, motion, movement; behaviour
- iyā (m. f.) डाकिया *ḍākiyā*, postman<sup>2</sup>
- डिब्बिया *ḍibbiyā*, small box<sup>2</sup> (cf. डिब्बा *ḍibbā*)
- लुटिया *luṭiyā*, small brass pot (cf. लोटा *lotā*)
- erā (m.) सँपेरा *saṃperā*, snake-charmer (cf. साँप *sāṃp*)
- pan (m.) बचपन *bacpan*, childhood (cf. बच्चा *baccā*)
- लड़कपन *laṛakpan*, boyhood (cf. लड़का *laṛkā*)
- सीधापन *sīdhāpan*, simplicity<sup>3</sup>
- pā (m.) बुढ़ापा *būṛhāpā*, old age (cf. बूढ़ा *būṛhā*)

<sup>1</sup> Invariable (since based on the noun पता *patā*).

<sup>2</sup> See p. 2.

<sup>3</sup> Oblique case सीधेपन *sīdhepan*; similarly all derivatives of adjectives formed with this suffix.

Forming adjectives:

- akkar भुलक्कड़ *bhulakkar*, forgetful (c.f. भूलना *bhūlnā*)
- āī उपजाऊ *upjāū*, fertile
- फिसलाऊ *phislāū*, slippery
- ī कुचाली *kucālī*, of bad conduct
- iyā कलकतिया *kalkatiyā*, belonging to Calcutta<sup>1</sup> (cf. कलकत्ता *kalkattā*)
- बढ़िया *barhiyā*, good, nice
- ihī नशीला *naśilā*, intoxicating (cf. नशा *naśā*)
- रसीला *rasilā*, juicy
- erā बहुतेरा *bahuterā*, many, much, frequent

(b) Common Sanskrit suffixes in loanwords or later formations (other than some already noted) are:

-ak (often agentive)

- लेखक *lekhaḥ*, writer
- अध्यापक *adhyāpak*, teacher
- बहुसंख्यक *bahusankhyak*, numerous

-ik (forms adjectives and agentive nouns from nouns, with *vyddhi* of root or initial vowel)

- धार्मिक *dhārmik*, religious (cf. धर्म *dharm*)
- दैनिक *dainik*, daily (cf. दिन *din*)
- औद्योगिक *audyogik*, industrial (cf. उद्योग *udyog*)
- साम्प्रदायिक *sāmpradāyik*, communal (cf. संप्रदाय *saṃpradāy*)
- प्रादेशिक *prādesik*, concerning a state (cf. प्रदेश *pradeś*)
- सांस्कृतिक *sāṃskṛtik*, cultural (cf. संस्कृति *saṃskṛti*)<sup>2</sup>
- आंशिक *āṃśik*, partial (cf. अंश *aṃś*)<sup>2</sup>
- सैनिक *sainik*, military; soldier (cf. सेना *senā*)
- (सम)सामयिक *(sam)sāmayik*, (con)temporary (cf. समय *samay*)

<sup>1</sup> Unchanged in feminine concord.

<sup>2</sup> Where the vowel *a* preceding a nasal consonant + a non-plosive consonant is lengthened in derivative words (or in *sandhi*) it is nasalized, usually with loss of the nasal consonant; but the spelling is with *anusvāra* not *candrabindu*. Cf. p. xxviii.

An example of such an *a* lengthened and nasalized in *sandhi* is seen in the word अधिकांश *adhikāṃś* 'majority, greater part'.

-it (forms past participial adjectives)  
 सुरक्षित *surakṣit*, protected, preserved  
 परिचित *paricit*, acquainted  
 क्रोधित *krodhit*, angry, made angry

-ī (forms nouns and adjectives)  
 अधिकारी *adhikārī*, official, person in authority  
 अभिमानी *abhimānī*, proud person  
 सुखी *sukhī*, happy

-hār (forms agentive nouns)  
 साहित्यकार *sāhityakār*, writer, literary man

-taṇya (forms verbal nouns)  
 कर्तव्य *kartavya*, duty (that which is to be done)

-tva (forms abstract nouns from nouns and adjectives)  
 पुरुषत्व *puruṣatva*, manliness  
 उत्तरदायित्व *uttardāyitva*, responsibility

-pūrvak (forms adverbs of manner from nouns)  
 आदरपूर्वक *ādarpūrvak*, respectfully

-may (forms adjectives of the sense 'consisting of . . .')  
 मधुमय *madhumay*, sweet, mellifluous

-mān (forms adjectives from nouns, chiefly, of the sense 'possessed of . . .')<sup>1</sup>  
 दीप्तिमान् *dīptimān*, illuminated, brilliant  
 श्रीमान् *śrīmān*, sir (in address)<sup>2</sup>

-ya (forms adjectives expressing potentiality from verbal roots; also abstract nouns from nouns or adjectives, with *vrddhi* of root or initial vowel)  
 सह्य *sahya*, tolerable  
 प्राप्य *prāpya*, obtainable, accessible  
 पांडित्य *pāṇḍitya*, learning  
 सौभाग्य *saubhāgya*, good fortune  
 धैर्य *dhairya*, steadfastness

<sup>1</sup> For feminines of these forms see Supplement I, p. 168.

<sup>2</sup> The Sanskrit vocative form श्रीमान् *śrīman* is also heard in very formal style.

-vān (forms adjectives and nouns from nouns, chiefly, of the sense 'possessed of . . .')<sup>1</sup>

कलावान् *kalāvān*, artistic  
 विद्वान् *vidvān*, learned, a scholar

(c) The commonest Arabic and Persian suffixes are:

-at (in feminine abstract nouns)  
 तबीयत *tabiyat*, state of health

-ānā (forms adjectives, normally invariable, and nouns from nouns)  
 मरदाना *marḍānā*, male  
 जनाना *zanānā*, female  
 रोजाना *rozānā*, daily  
 राजपुतानी *rājputānī*, Rajput woman

-īś (forms feminine abstract nouns)  
 सिफारिश *siḥārīś*, recommendation  
 गुंजाइश *gunjāīś*, room, space, scope

-ī (forms abstract nouns and adjectives from nouns and adjectives)  
 दोस्ती *doṣṭī*, friendship, friendliness  
 खुशी *khushī*, happiness  
 ज़िंदगी *zindagī*, life  
 हिंदी *hindī*, Hindi (language of Hind)  
 क़ानूनी *qānūnī*, legal

-dār (forms nouns and adjectives from nouns)  
 दुकानदार *dukāndār*, shopkeeper  
 समझदार *samajhdār*, intelligent  
 दाँतदार *dāntdār*, toothed, clogged

-īn (forms adjectives from nouns)  
 शौकीन *shaukīn*, desirous, eager; cultivated

### 3. Other types of word formation

(a) From Hindi verb stems, by using these as nouns; monosyllabic stems

<sup>1</sup> For feminines of these forms see Supplement I, p. 168. The second example is based on a verbal root and does not show a feminine in -वती *-vatī*.

with short vowels usually show vowel lengthening or modification. Most verbal nouns of this type are feminine.

मार *mār*, beating; killing

लूट *lūt*, looting

समझ *samajh*, understanding, comprehension

चाल *cāl*, action, activity; deportment

बाढ़ *bāḥ*, flood

मेल *mel*, union; harmony

मेल-जोल *mel-jol*, association; familiarity

(b) In Sanskrit loanwords; *vyddhi* derivatives without suffixation.

शैव *śaiv*, devotee of Śiva

वैष्णव *vaiṣṇav*, devotee of Viṣṇu<sup>1</sup>

बौद्ध *bauddh*, devotee of the Buddha

स्मार्त *smārta*, follower of *smṛti* doctrine<sup>1</sup>

(c) In Arabic loanwords through Persian; related forms may show a variety of vowel and consonant alternations, e.g. as in

खबर *khabar*, news : अखबार *akhbār*, newspaper

तकलीफ *taklīf*, trouble : तकल्लुफ *takalluf*, formality

असर *asar*, effect : आसार *āsār*, signs, portents

These alternations are of little importance in themselves for the student of Hindi. Words derived in this way are best learned individually as they occur.

<sup>1</sup> Words ending in -u or -i show modification of these vowels as well as *vyddhi* of their root vowel.

## VI

### COMPOUNDING OF WORDS

Compounding is a very common device in Hindi; instances have already been noted (pp. 63, 90, 185 ff.). Most compounds give little difficulty in interpretation, but the student may find a brief outline of the chief types of compound which occur useful.

#### 1. Co-ordinative compounds

Co-ordinative compounds are those implying a link, और *aur* 'and', or occasionally या *yā* 'or', between the members of the compound. These may be various parts of speech, and either of Hindi origin words or loanwords. Co-ordinative compounds are usually hyphenated.

बाप-बेटा *bāp-beṭā*, father and son

बाप-दादा *bāp-dādā*, forefathers<sup>1</sup>

मित्र-शत्रु *mitr-śatru*, friends and enemies

छोटे-बड़े *choṭe-baṛe*, small and great

(a) Second members of some compounds are of identical or similar sense to first members. Such compounds usually have some degree of affective force, however slight.

बाल-बच्चे *bāl-bacce*, children

भरा-पूरा *bharā-pūrā*, well-filled, solid, bulky

मुग्ध-चकित *mugdh-chakīṭ*, fascinated, fond (artless and astonished)

अच्छा-खासा *acchā-khāsā*, good, fine (cf. P. loanword खासा *khāsā* 'special')

(b) Verb compounds are for the most part of participial, absolutive or infinitive forms. Some are of stem forms and have the force of nouns.

लोग सड़क में आते-जाते हैं । *log saṛak meth āte-jāte hain*, People come and go in the street.

मैंने यह जान-बूझकर किया । *mainne yah jān-būjhkar kiyā*, I did this on purpose (with knowledge and understanding).<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> In this compound दादा *dādā* is often inflected as a masculine in final -ā, and not as दिन *din*; cf. p. 1.

<sup>2</sup> For the form of the absolutive see p. 90, n. 2 (where verb compounds are referred to as 'verb pairs', to avoid any later confusion with compound verbs).

तुम लोगों का लड़ना-झगड़ना मुझे अच्छा नहीं लगता । *tum logon kā laṛnā-jhagarnā mujhe acchā nahīn lagtā*, I don't like the way you people fight and quarrel.

रोक-टोक *rok-tok*, checking, interference

मार-काट *mār-kāṭ*, slaughter

(c) Two special categories of verb compounds are (i) those of perfective participles of verbs of related stem, which emphasise thoroughness of action, and (ii) those of masculine and feminine perfective participles, usually of the same verb, which emphasise reciprocity or intensity of action. These have the force of nouns and are of feminine gender.

दूल्हा देखना क्या है? मेरा देखा-दिखाया है *dūlhā dekhnā kyā hai? merā dekhā-dikhāyā hai*, What's the point of (going) to see the bridegroom? I've already seen him (and am satisfied).

बने-बनाए जूते *banē-bunāe jūte*, ready-made shoes

मारा-मारी *mārā-māri*, fight, brawl

(मेरे) देखा-देखी *(mere) dekhā-dekhī*, (in) imitation (of me)<sup>1</sup>

खींचा-तानी *khīncā-tānī*, competition; tension

## 2. Determinative compounds

In these the sense of the first member of the compound defines that of the second in some way.<sup>2</sup> Both words of Hindi origin and loanwords occur; the former sometimes show vowel or consonant modification. Most of these compounds may be unhyphenated, though practice varies. Compounds whose second member is a Hindi verbal form are usually hyphenated.

देवनगरवासी *devnagarvāsī*, an inhabitant of Devnagar

नदीतट *nadītaṭ*, river-bank

मनमोहक *manmohak*, heart-captivating

जी-तोड़ *jī-tor*, soul-destroying

शरात-भरा *śarāt-bharā*, filled with wickedness, naughtiness

नीलकंठ *nīlkaṇṭh*, blue jay (blue-throat)

परमप्रिय *parampriy*, supremely dear

यथासंभव *yathāsambhav*, as far, much, as possible

<sup>1</sup> With the use here of मेरे *mere* not in concord cf. the use of के *ke* in certain postpositional expressions based on feminine nouns, noted on p. 35.

<sup>2</sup> A sub-classification of determinative compounds is made for Sanskrit grammar, but concerns the student of Hindi only marginally, and is therefore not given here.

कठपुतली *kathputlī*, puppet (wooden doll; cf. काठ *kāṭh*, m. 'wood')

आँखों-देखा *āṁkham-dekhā*, seen with one's own eyes

लकड़बग्घा *laharbagghā*, hyena (cf. बाघ *bāgh*, m. 'tiger; lion')

घुड़सवार *ghuṛsavār*, horse-rider (cf. घोड़ा *ghoṛā*)

भिक्षमंगा *bhikhamangā*, beggar (cf. भीख *bhīkh*, f. 'alms'; माँगना *māṅgnā*, 'request')

## 3. Possessive compounds

The second member of these is characteristically a noun, and the compounds are adjectives qualifying nouns or pronouns. Though common in Sanskrit they are relatively rare in Hindi, even in the more Sanskritised language; possessives with prefixes as first member are the only type which is at all frequent. Some possessives show a final adjectival suffix. These compounds are normally unhyphenated.

हँसमुख *haṁsmukh*, cheerful, jolly

प्रगतिशील *pragatiśīl*, progressive, of progressive character

पूर्णकाम *pūrṇkām*, of fulfilled desire

निस्तंद *nistandra*, unwearying<sup>1</sup>

दुमंजिला *dumanzilā*, two-storeyed (cf. मंजिल *manzil*, f. 'storey')

## 4. Quasi-compounds

Many compounds exist in informal usage whose second member is rare, or used very figuratively, or meaningless independently. These usually have some degree of affective force. Second members are usually based on rhyming or echoing syllables. Some examples are:

बातचीत *bātcīṭ*, conversation

भीड़-भाड़ *bhīṛ-bhār*, crowd, throng

भीड़-भन्बर *bhīṛ-bhabbar*, crowd, throng

ठीक-ठाक *thīk-thāk*, fine (answering the question 'how are you?')

शोर-शराबा *śor-śarābā*, noise and confusion

चाय-चाय *cāy-vāy*, tea, etc. (tea and something to eat)

गड़बड़-गड़बड़ *garbar-garbar*, confusion

In some cases the first element of the compound is the meaningless one.

(के) आस-पास *(ke) ās-pās*, near, round about; nearby

<sup>1</sup> See p. 188.

## READING PASSAGES

वाणी, जिसे मैं केवल<sup>1</sup> बारह-तेरह वरस<sup>2</sup> की समझता था, वास्तव में<sup>3</sup> पन्द्रह-सोलह साल की लड़की थी। छोटे क़द<sup>4</sup> की पतली,<sup>5</sup> दुबली,<sup>6</sup> बीमार-बीमार-सी! कवि अख़तर शेरानी ने जब लिखा था—'मुझे तो कुछ इन्हें बीमार कलियों से<sup>7</sup> मुहब्बत<sup>8</sup> है'—तो शायद उसी जैसी<sup>9</sup> किसी लड़की को 'बीमार कली' की संज्ञा<sup>10</sup> दी होगी। जब पहले दिन मैं देवनगर आया था, और अपने पिता का आदेश<sup>11</sup> पालने<sup>12</sup> की उत्सुकता<sup>13</sup> में वाणी कुदकती<sup>14</sup> हुई—सी अपनी छोटी बहन के साथ दरवाज़े में आ खड़ी हुई थी,<sup>15</sup> तो मैंने उसकी ओर ध्यान<sup>16</sup> भी न दिया था। वही चाय लायी थी, लेकिन उसमें कोई भी ऐसा आकर्षण<sup>17</sup> न था कि देवा जी की बातें सुनते या उन्हें अपनी बातें सुनाते समय मेरा ध्यान उसकी ओर चला जाता। इसलिए यह ठीक ही था कि जब मैं तीरथराम की प्रेयसी<sup>18</sup> की तलाश में देवनगर के घर-घर घूमा तो वाणी की ओर मेरा ध्यान भी नहीं गया। लेकिन उग शाम के बाद वह नन्हीं<sup>19</sup> बीमार-सी कली अचानक मेरा ध्यान खींचने लगी। डाईनिंग हाल में खाना मैं पहले भी खाता था और कई बार उस पात<sup>20</sup> में भी खाता था, जिसमें देवा जी और उनका परिवार रहता<sup>21</sup>। लेकिन उस घटना के बाद दूसरे दिन जब मैं दोपहर का खाना खाने गया तो अचानक मेरी आँखें अगली मेज़ों की ओर उठ गयीं, जहाँ प्रायः<sup>22</sup> देवा जी आकर बैठते थे। देवा जी नहीं थे, न<sup>23</sup> उनकी पत्नी थी—शायद वे पहली पात में खाना खा गये थे—लेकिन दूसरे बच्चों में घिरी वाणी बड़ी थी। मैंने निगाह<sup>24</sup> उठायी तो मौन<sup>25</sup> रूप से उसे अपनी ओर तक्ते<sup>26</sup> पाया। नज़र मिलते ही<sup>27</sup> उसने आँखें झुका लीं, लेकिन जब मैंने फिर उसकी ओर देखा तो मेरी निगाहें फिर उससे जा मिलीं<sup>28</sup>।

<sup>1</sup> only

<sup>2</sup> year (m.)

<sup>3</sup> in reality, in fact

<sup>4</sup> stature (m.)

<sup>5</sup> thin

<sup>6</sup> thin, weak

<sup>7</sup> कली *kali*, f., bud; बीमार कली *bimār kali*, ailing, frail young thing

<sup>8</sup> †love (f.)

<sup>9</sup> See p. 84.

<sup>10</sup> title, appellation; noun (f.)

<sup>11</sup> direction, command (m.)

<sup>12</sup> maintain, bring up; carry out

<sup>13</sup> eagerness (f.)

<sup>14</sup> llop, skip, frolic

<sup>15</sup> came and stood; आ *ā*, stem absolutive

<sup>16</sup> attention (m.)

<sup>17</sup> attraction; attractiveness, charm

<sup>18</sup> beloved (f.)

<sup>19</sup> नन्हीं *nanhām*, tiny

<sup>20</sup> row (f.); Hindi form corresponding to Skt. loanword पंक्ति *pankti*.

<sup>21</sup> See p. 170.

<sup>22</sup> usually

<sup>23</sup> nor

<sup>24</sup> †glance (f.)

<sup>25</sup> \*silent; silence (m.)

<sup>26</sup> look, gaze

<sup>27</sup> See p. 144.

<sup>28</sup> See p. 178.

खाना खाने के बाद थाली<sup>1</sup> लेकर जब मैं बाहर निकला तो कुछ दस तरह हुआ<sup>2</sup> कि वाणी ओर मैं लगभग एक साथ<sup>3</sup> नल<sup>4</sup> पर पहुँचें। मैं थाली रखकर हमाम की टोंटी<sup>5</sup> के नीचे हाथ धोने जा ही रहा था कि वाणी थाली रखकर आ गयी। मैं पीछे हट गया कि वह पहले हाथ धो ले। तभी मेरी नज़र सामने डबोड़ी<sup>6</sup> की ओर चली गयी। तीरथराम उसी तरह<sup>7</sup> हाथ बाल<sup>8</sup> में दवाये<sup>9</sup> घूम रहा था। उसकी निगाह हमारी ओर थी, पर मुझे देखते ही वह सिर झुकाकर मुड़<sup>10</sup> गया।

वड़े मीठे<sup>11</sup> स्वर<sup>12</sup> में 'थैंक यू' कहते हुए वाणी हाथ धोने लगी। साबुन<sup>13</sup> भलते<sup>14</sup> ओर हाथ धोते हुए उसने अपनी चंचल<sup>15</sup> पर गहरी<sup>16</sup> दृष्टि मुझपर डाली और जरा-सा<sup>17</sup> मुस्कराते<sup>18</sup> हुए बोली—'आप उस दिन गाते ही बाहर क्यों चले गये थे?' हाथ धोकर वह पीछे हट गयी और रूमाल<sup>19</sup> से उन्हें पोछने<sup>20</sup> लगी। मैं हाथ धोने लगा। इस बीच<sup>21</sup> लगातार<sup>22</sup> मैं उसके प्रश्न का उत्तर सोचता रहा।

'बताइए न संगीत जी?' उसने फिर आग्रह<sup>23</sup> के साथ कहा।

शाम का वक्त था। नहर<sup>1</sup> पर पहुँचा तो पश्चिम में सूरज डूब<sup>2</sup> रहा था। सदी सरे-शाम ही<sup>3</sup> उतर आयी थी और मैं ओवरकोट पहने था। तभी पश्चिम की ओर आँखें उठाते ही

<sup>1</sup> flat metal tray for carrying food (f.)

<sup>2</sup> it so happened that

<sup>3</sup> लगभग एक साथ *lagbhag ek sāth*, just about together

<sup>4</sup> pipe, conduit (m.)

<sup>5</sup> water-pot with spout (for washing hands); हमाम, हमाम *ham(m)ām*, m., place

for bathing, washing

<sup>6</sup> threshold, doorway (f.)

<sup>7</sup> in the same way (as before)

<sup>8</sup> armpit, side (f.)

<sup>9</sup> press (trans.)

<sup>10</sup> turn, turn away (intr.)

<sup>11</sup> sweet; pleasant

<sup>12</sup> voice (m.)

<sup>13</sup> soap (m.)

<sup>14</sup> rub, rub on (trans.)

<sup>15</sup> mobile, restless

<sup>16</sup> deep; grave

<sup>17</sup> slightly; जरा *jarā* (invariable adj.) just, (just) a little

<sup>18</sup> smile

<sup>19</sup> handkerchief (m.)

<sup>20</sup> wipe

<sup>21</sup> in the meantime

<sup>22</sup> continuously

<sup>23</sup> zeal, eagerness (m.); see p. 181

<sup>1</sup> canal (m.)

<sup>2</sup> sink, set

<sup>3</sup> with the fall of evening; an expression of specifically Urdu character.

दिल की धड़कन<sup>4</sup> जैसे थम<sup>5</sup> गयी। कितना अकथ<sup>6</sup>, कितना सुन्दर दृश्य<sup>7</sup> था! दूर, बहुत दूर खजूर<sup>8</sup> के एकाकी<sup>9</sup> पेड़ के पीछे, जो उस निजन<sup>10</sup> के सुनेपन<sup>11</sup> को चुनौती<sup>12</sup> देता हुआ सा खड़ा था, सूरज डूब रहा था। बड़ा-बड़ा और पीला-पीला<sup>13</sup> पेड़ का ऊपर का सिरा<sup>14</sup> ऐसे लग रहा था<sup>15</sup> जैसे उस पीली कुंदनी<sup>16</sup> थाली पर अंकित<sup>17</sup> हो। नहर के पानी पर सूरज का बिम्ब<sup>18</sup>, ऊपर आकाश के हलके<sup>19</sup> श्वेत<sup>20</sup> बादलों पर उसका रंग, उस रंग से रंजित<sup>21</sup> दूर तक फैली नहर की पटरी<sup>22</sup> और अकेला<sup>23</sup> में... कुछ दूर चलकर बैठ गया और अचानक गाने लगा। वही अपना चिर-परिचित गीत नहीं, संहल<sup>24</sup> के मधुमय<sup>25</sup> स्वर में सुना<sup>26</sup> वह कृष्ण के प्रेम में पागल<sup>27</sup> गोपी<sup>28</sup> का गीत, जो ज़रूर ही अलहड़<sup>29</sup> रही होगी, छोटी उम्र<sup>30</sup> की होगी। गीत विरह<sup>31</sup> का था। पर जाने क्यों मुझे करुण<sup>32</sup> नहीं लगा। मन की उमंग<sup>33</sup> में जैसे<sup>34</sup> उस प्राकृतिक<sup>35</sup> सौन्दर्य और सुनसान<sup>36</sup> को भरता हुआ<sup>37</sup> मैं गा उठा—

<sup>4</sup> beating, thumping (f.)

<sup>5</sup> be checked, stopped

<sup>6</sup> indescribable; cf. Sanskrit अकथ्य *akathya*.

<sup>7</sup> sight (m.)

<sup>8</sup> date (palm) (m.f.)

<sup>9</sup> solitary (invariable adj.)

<sup>10</sup> deserted, unpopulated spot (m.); desolate

<sup>11</sup> emptiness (m.)

<sup>12</sup> challenge (f.)

<sup>13</sup> yellow

<sup>14</sup> edge; see Supplement III, p. 178.

<sup>15</sup> seemed

<sup>16</sup> made of fine gold (कुंदन *kundan*, m.)

<sup>17</sup> drawn, traced

<sup>18</sup> reflection; halo (m.)

<sup>19</sup> light

<sup>20</sup> white; बादल *bādal*, m., cloud

<sup>21</sup> colour (m.)

<sup>22</sup> coloured

<sup>23</sup> surface (f.) (often of road or path)

<sup>24</sup> alone, single

<sup>25</sup> not that old song of mine; अपना *apna* depends on मैं *main* understood from

the previous sentence; चिर-परिचित गीत *\*cir-paricit git*, m., song with which one is long acquainted, long-known song.

<sup>26</sup> sweet (मधु *madhu*, m., honey); संहल *sahgal*, a personal name

<sup>27</sup> non-finite participle, qualifying गीत *git*

<sup>28</sup> mad, crazy

<sup>29</sup> herdgirl; the herdgirls of Braj were enamoured of Krishna (*Kṛṣṇ*).

<sup>30</sup> gay

<sup>31</sup> rage (f.)

<sup>32</sup> separation (of lovers) (m.)

<sup>33</sup> sad, piteous

<sup>34</sup> enthusiasm; zeal; delight (f.)

<sup>35</sup> See p. 84.

<sup>36</sup> natural, belonging to nature (प्रकृति *prakṛti*); सौन्दर्य *saundarya*, beauty

<sup>37</sup> emptiness, loneliness, solitude (m.); lonely, deserted <sup>38</sup> fill, pour in

सुनो सुनो रे कृष्ण काला<sup>38</sup>

सुनो सुनो रे कृष्ण काला

तभी कहीं निकट<sup>40</sup> ठहाके<sup>41</sup> की आवाज़ आयी—सुने<sup>42</sup> मैं सहसा बड़ उठने वाली घंटियों सरीखी युवा-लड़कियों के ठहाके की आवाज़। मैं चौंक उठा। पटरी पर बाणी, श्यामा और मधु न जाने किस बात पर हँसती-हँसती दोहरी होती<sup>43</sup> जा रही थी। साथ उनके अठारह-बीस वर्ष का एक यवक<sup>44</sup> था।

उन्हें गुजरने<sup>45</sup> के लिए राह<sup>46</sup> देने को मैं एक ओर हट गया। पर चारों की टोली<sup>47</sup> मेरे पास आकर रुक गयी।

“दिलजीत, यह है संगीत जी, बड़ा ही अच्छा गाते हैं<sup>48</sup>।” अपनी बड़ी-बड़ी आँखों को फैलाते<sup>49</sup> और शब्दों के साथ भ्रमते हुए बाणी ने अपने साथी<sup>50</sup> यवक को मेरा परिचय दिया और फिर मुझसे बोली—“यह है दिलजीत, मेरा भाई, गवर्नमेण्ट कालेज में पढ़ता है, छुट्टियों में<sup>51</sup> आया है।”

यह मान<sup>1</sup> लेने में मुझे कुछ भी संकोच नहीं कि उन चार महीनों में देवनगर से मुझे बेहद<sup>2</sup> प्यार<sup>3</sup> हो गया था। वहाँ बाणी थी और उसकी मुग्ध-चकित<sup>4</sup> आँखों में मेरे लिए अपार<sup>5</sup> स्नेह<sup>6</sup> और सहानुभूति<sup>7</sup> थी, या वहाँ देवा जी थे, जो मेरे संतप्त<sup>8</sup> मन को शान्ति<sup>9</sup> प्रदान करते थे,<sup>10</sup> या फिर देवनगर-वासियों<sup>11</sup> में वैसी सहृदयता,<sup>12</sup> स्नेह और प्यार था, जैसा

<sup>38</sup> Oh listen, dark Krishna. रे *re*, variant of अरे *are*. The form कृष्ण *Kṛṣṇ* shows a simplification of consonant groups typical of many Sanskrit loanwords, usually older ones.

<sup>40</sup> near, nearby

<sup>41</sup> loud laughter, guffaw (m.)

<sup>42</sup> emptiness, solitude (m.); empty, lonely

<sup>43</sup> दोहरी होती *dohri hoti*, as a group. See p. 169.

<sup>44</sup> youth, young man (m.)

<sup>45</sup> pass (intr.), pass by

<sup>46</sup> road; way, passage (f.)

<sup>47</sup> group (f.)

<sup>48</sup> he sings very well indeed. For बड़ा *barā* here see p. 50.

<sup>49</sup> spread; (of eyes) open wide

<sup>50</sup> companion; accompanying (adj.)

<sup>51</sup> for

<sup>1</sup> मानना *mānnā*, accept, agree; accept as. Cf. p. 158, n. 2.

<sup>2</sup> unlimited; see p. 193.

<sup>3</sup> love, affection (m.)

<sup>4</sup> See p. 199.

<sup>5</sup> limitless

<sup>6</sup> love, affection (m.)

<sup>7</sup> sympathy

<sup>8</sup> heated, tormented

<sup>9</sup> peace (f.)

<sup>10</sup> give, donate (conjunct verb)

<sup>11</sup> inhabitants of Devnagar

<sup>12</sup> friendliness, kindness (m.)

कहीं और देखने में नहीं आता—नहीं, इनमें से कोई बात न थी<sup>13</sup>। वाणी के उस स्नेह और सहानुभूति ने मेरी उस अस्थायी<sup>14</sup> शान्ति को, जो देवनगर के उन पहले दिनों में मुझे प्राप्त हुई थी, एक अजीब-सी<sup>15</sup> बेचैनी<sup>16</sup> में बदल दिया था। देवा जी के लेखों<sup>17</sup> की बड़ी-बड़ी बातें भी मेरे मन के सागर<sup>18</sup> पर तैरती<sup>19</sup> हुई वृत्तहीन<sup>20</sup> कमलिनियों<sup>21</sup>—सी बहने लगी थीं। और देवनगर के वासी!—जैसे-जैसे<sup>22</sup> मैं उन्हें जानता गया, मुझे लगता गया कि ऊपर से नज़र आनेवाली<sup>23</sup> मुस्कानों<sup>24</sup> और प्रकट<sup>25</sup> सुनायी देनेवाले प्रेम और परस्पर<sup>26</sup> प्रोत्साहन<sup>27</sup> के दावों<sup>28</sup> के नीचे वही ईर्ष्या-द्वेष<sup>29</sup> का विष<sup>30</sup> छिपा हुआ है। लेकिन देवनगर के आस-पास<sup>31</sup> की सुन्दरता,<sup>32</sup> उन देहाती<sup>33</sup> सुबहों और शामों का वह सोने,<sup>34</sup> गुलाब<sup>35</sup> और केसर<sup>36</sup> से धुला हुआ लावण्य,<sup>37</sup> नदी-तट<sup>38</sup> का वह एकांत<sup>39</sup>, करीर<sup>40</sup> की उन ठिगनी<sup>41</sup> भरी-पूरी<sup>42</sup> भाड़ियों<sup>43</sup> के फूलों की वह जलते अंगारों<sup>44</sup>—की-सी लाली<sup>45</sup>—सब मेरे मन

<sup>13</sup> The sense of the sentence in outline is: It was not that Vāṇī was there . . . or that Devā Ji was there . . . or that the inhabitants of Devnagar showed such warm feeling as was not found elsewhere.

<sup>14</sup> impermanent, short-lived (invariable adj.)

<sup>15</sup> †strange, curious

<sup>16</sup> disquiet (f.)

<sup>17</sup> article, writing (m.)

<sup>18</sup> ocean (m.)

<sup>19</sup> swim, float

<sup>20</sup> \*stalkless; हीन *hin*, deprived of, without (in compounds); wretched

<sup>21</sup> lotus (f.); see Supplement I, pp. 164 f.; बहना *bahnā*, flow, float

<sup>22</sup> in proportion as

<sup>23</sup> नज़र आना *†nazar ānā*, be visible

<sup>24</sup> smile (f.)

<sup>25</sup> clearly, manifestly

<sup>26</sup> See p. 152.

<sup>27</sup> encouragement (m.)

<sup>28</sup> दावा *dāvā*, m., claim

<sup>29</sup> jealousy (f.) and hatred (m.)

<sup>30</sup> poison (m.)

<sup>31</sup> See p. 201.

<sup>32</sup> beauty (f.)

<sup>33</sup> country (invariable adj.)

<sup>34</sup> gold (m.)

<sup>35</sup> pink; rose (m.)

<sup>36</sup> saffron (m.)

<sup>37</sup> \*savour, charm (m.)

<sup>38</sup> bank (m.)

<sup>39</sup> \*quiet, privacy (m.)

<sup>40</sup> caper-bush (a thorny shrub) (m.)

<sup>41</sup> dwarfish, stumpy

<sup>42</sup> See p. 199.

<sup>43</sup> bush (f.)

<sup>44</sup> अंगारा *angārā*, m., spark

<sup>45</sup> redness

को कुछ इस तरह बाँधे था कि जब दिमाग<sup>46</sup> कहता,<sup>47</sup> 'मैंने देवनगर आकर गलती<sup>48</sup> की' तो मन वहाँ से जाने के विचार-मात्र<sup>49</sup> से उदास<sup>50</sup> हो जाता।

पित्तो की मौत<sup>1</sup> के बाद शहर की भीड़-भाड़<sup>2</sup> में मेरा दम<sup>3</sup> घुटने<sup>4</sup> लगा था। असल में<sup>5</sup> पित्तो के जिन्दा रहते<sup>6</sup> मुझे नगर<sup>7</sup> के उस शोर-शराबे<sup>8</sup> और भीड़-भबड़ का कभी श्रद्धास<sup>9</sup> न हुआ था। उस सारे शोर के ऊपर जैसे पित्तो को प्यारी-प्यारी बातें मेरे कानों<sup>10</sup> में गूँजती रहती थीं और वह सारी भीड़ पित्तो की सूरत<sup>11</sup> के आगे<sup>12</sup> एकदम<sup>13</sup> लुप्त<sup>14</sup> हो जाती थी। दफ्तर में काम करते, मित्र-शत्रुओं, अफसरों<sup>15</sup> या चपरसियों<sup>16</sup> से बातें करते हुए भी आँखें उसको देखती रहती थीं। दो-चार बच्चे हो जाते<sup>17</sup> तो सम्भव है कि नोन,<sup>18</sup> तेल, लकड़ी और कपड़े की यथार्थता<sup>19</sup> विवाह<sup>20</sup> के उन शुरू के वर्षों की व्यामोहावस्था<sup>21</sup> को भंग कर देती,<sup>22</sup> लेकिन तीन वर्षों के उन तीन पल<sup>23</sup> बनकर बीत जानेवाले दिनों के सहचर<sup>24</sup> के बाद, जब वह मोठी आवाज़ और वह मन-मोहक<sup>25</sup> सूरत मौत के हाथों<sup>26</sup>

<sup>46</sup> brain (m.)

<sup>47</sup> See p. 170.

<sup>48</sup> †mistake, error (f.)

<sup>49</sup> at the very thought of going; मात्र \**mātr* (suffixed adv.), only

<sup>50</sup> dejected

<sup>1</sup> †death (f.)

<sup>2</sup> See p. 201.

<sup>3</sup> breath (m.)

<sup>4</sup> be choked

<sup>5</sup> †in reality

<sup>6</sup> See p. 178.

<sup>7</sup> city (m.)

<sup>8</sup> See p. 201.

<sup>9</sup> †perception, feeling (m.)

<sup>10</sup> कान *kān*, m., ear

<sup>11</sup> †form, face (f.)

<sup>12</sup> in front of, out in front of; beyond

<sup>13</sup> completely, simply; at once

<sup>14</sup> \*vanished

<sup>15</sup> officer, official (m.)

<sup>16</sup> office messenger (m.)

<sup>17</sup> Unrealized condition; see p. 124.

<sup>18</sup> salt (m.); नमक *namak*, m., is a commoner word.

<sup>19</sup> reality (m.); 'the realities of daily life' here

<sup>20</sup> marriage (m.)

<sup>21</sup> \*carefree, delighted state; = *vī + ā + moh* (m.), fascination, infatuation + *avasthā* (f.), position, state

<sup>22</sup> भंग करना *bhaṅg karnā*, break; conjunct verb, with dependent auxiliary देना *denā*

<sup>23</sup> पल *pal*, m., moment; बनना *banā*, be made; become

<sup>24</sup> married life (m.); after the companionship of those three years (those three years' days) which had passed by like three seconds. उन *un* qualifies दिनों *dinon*.

<sup>25</sup> See p. 200.

<sup>26</sup> at the hands of, at the onslaught of death; adverbial oblique

धीरे<sup>27</sup> और विकृत<sup>28</sup> होकर चली गयी, तो लगा कि जैसे<sup>29</sup> शहर का शोर मेरे कानों के पर्दे<sup>30</sup> फाड़ रहा है और भीड़ मेरा गला<sup>31</sup> घोंटे<sup>32</sup> दे रही है। देवनगर के उन वीरानों<sup>33</sup> का वह मौन मुझे इतना अच्छा लगता कि कभी-कभी जो<sup>34</sup> चाहता उसी में विलीन<sup>35</sup> हो जाऊँ, घुल<sup>36</sup> जाऊँ, शरीर<sup>37</sup> को छोड़कर उसके कण-कण<sup>38</sup> में समा<sup>39</sup> जाऊँ।

<sup>27</sup> \*frail, slight

<sup>28</sup> \*spoiled, damaged

<sup>29</sup> लगा कि जैसे *lagā ki jaise*, it seemed that

<sup>30</sup> पर्दा *pardā*, m., curtain; कान का पर्दा *kān kā pardā*, eardrum

<sup>31</sup> throat (m.)

<sup>32</sup> घोंटना *ghoṭnā*, choke, throttle; see pp. 172 f.

<sup>33</sup> वीराना *vīrānā*, m., deserted place

<sup>34</sup> life, spirit (m.)

<sup>35</sup> immersed, absorbed

<sup>36</sup> he dissolved

<sup>37</sup> body (m.)

<sup>38</sup> \*fragment, particle, drop (m.); see p. 139; उसके *uske* refers back to मौन *maun*.

<sup>39</sup> समा<sup>39</sup> *samānā*, be contained, absorbed; कण-कण में समा जाना *kaṇ-kaṇ meṁ samā jānā*, pervade thoroughly, pervade every atom of

## COMPOSITION PASSAGES

### I

A certain man had two sons. One day one son said to his father, 'Father, please give me my share<sup>1</sup> of<sup>2</sup> your wealth<sup>3</sup>.' His father gave him his share. After this he went off to a distant land. In that country, he wasted<sup>4</sup> all his father's money,<sup>5</sup> and quickly became poor. At that time he was living in the house of an inhabitant<sup>6</sup> of that country. He began to work in that man's fields, because he had no money. After some time he thought,<sup>7</sup> 'I shall return<sup>8</sup> to my country, and go to my father, and tell him how greatly I have sinned.<sup>9</sup>' And he came back<sup>10</sup> to his country. His father saw him from far off, and was very happy.<sup>11</sup> He had waited for him a long time.<sup>12</sup> The servants gave him new clothes to wear, and a fat calf<sup>13</sup> was killed.<sup>14</sup> But his brother was very angry.<sup>15</sup> 'What's going on here?'<sup>16</sup> he said. His father answered that his brother had just<sup>17</sup> returned, and that<sup>18</sup> he ought to be happy.

<sup>1</sup> हिस्सा *hissā*, m., भाग *bhāg*, m., part

<sup>2</sup> मेरे से *meṁ se*

<sup>3</sup> धन *dhan*, m., दौलत *ḍaulat*, f., wealth, riches

<sup>4</sup> उड़ाना *urānā*, literally 'cause to fly'

<sup>5</sup> पैसे *paise*, m.pl.

<sup>6</sup> निवासी *nivāsi*, m.

<sup>7</sup> सोचना *socnā* (used with ने *ne*)

<sup>8</sup> Subjunctive possible; the idea is a proposition in the first instance.

<sup>9</sup> मेने कैसा पाप किया है *maine kaisā pāp kiya hai*

<sup>10</sup> लौट आना *lauṭ ānā*

<sup>11</sup> हुए *hue*, not थे *the*, describing the sudden, new development.

<sup>12</sup> Continuous past (emphasizing duration of the period).

<sup>13</sup> मोटा बछड़ा *moṭā bachṛā*, m.

<sup>14</sup> जवह करना *zabāh karnā*, slaughter (conjunct verb). The word जवह *zabāh* is often pronounced and written with *i* in first syllable.

<sup>15</sup> बिगड़ना *bigaṛnā*, be spoiled; be upset; perfective required here.

<sup>16</sup> यह क्या हो रहा है? *yah kyā ho rahā hai?* For यह *yah* here see p. 102.

<sup>17</sup> Distributive अभी-अभी *abhi-abhi* possible (the emphasis being less on the exact time of the return than on the fact that it has taken place during the immediately preceding period).

<sup>18</sup> Since direct speech reportage will be used here, the words 'and that' need not be represented.



## II

Allahabad is about<sup>1</sup> 500 miles from Delhi,<sup>2</sup> and<sup>3</sup> the train journey<sup>4</sup> usually takes about twelve hours. My train was an express bound for Calcutta, and it left at 7.20 a.m. At that time it was quite cool.<sup>5</sup> Later on, however, especially<sup>6</sup> in the afternoon, it grew very hot<sup>7</sup> and dusty in the carriage.<sup>8</sup> I became very tired<sup>9</sup> and began to feel very thirsty, and dozed off<sup>10</sup> several times. Apart from myself there was only one other passenger<sup>11</sup> in the compartment,<sup>12</sup> a Muslim<sup>13</sup> of about forty-five.<sup>14</sup> But I didn't have much conversation<sup>15</sup> with him because he was reading a book most of the time.<sup>16</sup> I could see<sup>17</sup> that the book was written in Urdu. There seemed to be quite a difference<sup>18</sup> between<sup>19</sup> the countryside near Allahabad<sup>20</sup> and that in the west. The monsoon had begun, but round Delhi the fields were

<sup>1</sup> करीब *qarīb*, लगभग *lagbhag*.

<sup>2</sup> Say '500 miles distant from Delhi'.

<sup>3</sup> Note that long English sentences are frequently best broken up into shorter sentences in Hindi, especially in simple style. The word और *aur* can be omitted here and a new sentence begun.

<sup>4</sup> Say 'going by train' (रेल *rel*, f., ट्रेन *tren*, f.) usually takes . . .

<sup>5</sup> Use the noun ठंड *ṭhaṇḍ*, f., 'coolness', not the adj. ठंडा *ṭhaṇḍā*.

<sup>6</sup> खासकर *khaśakar*, विशेषकर *viśeṣkar*

<sup>7</sup> Use गरमी लगना *garmī lagnā*, be hot

<sup>8</sup> धूल *dhūl*, f., dust; use धूल भरना *dhūl bharnā*, be dusty (of an enclosed place which can be filled with dust). For 'carriage' use गाड़ी *gāṛī*, f.

<sup>9</sup> Use थकना *thaknā*.

<sup>10</sup> ऊँघना *ūmghnā*, doze; for 'doze off' use with लगना *lagnā*.

<sup>11</sup> यात्री *yātrī*, m.

<sup>12</sup> दिब्बा *ḍibbā*, m.

<sup>13</sup> मुसलमान *musalmān*, m.

<sup>14</sup> Say 'of about 45 years'.

<sup>15</sup> बातचीत *bātcīṭ*, f., conversation; मेरी उससे ज्यादा बातचीत न हो सकी *merī ussē pyādā bātcīṭ na ho sakī*. Construction with होना *honā* is better than with करना *harnā*; use of सकना *saknā* underlines the fact that the person wished to have some conversation.

<sup>16</sup> ज्यादातर *pyādātar*

<sup>17</sup> मैंने देखा *māinṇe dekhā*. English 'I could see' does not really stress ability to see in this context, and use of सकना *saknā* is unnecessary.

<sup>18</sup> फर्क *farq*, m.; काफी फर्क मालूम हुआ *kāfī farq mālum huā*

<sup>19</sup> मैं *mē*

<sup>20</sup> इलाहाबाद के पास का देहात *ilāhābād ke pās kā dehāt*

still<sup>21</sup> rather brown<sup>22</sup> and dry.<sup>23</sup> Here<sup>24</sup> in the east, however, everything was green,<sup>25</sup> and I could see that water was lying<sup>26</sup> in the rice-fields.<sup>27</sup>

## III

At last<sup>1</sup> we reached Allahabad, and the train stopped<sup>2</sup> in the station just about right on time. A porter<sup>3</sup> came into the compartment and asked me how much luggage I had, and a moment later<sup>4</sup> I stepped out on to the platform.<sup>5</sup> On the platform there was a great crowd of people who<sup>6</sup> had come to meet<sup>7</sup> their friends and relatives.<sup>8</sup> I tried to pick out<sup>9</sup> my friend's brother somewhere in the crowd, but I had never met him and besides, it was getting dark,<sup>10</sup> so I hardly expected<sup>11</sup> to find him easily. I thought that he would perhaps recognise me from my photograph. And so it turned out;<sup>12</sup> in just a few seconds<sup>13</sup> a man who very much resembled my

<sup>1</sup> अभी भी *abhi bhi*

<sup>2</sup> भूरा *bhūrā*

<sup>3</sup> सूखा *sūkhā*

<sup>4</sup> इधर *iḍhar*, literally 'hither, out here'. (Note also उधर *udhar* 'thither' and किधर *kidhar* 'whither'.)

<sup>5</sup> Say 'greenness' (हरियाली *hariyālī*, f.) was everywhere.

<sup>6</sup> भरा हुआ *bharā huā*

<sup>7</sup> धान *dhān*, m., paddy

<sup>1</sup> आखिर (में) *ākhīr (mē)*

<sup>2</sup> आ हकी *ā hākī*, i.e. 'came in and stopped'.

<sup>3</sup> कुली *qulī*, m.

<sup>4</sup> एक पल बाद *ek pal bād*. See p. 35.

<sup>5</sup> प्लेटफार्म *pleṭfārm*, m.

<sup>6</sup> Say 'on the platform there was a large crowd (भीड़ *bhīṛ*, f.). These people had come . . .

<sup>7</sup> Use of लेना *lenā*, i.e. '(meet and) take away with them', is possible here.

<sup>8</sup> रिश्तेदार *riṣṭedār*, m.

<sup>9</sup> ढूँढ़ लेना *ḍhūṛh lenā*. ढूँढ़ना *ḍhūṛhṇā* often means 'search out', i.e. 'look for and find', rather than simply 'look for'.

<sup>10</sup> The particle भी *bhi* can be included in the translation, viz. 'darkness too was drawing on'. Hindi favours the marking of ideas which are parallel or 'additional' in a sentence by the use of भी *bhi*.

<sup>11</sup> मुझे कम आशा थी कि . . . *mujhe kam āśā thī ki . . .*

<sup>12</sup> ऐसा ही हुआ *aisā hī huā*

<sup>13</sup> क्षण *kṣaṇ*, m.

friend came up to me and greeted me<sup>14</sup> with folded hands.<sup>15</sup> He had had no trouble<sup>16</sup> at all in recognising me since I was the only European who had got off the train.<sup>17</sup>

## IV

When Premnāth and I came out of the station I saw that in front of the station at one side there were ten or fifteen cycle rickshaws<sup>1</sup> standing, and a few cars also at the other side. I had not seen cycle rickshaws before. As soon as the rickshaw-wallahs saw us several of them began to run<sup>2</sup> towards us, shouting out 'Rickshaw, sir!'<sup>3</sup> But Premnāth had a car, so<sup>4</sup> we did not need them on this occasion. I followed<sup>5</sup> him over to the car, and he got my porter to put my luggage on the back seat.<sup>6</sup> I did not know how much to tip<sup>7</sup> the porter, but Premnāth solved<sup>8</sup> my difficulty;<sup>9</sup> he gave him four annas for each big case.<sup>10</sup> Four annas are 25 naye paise. I expect<sup>11</sup> that if I had been alone the porter would have asked<sup>12</sup> me for very much more<sup>13</sup> money.

<sup>14</sup> नमस्ते किया *namaste kiya*

<sup>15</sup> हाथ जोड़कर *hāth joṛkar*, literally 'having joined his hands'

<sup>16</sup> दिक्कत *diqqat*, f.

<sup>17</sup> Say 'among those getting down from the train I was a single (अकेला *ahelā*) European'.

<sup>1</sup> साइकिल रिक्शा *sāikil rikṣā*, m.

<sup>2</sup> दौड़ पड़ना *daur pṛnā*

<sup>3</sup> The commonest equivalent to the vocative 'sir' is probably the expression बाबू जी *bābū jī*, though the word साहब *sāhab* is also very common. The word बाबू *bābū*, which is often used in the sense 'clerk, government servant', means properly 'educated or distinguished person', and of course has this connotation in the expression बाबू जी *bābū jī*.

<sup>4</sup> इसलिए *islie*

<sup>5</sup> ... के पीछे-पीछे चलना ... *ke piche-piche calnā*

<sup>6</sup> सीट *sīt*, f.

<sup>7</sup> पैसे देना *paise denā*

<sup>8</sup> दूर करना *dūr karnā*

<sup>9</sup> Say 'this difficulty of mine': मेरी यह मुश्किल *merī yah muṣkil*

<sup>10</sup> बक्सा *baksā*, m.

<sup>11</sup> मुझे लगता है *mujhe lagatā hai*

<sup>12</sup> माँगना *māṅgnā* (with से *se*)

<sup>13</sup> कहीं अधिक *kahim adhik*

## V

Premnāth was a lawyer, and lived in a bungalow<sup>1</sup> in the Allahabad Civil Lines<sup>2</sup> about a mile and a half away from the station. The Civil Lines is a suburb of straight, wide (*cauṛā*) streets and large houses. We reached Premnāth's bungalow in just a few minutes, and he stopped<sup>3</sup> the car beside the front door. An old family<sup>4</sup> servant took<sup>5</sup> my luggage out of the car. Premnāth and I went into his office. His table was piled high<sup>6</sup> with law<sup>7</sup> books. We talked for a little while about his younger brother, who was studying medicine<sup>8</sup> in England. Then his son came into the room, and Premnāth introduced him to me. I did not meet<sup>9</sup> Premnāth's wife that evening. I was not at all hungry,<sup>10</sup> but very thirsty, and so I was very glad when a servant brought us some tea and biscuits.<sup>11</sup> After a little while I said good-night<sup>12</sup> to Premnāth, and went<sup>13</sup> out on to the verandah,<sup>14</sup> where the servant had put a charpoy<sup>15</sup> for me. I lay down and very shortly fell asleep.<sup>16</sup>

<sup>1</sup> कोठी *koṭhī*, f.

<sup>2</sup> इलाहाबाद की सिविल लाइन्स *ilāhābād kī civil lāins*

<sup>3</sup> खड़ा करना *kharā karnā*

<sup>4</sup> परिवार *parivār*, m.

<sup>5</sup> उतारना *utārṇā*, set down, take down

<sup>6</sup> Use लदना *ladnā*.

<sup>7</sup> कानून *qānūn*, m.

<sup>8</sup> डाक्टर की पढ़ना *ḍāktarī (f.) pāṛhnā*

<sup>9</sup> Use of सकना *saknā* with मिलना *milnā* here would underline the fact that the narrator had been expecting or hoping to meet Premnāth's wife also.

<sup>10</sup> मुझे जरा भी भूख नहीं थी *mujhe zarā bhī bhūkk nahim thī*; use of लगना *lagnā* in this negatived expression is not necessary, though possible. For जरा *zarā* see p. 203, n. 17.

<sup>11</sup> बिस्कुट *bishuṭ*, m.

<sup>12</sup> आज्ञा लेना *ājñā (f.) lenā*. आज्ञा *ājñā* 'command, order' has the sense 'leave to go' in this expression and the complementary आज्ञा देना *ājñā denā* 'allow to go'.

<sup>13</sup> Use आना *ānā* (the centre of interest now being the verandah).

<sup>14</sup> बरामदा *barāmdā*, m. For 'on to' use में *mē*.

<sup>15</sup> Use चारपाई बिछा रखना *cārpāī (f.) bichā rakhnā*, literally 'spread a charpoy (with bedding) and place it'.

<sup>16</sup> नींद आना *nīnd (f.) ānā (ko)*, fall asleep

## VI

Here in Allahabad the humidity<sup>1</sup> was much greater than in Delhi.<sup>2</sup> For this reason I wasn't able to sleep terribly well, although the charpoy was very comfortable. The next morning<sup>3</sup> I was up very early,<sup>4</sup> but not as early as Premnāth and his family.<sup>5</sup> It was cooler, but the humidity was just the same,<sup>6</sup> and the sky was completely covered<sup>7</sup> with heavy<sup>8</sup> black clouds.<sup>9</sup> I went into the bathroom<sup>10</sup> and washed<sup>11</sup> in<sup>12</sup> cold water. Then I felt much better.<sup>13</sup> I found Premnāth in his office reading the paper. He took two papers, one English and one Hindi. We talked about the news<sup>14</sup> for a while, and I asked him many questions about life in Allahabad. Then the servant brought in breakfast—tea, toast, and a fried<sup>15</sup> egg for me. I drank<sup>16</sup> several cups of tea.

## VII

Premnāth's son went out into the road and called a rickshaw-wallah who brought his rickshaw up to the front of the house.<sup>1</sup> The two of us loaded my luggage on to the rickshaw and got in,<sup>2</sup> and I said good-bye to Premnāth

<sup>1</sup> नमी *namī*, f.

<sup>2</sup> Say 'was much greater than Delhi'. See p. 178, paragraph (b).

<sup>3</sup> दूसरे दिन *dūsre dīn*

<sup>4</sup> जल्दी *jaldī*

<sup>5</sup> प्रेमनाथ . . . से (की तरह) जल्दी नहीं *premnāth . . . se (kī tarah) jaldī nahīn*

<sup>6</sup> वैसा ही *vaisā hī*

<sup>7</sup> ढक्कना *dhaknā*, be covered; cover

<sup>8</sup> घना *ghanā*, thick, dense

<sup>9</sup> बादल *bādāl*, m.

<sup>10</sup> गुस्लखाना *guslkhānā*, m.

<sup>11</sup> नहाना *nahānā*

<sup>12</sup> से *se*

<sup>13</sup> Use तबीयत खुश होना *tabīyat (f.) khush honā*.

<sup>14</sup> नए समाचार *nae samācār*, m.pl.

<sup>15</sup> फ्राइड *frāīd*

<sup>16</sup> Concord with चाय *cāy*.

<sup>1</sup> रिक्शा मकान के सामने लाकर खड़ा कर दिया *riksā makān ke sāmne lāhar khārā kar diyā*, literally 'brought it and stopped it in front of the house'

<sup>2</sup> बैठना *baiṭhnā*

and thanked<sup>3</sup> him very much for the kindness which he had shown me.<sup>4</sup> We set off for the University. It took about fifteen minutes to get there. On the way<sup>5</sup> we passed<sup>6</sup> the Nehru family's house, called Ānand Bhavan; it was<sup>7</sup> a very imposing (*śāndār*) house with a pleasant garden.<sup>8</sup> Then a few minutes later we entered the University area,<sup>9</sup> on one side of which was Amarnāth Jhā Hostel. I had come to live in<sup>10</sup> Allahabad for<sup>11</sup> six months, so that I could improve<sup>12</sup> my Hindi. At the same time<sup>13</sup> I planned<sup>14</sup> to attend Hindi classes<sup>15</sup> in the University. We entered the hostel, and went up<sup>16</sup> to the Warden's house.

<sup>3</sup> धन्यवाद देना *dhanyavād denā* (ko)

<sup>4</sup> अपने सत्कार के लिए *apne satkāṛ ke lie*. सत्कार *satkār* is here used in the sense 'kindness received by a guest'.

<sup>5</sup> रास्ते में *rāste meṁ*

<sup>6</sup> के पास से गुज़रना *ke pās se guzarnā*

<sup>7</sup> As well as था *thā*, है *hai* is possible here; the state of affairs still obtains.

<sup>8</sup> सुहावना बगीचा *suhāvnā bagīcā*, m.

<sup>9</sup> क्षेत्र *kṣetr*, m.

<sup>10</sup> The postposition may be omitted.

<sup>11</sup> के लिए *ke lie*

<sup>12</sup> सुधारना *sudhārnā*

<sup>13</sup> साथ ही *sāth hī*, 'together with this'

<sup>14</sup> मेरा विचार . . . ने का था *merā vicār . . . ne kā thā*

<sup>15</sup> Use कक्षाओं में बैठना *kaṣṣāōṁ meṁ baiṭhnā*. कक्षा *kaṣṣā*, f., class

<sup>16</sup> पहुँचना *pahūncnā*

## KEY TO EXERCISES

1

This is a table. The book is on the table. There is a pen on the table. There are two chairs in the room. What is this? This is a jar. Is there water in the jar? No, but there is water in the well. The books are on the table. Are the books on the tables? There is one chair here. There are two chairs there. Is this a chair? No, this isn't a chair, it's a table. The boys are in Agra, but the girls are in Calcutta. There are three men here. Where are the women? There are books on the tables.

2

यह क्या है? यह पुस्तक है। पुस्तक यहाँ है। पुस्तकें वहाँ हैं। पत्र कहाँ है? यहाँ दो लड़के हैं। मेज़ कमरे में है। घड़ा मेज़ पर है, और पड़े में पानी है। वह क्या है? वह मेज़ है। चिड़िया पिंजरे में है। पिंजरे में तीन चिड़ियाँ हैं। मकान में तीन कमरे हैं। एक कमरे में मेज़ और कुर्सियाँ हैं। भूखवार मेज़ों पर हैं।

3

He<sup>1</sup> isn't here, but his<sup>1</sup> younger sisters are here. He isn't at home. Two small children are standing at the door. This water is very dirty. There are five books in the black box. Are the books in this black box? In that country there are many cities and villages. Sitā is in the fifth class. The Red Fort is in Delhi. These are the books belonging to those little girls. The walls of those buildings are high. The rajah's palace is in this city. It is very beautiful.

4

किताब<sup>2</sup> उस मेज़ पर है। कपड़े इस संदूक में हैं। किताबें उन मेज़ों पर हैं। कपड़े इन संदूकों में हैं। वे यहाँ हैं। वह कहाँ है? वह कहाँ है? सीता उसकी छोटी बहन है। उसकी किताब मेज़ पर है। उसकी किताबें उस कमरे में हैं। उनके कपड़े साफ़ और सफ़ेद हैं। वह क्या है? वह संदूक है। उसमें चार बड़ी किताबें हैं। ये किताबें उसकी हैं। उस छोटे गाँव में दो मंदिर हैं। कलकत्ता बड़ा शहर है।

<sup>1</sup> Also 'she', 'her'. Alternative translations depending on points of grammar already explained are not given in the Key (nor, usually, in the Lessons).

<sup>2</sup> Also पुस्तक *pustak*. Alternative translations depending on the existence of common lexical equivalents (see p. xi) are not given in the Key.

## KEY TO EXERCISES

217

5

My son is now in Delhi. My son's house is very large. Your books are on that large table. He is my elder brother. Hullo, how are you? How are you, Sitā? Is everything all right? Yes, everything's all right. Mr. Prasad is here, he's sitting in that room. Our city is small. Their brothers aren't here. Is this book yours? No, it's not mine, it's my father's.

6

सीता इस लड़के की बहन है। इन लड़कों की बहनें स्कूल में हैं। तुम्हारी माँ कहाँ हैं? आपकी पत्नी कौसी हैं? यह काम ठीक नहीं है। वह किताब मेरी है। सब किताबें मेरी हैं। ये सब किताबें मेरे माता-पिता की हैं। हम उनके कमरे में बैठे हैं। आप कैसे हैं, प्रसाद जी? मैं ठीक हूँ। भारत में बहुत गाँव हैं। दिल्ली भारत की राजधानी है।

7

How are you? I'm well. We are English. Our language is English. His sisters were in Agra yesterday. I was there yesterday. Will it rain today? No, it won't rain today. I am writing a letter. He speaks English to me. The leaves of that tree are green. Trees' leaves are green. I don't know Hindi. They used to speak English to us in India. He's sitting in my chair. We are going to India the day after tomorrow. Well, I'm going (now). The boy is singing a song. Why are you learning Hindi?

8

मेरे दोस्त का भाई कल यहाँ था। उनकी बहनें कमरे में नहीं थीं। क्या वे दफ़्तर में हैं? जी नहीं, घर पर होंगे। वे भारतीय विद्यार्थियों से हमेशा हिंदी बोलते हैं, लेकिन मुझसे नहीं बोलते। हम भारत की राजधानी में रहते हैं। मैं हिंदी सीख रहा हूँ। मैं उसकी पुस्तकें नहीं पढ़ता। गरमियों में दिन लंबे होते हैं। सिमेटे भारत में महीना नहीं होती। डाकिया कब आता है? लड़कियाँ उस कमरे में सोती थीं। हम एक बहुत अच्छी पुस्तक पढ़ रहे हैं।

9

I've just arrived from Delhi. What will you say to his brother? She'll be on her way (here). Perhaps I'll write the letter tomorrow. The boy is standing in the courtyard. What am I to say to him tomorrow? The students went to Delhi, and also to Bombay. Come on, let's have some coffee in the restaurant. I shall give the boy just two rupees. I shall not give him even one rupee. How long did you stay in India? The money is lying on the table. In the cold season the weather is good. Everyone went into the house.

10

मैं दूध नहीं पिऊँगा। मैं उसका पत्र पढ़ूँ? मैं क्या कहूँ? मैं उससे पूछूँगा। उसके कारखाने<sup>1</sup> मेज़ पर पड़े हैं। वह कल पहुँचा होगा। वह आपको पत्र देंगे। मैं कल सारा दिन घर पर ही रहा। मैं बरसात में यहाँ आया। वह मुझसे हिंदी बोला।

11

The paper is underneath the books. The window is behind you. She is sitting outside. I arrived here before him. Formerly I used to live in a village. I shall ask him about this. How far is Delhi from Agra? Shall we go in ten minutes' time? A girl was standing at the window. At that time I was reading a book. I want to learn Hindi by next year. At the right-hand side of the road there's a big building. These days food isn't cheap. I slept inside the house last night.

12

मैं उसके साथ आया। वह मेरे साथ आया। वह हमारे लिए यह काम कर रहे हैं। मैं कल तक दिल्ली में उसके लिए ठहरा। मेरे भाई मकान के सामने खड़े हैं। पहले मैं दिल्ली में रहता था। दिल्ली हमारे शहर के काफ़ी पास है। आपका गाँव भी पास है। मैं कल से यहाँ हूँ। आप हिंदी बहुत जल्दी सीख रहे हैं। मैं रेल से जाऊँगा और कार से लौटूँगा। मैं हवाई जहाज़ में लंदन जाना चाहता हूँ।

13

I shall write him a letter after I have eaten. What will you do in India (after you get to India)? He put all the things in the cupboard and went out of the room. Rāmādhīn, go to the bazaar and get (bring) four mangoes. He went out, with the book (taking the book). Excuse me, is this the Delhi train? Please speak slowly!

14

आप हिंदुस्तान जाकर हिंदी जल्दी सीख लेंगे। वह यह किताब हिंदुस्तान से ले आया। मैं हवाई जहाज़ से बंबई होकर गया। यह काम अभी कीजिए। इस कुर्सी पर बैठिए। मुझे और दीजिए!

<sup>1</sup> Note also the compound noun कारखाना-पत्र *kāgaz-patr*, common for 'papers' in this sense, and the equivalent form कारखाना *kāgazāt*. The latter shows an Arabic plural inflexional ending which is common in Persian and Arabic loanwords in Urdu, though rarely used in Hindi.

15

Is anyone there? I shan't say anything about that. Eight or nine men arrived with him. Several books were lying under the table. A few other books were on the table. There's no chair in my room. Whom do these books belong to (which different persons)? Whom will you speak to about this? The book I am reading is on the table. The man I was watching has just gone out. The room I shall work in is very comfortable. How long have you been in this country, and how long will you stay here? Why don't you speak Hindi?

16

मैं किसी गाँव में रहूँगा। यहाँ कोई हिंदी नहीं जानता। मैं उससे उसके बारे में कुछ पूछूँगा। कई आदमी कल यहाँ आए। कुछ लोग हर साल वहाँ जाते हैं। ये आदमी कौन हैं? आप ये किताबें किसे देंगे? जो आदमी कल यहाँ आए थे, वे मेरे दोस्त हैं। मैं जिस कुर्सी पर बैठा हूँ, वह काफ़ी मजबूत है। जिस लड़के की पुस्तक मेज़ पर है, वह मेरा बैट है। वे किस शहर में रहते हैं? क्या आपकी तबीयत कल ठीक नहीं थी? सुनिए, आप राधा जी की बहन हैं?

17

He doesn't recognise me. I shall write those letters. I shall give you the books tomorrow. I'm going home on Friday. Do you know them? On that day I was reading a book. What do you mean by that? Do you have any paper? Please give me some. I have a friend in Calcutta. How many walls does that room have? I haven't any books.

18

हमें एक पत्र लिखिए। मैं कल आपसे इसके बारे में कुछ कहूँगा। मेरा दोस्त अगले हफ़्ते इंग्लैंड लौटेगा। मुझे उसके बारे में बहुत खुशी है। मुझे आशा है कि आप भारतवर्ष जाएँगे। किसान घोड़े को ढूँढ़ रहा है। कमरे में कब जाएँगे? वह पेड़ के पास खड़ा था। आपके बच्चे हैं? मेरे दो बेटे और एक बेटी है। मेरा गाँव आगरे के काफ़ी पास है। क्या आपके पास हिंदी की किताबें हैं?

19

He speaks Hindi to his sister. Do you like your room? He and his wife go there every day. My own books are all Hindi ones. He is going back to his own country today. Work starts at eight o'clock. I'm starting work now. Let's stop work now. You will obtain some knowledge of Hindi from this

book. Nowadays annas are not used, but village people still count in annas. Is Indra mentioned in the R̥gveda? Please return my book by tomorrow. I wait for him here every day but usually he doesn't arrive on time.

20

वह अपनी किताबें उस मेज़ पर हमेशा रखते हैं। मैं आपको अपनी किताब दूंगा। मैं आपकी किताब वापस करूँगा। वह कल लंदन गया था, क्योंकि उसका भाई भारत से आ रहा था। मुझे और मेरी पत्नी को आशा है कि आप अपने घर पहुँचकर चिट्ठी लिखेंगे। आप किस महीने में पैदा हुए? आपके पास ग्राम है? जी नहीं, ख़त्म है। मैं आपकी किताब कल ख़त्म करूँगा। दरवाज़ा क्यों बंद है? मैं कल आपको ढूँढ़ रहा था। वह कल खाना हुआ। मैं उनको खाना करूँगा। क्या आपका देश बहुत अनाज पैदा करता है?

21

I've got 75 nae paise. Twelve annas make 75 nae paise. Three quarters of the world consists of ocean. 250. 531. 2,222. 304,837. 34,165,307. I do twice as much work as he. She is in the sixth class. Next year she'll be in the seventh class. (Entire) maunds of grain were ruined. It's a quarter to four. No, its ten to four by my watch. The train arrives at three minutes past six. There's a lecture at 8.30 this evening. I'm going home on June 23rd. This incident occurred on October 24th 1929.

22

मैं एक आध महीने से हिंदी सीख रहा हूँ। डेढ़ सौ। सात सौ चौवन। नौ हजार आठ सौ छिहत्तर। एक करोड़ तिरपन लाख अठहत्तर हजार चार सौ बानवे। इक्कानवे लाख बत्तीस हजार चार सौ चवालीस। वह मुझसे दुगुना काम करता है। हजारों लोग अगले महीने यहाँ आएँगे। मैं साढ़े तीन बजे पहुँचा। अब सात बजकर पच्चीस मिनट हुए हैं। मैं आठ बजने से बीस मिनट पहले जा रहा हूँ। साढ़े पाँच बजे आइए। कल शाम को साढ़े आठ बजे आइए। मेरा बेटा पहली अप्रैल को पैदा हुआ। हम बुधवार को काम शुरू करेंगे।

23

I saw him yesterday. He was reading a book. He had brought it from the library. He read the book last week. I ate at eleven o'clock. Do you understand? (f. pl.) He found me in my office. I spoke Hindi to him. He taught him Hindi.<sup>1</sup> He taught him. I told him the cause of the quarrel. He appeared at the door of my house yesterday evening.

<sup>1</sup> Note the concord of the verb in this sentence with two objects. Concord in constructions involving *ne* is with an indefinite object if one is expressed or understood (any further object form being an indirect object).

24

क्या आपने वे पत्र लिखे? हमने उस दूकान से कई चीज़ें खरीदीं। फिर हम उन्हें घर ले आए। मैंने शाम के पाँच बजे काम ख़त्म किया। आदमियों ने सड़क मेज़ पर रखे। गाँव के लोगों ने सारा दिन खेतों में काम किया। शाम तक वे मर्ना अनाज गाँव में ले आए थे। वे मेरा यहाँ इंतज़ार करते थे<sup>1</sup>। तस्वीर में कई दिलचस्प चीज़ें दिखाई दे रही हैं। वे अपना सब सामान ले गए।

25

I need a new hat. What do you want? I want five air letters. They needed some water. He will need your help. What does that boy want? You should have read these books. My brother should have read them too. I ought to write him a letter. They ought to finish their work. You'll have to speak Hindi to the people of this village.

26

मुझे दो कमीज़ें चाहिए। राधा को कान्ता की पुस्तकों की ज़रूरत थी। आपकी भारत जाना चाहिए। मुझे हिंदी बोलनी चाहिए। आपको हिंदी सीखनी चाहिए थी। मुझे कुछ अखबार खरीदने हैं। मुझे ग्यारह बजे के करीब जाना पड़ेगा। मुझे ग्यारह बजे के करीब जाना पड़ेगा। मुझे ग्यारह बजे जाना पड़ा। मुझे रोज़ बाज़ार जाना पड़ता था। मुझे उसे फ़ोन करना है। मुझे दस रुपए की ज़रूरत होगी।

27

Please come whenever you wish. Please stay here as long as you wish. I stayed there as long as I wanted to. I studied Hindi until I went to India. Please send me a telegram as soon as you reach Allahabad. There weren't as many people here today as there were yesterday. Wherever you go you ought to try to speak the language of the people.

28

जब आप आए, तब मैं घर पर नहीं था। उसने जो कहा, मैं उसे नहीं समझा। मैं जब तक भारत न जाऊँ, तब तक हिंदी पढ़ूँगा। जैसे ही मैंने उसे देखा, वैसे ही मैंने उसे पहचाना। आपके पास जितनी हिंदी की पुस्तकें हैं, उतनी ही मेरे पास अंग्रेज़ी की पुस्तकें हैं। वह जो कुछ कहता है, उसे कोजिए। हमने जिन आदमियों को कल यहाँ देखा था, वे इस गाँव में नहीं रहते।

<sup>1</sup> This is the most natural word order (although यहाँ *yahām* might well follow इंतज़ार *intazār*); components of possessive phrases, such as मेरा इंतज़ार *merā intazār* in this sentence, are very frequently separated by adverbs, adverbial phrases or conjunctions. Other examples will be found in later Lessons.

29

Please come whenever you can. I stayed as long as I could. I am very sorry that I couldn't see (meet) you yesterday. Apart from Hindi we could have learned several other Indian languages in India. Have you had tea? That Hindi dictionary is hard to get hold of. When can we meet? This cloth is very similar to that.

30

मैं हिंदी बहुत आसानी से नहीं लिख सकता। मैं जब भी लिखता हूँ, भूलें करता हूँ। जब मैं वहाँ पहुँचा, तब वह जा चुका था। जैसे ही उसका पत्र मुझे मिला, वैसे ही मैंने उसका उत्तर दिया। जो कोई इसके बारे में सूचना दे सकेगा, उसे पुरस्कार मिलेगा। आपको उस दूकान में हिंदी की पुस्तकें मिल सकती हैं।

31

Hindi is easier than Tamil. Hindi is an easier language than Tamil. Is city life more interesting than village life? Please write at least three pages on this subject. More people speak Hindi than any other Indian language. India is one of the world's most interesting countries. He knows a great deal about India. I told him that he would have to do considerably more work than that. He asked me if cloth was obtainable in that street of the bazaar. Did you tell him that I won't be able to come tomorrow? I told him to finish the work by tomorrow.

32

गंगा यमुना से लंबी है। बंबई आजकल भारत का सबसे बड़ा शहर है। मालूम होता है कि आप उससे ज्यादा काम करते हैं। आपको वहाँ कई भारतीय विद्यार्थी मिलेंगे। मुझे अधिक पुस्तकें चाहिए। यह पुस्तकालय बहुत अधिक छोटा है। उसने अपने मित्रों से कहा कि मैं खा चुका हूँ। उसने अपने मित्रों से कहा कि वे शाम के सवा छह बजे उसके मकान पर आएँ। जैसे ही आपका पत्र मिला, वैसे ही मैंने उनको बताया कि आप दिल्ली आ रहे हैं।

33

As soon as the train left I spread out my bedding on the lower seat. Then I changed my clothes and lay down. Get someone to load the things on that donkey. They burst out laughing on reading the essay he had had printed in the paper. Please explain to him that he should always finish his work on time. I'll ask him here and introduce him to you. Put your boy in a good school. I want to show you round London. You can have good clothes made in that shop.

34

मैं इलाहाबाद में गाड़ी से उतर गया। सामान पीछे से उतारें। आपने जो लिखा है, मुझे दिखाइए<sup>1</sup>। तुम क्या कर बैठे हो! कुर्सी तोड़ डाली! आपने बहुत हिंदी सीख ली। आपको किसने सिखाई?<sup>2</sup> हम अपने कपड़े धोबी से धुवाते हैं। गाड़ी यहाँ नहीं रुकती। गाड़ी अभी खूटी है। मैं आपसे रोड़ हिंदी में कुछ वाक्य लिखवाता हूँ।

35

My books were sent on a month later.<sup>3</sup> I couldn't contain myself. I don't remember. In the street the noise of vehicles could be heard. The existence of this movement in favour of Hindi is natural. Even if you speak the truth other people will slander you. They forced him to speak the truth. Are you going out now? In this picture you see an ox-cart. Farmers usually take their produce to market on carts like this.

36

कहा जा सकता है कि हिंदी एक दिन भारत की राष्ट्रभाषा के रूप में स्वीकार कर ली जाएगी। भारत, जहाँ हिंदी और दूसरी भाषाएँ भी बोली जाती हैं, एक बहुत दिलचस्प देश है। आपने जो कहा था, वह मैंने सावधानी से याद रखा। जब मैंने उसे देखा, तब उसका चेहरा मुझे याद आया। आपको हिंदी की कई<sup>4</sup> कविताएँ याद करनी चाहिए। उनकी पुस्तकों की इन दिनों<sup>5</sup> प्रशंसा हो रही है। मैंने कल नौ बजे काम शुरू किया। मैं कल आपका इंतजार नहीं करूँगा। सच बोलना आदमी का फर्ज है। बोलने का अभ्यास करने से आप हमारी भाषा सीख लेंगे। शत्रु ने किले में प्रवेश करने का प्रयत्न किया। वह अपने दोस्त से मिलने के लिए स्टेशन गया था। वह आराम करने को लेट गया।

37

Please come if you can. If there is a phone call for me please say that I'll ring back. If I had met him that day I would have recognised him. When you reach Delhi I'll introduce you to several of my friends. As soon as the farmers' crops ripen they cut them. Although the train left on time it arrived five minutes late. Since he had no work to do at the time he took the letter out of his pocket and started to read it again. He will look after my work today so that I can show you round Delhi.

<sup>1</sup> Correlative वह *vah* not expressed; see p. 86.

<sup>2</sup> Concord with the noun हिंदी *hindi* understood, see p. 220, ii.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 35.

<sup>4</sup> Note the position of कई *kai*, following the possessive.

<sup>5</sup> For the word order here see p. 221, n.



38

अगर वह मुझे लिखे तो मैं उसकी चिट्ठी का जवाब जरूर दूंगा। अगर वह आने से पहले मुझे लिखता, तो मैं उससे स्टेशन पर मिलता। उससे पूछिए कि यह ठीक रास्ता है या नहीं। अगर मैं उससे मिलता तो मैं उस विषय के बारे में उसका विचार जरूर पूछता। जब आप जानें के लिए तैयार हों, तो मुझसे कहिए। अगर मैंने बहुत ज्यादा कोशिश की, फिर भी मैं आपकी भाषा न सीख सका। मैं मई में दिल्ली से चला गया, क्योंकि मौसम उस समय बहुत गरम हो रहा था। जब से आप दिल्ली चले गए, तब से मैं आपसे नहीं मिला।

39

I want you to show him that letter. I wanted to help him. He may possibly come tomorrow. He'll probably come tomorrow. It's very fitting that you should be able to speak an Indian language before going to India. It took me half an hour to get there. How long will it take you to get back? Less, if I go directly. It seems as if you are making progress in writing Hindi. I'm thirsty. He began to feel hungry, not having eaten anything since morning. He got sunstroke through staying out in the sun all day.

40

मैं भारत की संस्कृति का अध्ययन करना चाहता हूँ। मैं चाहता हूँ कि मेरा बेटा भारतीय संस्कृति का अध्ययन करे। क्या आप चाहते हैं कि मैं उसे वह पत्र दिखाऊँ? मैं उससे कहूँ कि वह आपको एक पत्र लिखे? आपको बुनियादी हिंदी पढ़ना और लिखना सीखने में संभवतः कम से कम एक महीना लगेगा। वफ़ा करवारी में पिघलने लगी। हमें ठंड लग रही है। जब तक उसका पिता न लौट आया, तब तक उसकी माता ने उसे न जाने दिया।

41

It went on raining for two days. We went on studying Hindi until we went to India. Keep studying Hindi! As the days get longer the nights get shorter. When I'm in northern India I make it a habit to speak Hindi.

42

मैं रोज़ आठ बजे तक बिस्तर पर पड़ा रहता हूँ। उस समय राजपूत राजाओं में लड़ाई होती रहती थी। हम हिंदी में बोलने लगे, और घंटों के खतम होने तक हिंदी में बोलते रहे। आप हर एक दिन दस नए शब्द सीखा कीजिए। मैं हर किसी से यह सवाल पूछता जाता हूँ। इसका क्या जवाब है?

43

Each of you please make a habit of learning ten new words daily. Each Rajput killed several enemy soldiers. People come to Allahabad from far

off to bathe in the Ganges. You understand Hindi, do you? The train did leave on time, but it arrived five minutes late. Even if you learn only ten words a day you'll make progress. I have never eaten a meal in that restaurant. As soon as I saw (you) I recognised you. As soon as he sat down we started asking him various questions.

44

आपने छुट्टी में क्या क्या किया? आप कल विश्वविद्यालय में किन किन लोगों से मिले? आपको शहर के चारों ओर के देहात में छोटे छोटे गाँव मिलेंगे, जो देखने लायक हैं। वह अक्सर धीरे धीरे बोलता था, लेकिन तब भी मैं कभी कभी नहीं समझता था। धीरे धीरे बोलिए, नहीं तो मैं नहीं समझूँगा। अगर आप हिंदी सीखना चाहें, तो आपको हिंदी ही बोलनी चाहिए। उसी दिन मेरे पिता जी दिल्ली से आ गए। उसकी माँग सुनते ही वे हँस पड़े। गाड़ी के छूटते ही मैं अपना अखबार पढ़ने लगा।

45

He has written several rather long stories. Many people bathe in the river every day. I know a little Hindi. His legs were as if rooted to the spot by fear. Apart from him there was no one else there. Without working no one can hope to progress. Out of shyness he usually doesn't speak Hindi.

46

उसकी लंबी-सी दाढ़ी है। बहुत-से बड़े लोग उस इमारत में काम करते हैं। मेरे अलावा वहाँ कोई और नहीं था। बिना कोट पहने बाहर न जाइए।

47

We shall take you ourselves to meet (to introduce you to) our friends. Tongawallah, how much will you take me to the station for? What is the name of that tree with the red flowers? There were always wars going on between the rajahs.

48

उसने यह काम आप किया, बिना किसी की सहायता के। पैदल चलनेवालों को सड़क यहाँ पार करनी पड़ती है। नीचे के कमरे छोटे होने पर भी ऊपरवाले कमरों से आरामदेह हैं। मैं बाहर जानेवाला हूँ। मुझे पाँच पंद्रह पैसेवाले टिकट दीजिए।

49

From Banaras trains can be seen crossing the Ganges bridge. A tree which had been cut down was lying on the ground in front of the house.



The girl came to me in tears. I am afraid to say this. When I met him yesterday he was wearing a kurtā and pājāmā. But today he'll probably be wearing European clothes. I never saw him arrive at the office late. How long is it since you came to India? It's a long time since we met. Looking at me sharply he said, 'I'm sending you there for that very reason.'<sup>1</sup> He went out of the room with the book in his hand.

50

मैंने एक गाय को चरते हुए देखा था। औरतें काम करते हुए गा रही थीं। एक साधु सिर नीचा किए मंदिर के दरवाजे के सामने बैठा था। बूढ़ा आदमी खड़ा हो गया और हाथ में लाठी लिए गाय की ओर चला गया। मुझे हिंदी पढ़ते एक महीना हो गया है। उसे काम खत्म किए दो दिन हो गए हैं।

<sup>1</sup> For इसीलिए *isiliē* (rather than उसीलिए *usiliē*, उसी कारण से *usī kāraṇ se*, etc.) see p. 12.

## FAIR VERSIONS OF COMPOSITION PASSAGES

### I

किसी आदमी के दो बेटे थे। एक दिन एक बेटे ने अपने पिता से कहा "पिता जी, अपने धन में से मेरा हिस्सा मुझे दीजिए"। उसके पिता ने उसे उसका हिस्सा दे दिया। इसके बाद वह किसी दूर देश को चला गया। उस देश में उसने अपने पिता के सब पैसे उड़ा दिए और जल्दी ही गरीब हो गया। उस समय वह उस देश के एक निवासी के मकान में रहता था। वह उस आदमी के खेतों में काम करने लगा, क्योंकि उसके पास पैसे नहीं थे। कुछ समय के बाद उसने सोचा, मैं अपने देश लौट जाऊँ, और अपने पिता जी के पास जाकर यह बता दूँ कि मैंने कैसा पाप किया है। और वह अपने देश लौट आया। दूर ही से उसके पिता जी ने उसे देखा और बहुत खुश हुआ। वह बहुत दिनों से उसका इन्तज़ार कर रहा था। नौकरों ने उसे नए कपड़े पहनने के लिए दिए, और एक मोटा बछड़ा ज़ब्त किया गया। लेकिन उसका भाई बहुत खिगड़ा। उसने कहा 'यह क्या हो रहा है?'। उसके पिता ने उत्तर दिया कि तुम्हारा भाई अभी-अभी लौटा है, तुम्हें खुश होना चाहिए।

### II

इलाहाबाद दिल्ली से लगभग पाँच सौ मील दूर है। रेल से जाने में अक्सर बारह घंटे लगते हैं। मेरी ट्रेन कलकत्ते जानेवाली एक एक्सप्रेस ट्रेन थी। ट्रेन सात बजकर बीस मिनट पर छूटी। उस वक़्त काफ़ी ठंड थी। लेकिन बाद में, खासकर दोपहर के बाद, गाड़ी में बहुत गरमी लगने लगी, और धूल भी भरने लगी। मैं बहुत थक गया, और मुझे बहुत प्यास लगने लगी। कई बार मैं ऊँघने भी लगा। मेरे अलावा डिब्बे में सिर्फ़ एक और यात्री था। वह करीब पैंतालीस साल का एक मुसलमान था। मेरी तो उससे ज्यादा बातचीत न हो सकी, क्योंकि वह ज्यादातर किताब पढ़ रहा था। मैंने देखा कि किताब उर्दू की थी। इलाहाबाद के पास के देहात और पश्चिम के देहात में काफ़ी फ़र्क़ मालूम होता था। बरसात शुरू हो गई थी, लेकिन दिल्ली के आस-पास खेत अभी भी भूरे-से और सूखे थे। लेकिन इधर पूर्व में हर ओर खिरियाली थी, और मैंने देखा कि धान के खेतों में पानी भरा हुआ है।

### III

आखिर हम इलाहाबाद पहुँचे, और गाड़ी करीब-करीब ठीक समय पर स्टेशन पर आ रुकी। एक कुली ने डिब्बे में आकर मुझसे पूछा कि आपके पास कितना सामान है। एक पल बाद मैं प्लेटफ़ॉर्म पर उतर आया। प्लेटफ़ॉर्म पर बड़ी भीड़ थी। ये लोग अपने मित्रों और रिश्तेदारों को लेने आए थे। मैंने भीड़ में कहीं अपने मित्र के भाई को ढूँढ़ लेने की कोशिश की। लेकिन मैं उनसे कभी मिला नहीं था। इसके अलावा अंधेरा भी हो चला था। इसलिए मुझे कम आशा थी कि मैं उन्हें आसानी से ढूँढ़ सकूँगा। मैंने सोचा कि वह शायद मेरी तस्वीर से मुझे पहचान लें। और ऐसा ही हुआ। कुछ ही क्षणों में एक आदमी जी मेरे मित्र से बहुत मिलता-जुलता था मेरे पास आया और हाथ जोड़कर नमस्ते किया। मुझे पहचानने में उसे कोई भी दिक्कत नहीं हुई क्योंकि गाड़ी से उतरनेवालों में मैं ही एक अकेला यूरोपीय था।

## IV

जब प्रेमनाथ और मैं दोनों स्टेशन के बाहर निकले, तो मैंने देखा कि स्टेशन के सामने एक तरफ़ दस-पंद्रह साइकिल रिक्शे खड़े हैं। दूसरी तरफ़ कुछ कारें भी थीं। मैंने पहले साइकिल रिक्शे नहीं देखे थे। जैसी ही रिक्शेवालों ने हमें देखा, कई 'रिक्शा, बाबू जी' चिल्लाते हुए हमारी ओर दौड़ पड़े। लेकिन प्रेमनाथ के पास गाड़ी थी, इसलिए इस बार हमें उनकी जरूरत नहीं थी। मैं उनके पीछे-पीछे कार की ओर चला, और उन्होंने कुली से मेरा सामान पीछे की सीट पर रखवाया। मुझे पता नहीं था कि कुली को कितने पैसे देने चाहिए। लेकिन प्रेमनाथ ने मेरी यह मुश्किल दूर कर दी। उन्होंने उसे हर बड़े बक्से के लिए चार आने दिए। चार आने पच्चीस नए पैसे होते हैं। मुझे लगता है कि यदि मैं अकेला होता, तो कुली ने मुझसे कहीं अधिक पैसे मांगे होते।

## V

प्रेमनाथ बकील थे। वह स्टेशन से करीब डेढ़ मील दूर इलाहाबाद की सिविल लाइन्स में एक कोठी में रहते थे। सिविल लाइन्स सीधी, चौड़ी सड़कों और बड़े बड़े मकानों वाला एक मुहल्ला है। हम कुछ ही मिनटों में प्रेमनाथ को कोठी पर पहुँच गए। उन्होंने सामने के दरवाजे के पास कार खड़ी कर दी। परिवार के एक बड़े नौकर ने मेरा सामान कार से उतारा। प्रेमनाथ और मैं दोनों उनके दफ्तर में गए। उनकी मेज़ कानून की किताबों से लदी हुई थी। हमने थोड़ी देर तक उनके छोटे भाई के बारे में, जो इंग्लैंड में डाक्टरी पढ़ रहा था, बातें कीं। तब उनका बेटा कमरे में आया। प्रेमनाथ ने उसका मुँहसे परिचय कराया। मैं उस शाम को प्रेमनाथ की पत्नी से नहीं मिला। मुझे जरा भी भूख नहीं थी, लेकिन प्यास बहुत लगी थी, इसलिए जब नौकर चाय और विस्कुट ले आया, तो मुझे बहुत खुशी हुई। थोड़ी देर बाद मैंने प्रेमनाथ से आज्ञा ली और बाहर बरामदे में आया जहाँ नौकर ने मेरे लिए एक चारपाई बिछा रखी थी। मैं लेट गया और थोड़ी ही देर में मुझे नींद आ गई।

## VI

इधर इलाहाबाद में नमी दिल्ली से बहुत ज्यादा थी। मैं इसलिए बहुत अच्छी तरह सो नहीं सका, हालाँकि चारपाई बहुत आरामदेह थी। दूसरे दिन मे बहुत जल्दी उठा, लेकिन प्रेमनाथ और उनके परिवार से जल्दी नहीं। ठंड ज्यादा हो गई थी। लेकिन नमी वैसी ही थी, और आकाश घने काले बादलों से बिलकुल ढका हुआ था। गुस्लखाने में जाकर मैं ठंडे पानी से नहाया। तबीयत फिर खुश हो गई। मैंने प्रेमनाथ को दफ्तर में अखबार पढ़ते हुए पाया। वह दो अखबार लेते थे, एक अंग्रेजी का और एक हिंदी का। हमने कुछ देर तक नए समाचारों के बारे में बातें कीं, और मैंने उनसे इलाहाबाद के जीवन के बारे में बहुत-से प्रश्न पूछे। इसके बाद नौकर ताश्ता ले आया—चाय, टोस्ट, और मेरे लिए एक फ्राइड अंडा। मैंने कई प्याले चाय पी।

## VII

प्रेमनाथ के बेटे ने सड़क पर जाकर रिक्शेवाले को बुलाया। रिक्शेवाले ने अपना रिक्शा कोठी के सामने लाकर खड़ा कर दिया। हम दोनों मेरा सामान रिक्शे में लादकर बैठ गए। मैंने प्रेमनाथ से बिदा ली, और अपने सत्कार के लिए उन्हें बहुत धन्यवाद दिया। हम यूनिवर्सिटी की ओर चल पड़े। वहाँ पहुँचने में करीब पंद्रह मिनट लगे। रास्ते में हम नेहरू परिवार के मकान के पास से गुजरे, जिसका नाम 'आनन्द भवन' है। यह एक बहुत शानदार और सुहावना बगीचावाला मकान है। कुछ मिनट बाद हमने यूनिवर्सिटी के क्षेत्र में प्रवेश किया, जिसके एक और अमरनाथ भा हास्टल है। मैं छे महीने के लिए इलाहाबाद रहने आया था ताकि मैं अपनी हिंदी सुधार सकूँ। साथ ही मेरा विचार यूनिवर्सिटी में हिंदी की कक्षाओं में बैठने का था। हम हास्टल में प्रवेश करके बार्डन के भवन पर पहुँचे।

## APPENDIX

### SOME RECENT WORKS ON ASPECTS OF HINDI GRAMMAR

- Gaeffke, P., *Untersuchungen zur Syntax des Hindi* (The Hague, 1967).
- Hacker, P., 'Zur Funktion einiger Hilfsverben im modernen Hindi', *Akademie der Wiss. u. der Lit.: Abh. der geistes- u. sozialwissenschaftl. Kl.*, 1958 (4) (Mainz/Wiesbaden, 1958). (Available as a separate monograph.)
- Hook, P. E., *The Compound Verb in Hindi*, University of Michigan Center for South and Southeast Asian Studies, 1974.
- Kachru, Y., *An Introduction to Hindi Syntax* (Urbana, 1967). With extensive bibliography of books and articles.)
- Kelkar, A. R., *Studies in Hindi-Urdu, I. Introduction and word phonology*, Deccan College Postgraduate and Research Institute (Poona, 1968).
- Lienhard, S., *Tempusgebrauch und Aktionsartenbildung in der modernen Hindi*, Stockholm Oriental Studies, 1 (Stockholm, 1961).
- Miltner, V., *Theory of Hindi syntax: descriptive, generative, transformational* (The Hague, 1970).

## VOCABULARIES

### HINDI-ENGLISH

Order of characters is as given on pp. xxii f.; note that vowels to which *anusvāra*, *caudrabindu* or following *visarga* are attached precede the same vowels written without any of these signs.

References are to discussions of particular grammatical points in Lessons I-XXVI and in Supplements I-III.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| अंग्रेज <i>aṅgrez</i> , m.f., Englishman,       | अनन्य <i>ananya</i> , unique XVI            |
| Englishwoman                                    | अनाज <i>anāj</i> , m., grain                |
| अंग्रेजी <i>aṅgrezī</i> , adj. and f., English; | अपना <i>apnā</i> , one's own X              |
| the English language                            | अपितु <i>apitu</i> , but rather 183         |
| अंडा <i>aṇḍā</i> , m., egg                      | अप्रैल <i>aprail</i> , m., April            |
| अंत <i>ant</i> , m., end                        | अफसोस <i>afsos</i> , m., regret             |
| के अंदर <i>ke andar</i> , inside                | अब <i>ab</i> , now                          |
| अंधा <i>andhā</i> , blind                       | अभी <i>abhi</i> , now V                     |
| अंधेरा <i>aṇḍherā</i> , m. and adj., dark-      | अभ्यास <i>abhyās</i> , m., practice; अभ्यास |
| ness; dark.                                     | करना (का) <i>abhyās karnā (kā)</i> , to     |
| अक्सर <i>aksar</i> , usually [अक्सर]            | practise                                    |
| अखबार <i>akhbār</i> , m., newspaper 198         | अमल <i>amal</i> , m., act, action; अमल करना |
| अगर <i>agar</i> , if XX                         | <i>amal karnā</i> , to act, to take action  |
| अगरचे <i>agarce</i> , although XX               | अमीर <i>amīr</i> , rich                     |
| अगला <i>aglā</i> , next VI                      | अरे <i>are</i> , oh! etc.                   |
| अचानक <i>acānak</i> , suddenly                  | अलमारी <i>almārī</i> , f., cupboard         |
| अच्छा <i>acchā</i> , good; adv., well; interj., | के अलावा <i>ke alāwā</i> , apart from XXIV  |
| all right, I see, etc. अच्छी तरह                | अवसर <i>avasar</i> , m., opportunity;       |
| (से) <i>acchī tarah (se)</i> , well VI          | occasion                                    |
| अत्याचार <i>atyācār</i> , m., excess, harsh     | असंतुष्ट <i>asantuṣṭ</i> , dissatisfied     |
| action  | असुविधा <i>asuvidhā</i> , f., inconvenience |
| अथवा <i>athvā</i> , or 182                      |   |
| अधिक <i>adhik</i> , more, many, much,           | आँख <i>āṁkh</i> , f., eye                   |
| etc. XVI  | आँगन <i>āṅgan</i> , m., courtyard           |
| अध्ययन <i>adhyayan</i> , m., study; अध्ययन      | आंदोलन <i>āṇḍolan</i> , m., movement (so-   |
| करना (का) <i>adhyayan karnā (kā)</i> ,          | cial, political)                            |
| to study  | आक्रमण <i>ākraman</i> , m., attack;         |
| अध्यापक <i>adhyāpak</i> , m., teacher 164       | आक्रमण करना (पर) <i>ākraman karnā</i>       |

(*par*), to attack  
 आग *āg*, f., fire  
 आगरा *āgrā*, m., Agra I  
 आज *āj*, today  
 आजकल *ājkal*, nowadays  
 आठ *āṭh* eight  
 आदमी *ādmi*, m., man  
 आधा *ādḥā*, half; a half XI  
 आधुनिक *ādḥunīk*, modern XVI  
 आना *ānā*, m., an anna  
 आना *ānā*, to come XVII  
 आप *āp*, you; he, she, t'ey; oneself  
 III XXV 165  
 आपस *āpas*, 'group' XXV  
 आपसी *āpsī*, mutual, reciprocal  
 XXV  
 आबादी *ābādī*, f., population  
 आबोहवा *ābohavā*, f., climate 182  
 आम *ām*, ordinary; आम तोर पर/से *ām taur par/se*, in general, usually  
 आम *ām*, m., mango  
 आरंभ *ārambh*, m., beginning; आरंभ करना *ārambh karnā*, to begin (trans.) X  
 आराम *ārām*, m., rest, comfort; आराम करना *ārām karnā*, to rest  
 आरामदेह *ārāmdēh*, comfortable  
 आवश्यक *āvaiśyak*, necessary XXI  
 आवश्यकता *āvaiśyaktā*, f., necessity  
 XIII  
 आवाज *āvāz*, f., voice  
 आशा *āśā*, f., hope IX  
 आसान *āsān*, easy, simple  
 आसानी *āsānī*, f., ease VI  
 आहिस्ता *āhistā*, आहिस्ते *āhiste*, adv., slowly  
 इंतजाम *intazām*, m., arrangement, arrangements  
 इंतजार करना (का) *intazār karnā (kā)*,

to wait (for) X  
 इंद्र *indra*, m., Indra  
 इकहरा *ikahrā*, thin 168  
 इतना *itnā*, as many, as much as this  
 XVI 166  
 इतवार *itvār*, m., Sunday XI  
 इतिहास *itihās*, m., history  
 इनकार *inkār*, m., refusal; इनकार करना (से) *inkār karnā (se)*, to refuse (to) XIX  
 इमारत *imarat*, f., building  
 इलाहाबाद *ilāhābād*, m., Allahabad  
 इसलिए *islie*, for this reason XX  
 इस्तेमाल *istemāl*, m., use; इस्तेमाल करना *istemāl karnā*, to use X  
 उगना *ugnā*, to grow (intr.)  
 उचित *ucit*, appropriate XXI  
 उच्च *ucc*, high XVI  
 उठना *uṭhnā*, to rise, to get up XVII  
 उठाना *uṭhānā*, to raise  
 उतरना *utarnā*, to descend, to get down  
 उतारना *utārnā*, to take down; to take off  
 उत्तर *uttar*, m., north  
 उत्तर *uttar*, m., answer; पत्र का उत्तर देना *patr kā uttar denā*, to answer a letter  
 उद्देश्य *uddeśya*, m., aim, intention  
 उपयुक्त *upayukt*, suitable  
 उल्लेख *ullekh*, m., mention; उल्लेख होना (का) *ullekh honā (kā)*, to be mentioned  
 ऊँचा *ūmcā*, high  
 ऊँट *ūmt*, m., camel  
 के ऊपर *ke ūpar*, above, on top of  
 ऋग्वेद *ṛgved*, m., Rigveda

एक *ek*, one; a, an I XI  
 एवं *evam*, and 182  
 ऐसा *aisā*, of this sort 167  
 ओढ़ना *oṛhnā*, to wrap round, to wrap about one  
 ओर *or*, f., direction, side; की ओर *kī or*, towards, to; की ओर देखना *kī or dekhnā*, to look at, to watch  
 ओर *aur*, and  
 ओर *aur* (stressed), extra, additional; adv., additionally VIII  
 XVI  
 ओरत *aurat*, f., woman  
 कटना *kaṭnā*, to be cut; to be cut off  
 कदाचित् *kadācit*, perhaps  
 कनिष्ठ *kaniṣṭh*, younger, youngest  
 XVI  
 कपड़ा *kaprā*, m., cloth; pl. clothes  
 कब *kab*, when? IV 181-2  
 कभी *kabhī*, sometimes; at some time  
 XXIII  
 कम *kam*, little (of quantity), few; adv., little; कम से कम *kam se kam*, at least 167  
 कमरा *kamrā*, m., room  
 कमाना *kamānā*, to earn XVIII  
 कमी *kamī*, f., want, shortage, deficiency  
 कमीज *gamīz*, f., shirt  
 करना *karnā*, to do V VII X XII  
 XXII  
 कराना *karānā*, to cause to be done  
 XVIII  
 के करीब *ke qarīb*, about, approximately  
 करोड़ *karor*, ten million XI

कल *kal*, yesterday, tomorrow  
 कलकत्ता *kalkattā*, m., Calcutta I  
 कलम *qalam*, f.m., pen  
 कवि *kavi*, m., poet  
 कविता *kavitā*, f., poem  
 कष्ट *kaṣṭ*, m., difficulty, inconvenience  
 कहना *kahnā*, to say, to tell IV XII  
 XVI  
 कहलाना *kahlānā*, to be called XVIII  
 कहाँ *kahān*, where? I 181  
 कहानी *kahānī*, f., story, short story  
 कहीं *kahin*, somewhere 180, 181-2  
 का *kā*, of II IX 178  
 कागज़ *kāgaz*, m., paper  
 काटना *kāṭnā*, to cut; to harvest; to bite (of animals)  
 कान *kān*, m., ear  
 कान्ता *kāntā*, f., Kāntā (girl's name)  
 कापी *kāpī*, f., exercise book  
 काफ़ी *kāfī*, f., coffee [कौफ़ी *kaufī*]  
 काफ़ी *kāfī*, adv., quite, fairly; adj., a fair amount of  
 काम *kām*, m., work; काम देखना (का) *kām dekhnā (kā)*, see to, attend to (one's work, etc.)  
 कार *kār*, f., car  
 कारण *kāraṇ*, m., cause; के कारण *ke kāraṇ*, because of XX  
 काला *kālā*, black  
 किन्तु *kintu*, but 182  
 कि *ki*, conj., that XVI XXII 183  
 184  
 कितना *kitnā*, how much? how many?  
 कितने दिन *kitne din*, how long?  
 कितना ही...क्यों न *kitnā hī...kyon na*, however much 181-2  
 किताब *kitāb*, f., book  
 किनारा *kinārā*, m., bank, edge  
 किला *qilā*, m., fort

किस्ती *kiṣṭī*, f., (small) boat  
 किसान *kiṣān*, m., farmer  
 कुआँ *kuān*, m., well I  
 कुछ *kuch*, something, some; कुछ समय  
*kuch samay*, for some time VIII  
 कुत्ता *kuttā*, m., dog 163  
 कुमारी *kumārī*, f., 'Miss' III  
 कुरता *kurtā*, m., collarless shirt  
 कुरसी *kursī*, f., chair  
 कूदना *kūdnā*, to leap, to jump  
 कृपया *kṛpayā*, kindly 179  
 कैसा *kaisā*, what sort of? आप कैसे हैं?  
*āp kaise hain?* how are you? III

## VI

कैसे *kaise*, how?  
 को *ko*, obl. case marker II V VI IX  
 XI XIII XV XVIII XIX  
 कोई *koī*, someone, some VIII  
 कोट *koṭ*, m., coat  
 कोश *koś*, m., dictionary  
 कोशिश *kośiś*, f., attempt; कोशिश  
 करना (की) *kośiś karnā (kī)*, to try  
 (to)  
 कौन *kaun*, who? which? कौन-सा  
*kaun-sā*, which one? VIII XXIV  
 क्या *kyā*, what? I VIII 181-2  
 क्यों *kyon*, why? IV 181-2  
 क्योंकि *kyonki*, because, since XX  
 क्लास *klās*, f.m., class (school)  
 क्षण *kṣaṇ*, m., moment, instant

खड़ा *kharā*, standing XXVI  
 खत्म *khatm*, m., end; खत्म करना  
*khatm karnā*, to finish (trans.) X  
 खबर *khabar*, f., news, information  
 खराब *kharāb*, bad; spoiled  
 खरीदना *kharīdnā*, to buy  
 खाना *khānā*, to eat; m., food; खाना  
 खाना *khānā khānā*, to have a meal  
 खिचना *khinchnā*, to be drawn, pulled

खिड़की *khirkī*, f., window  
 खिलना *khilnā*, to bloom  
 खिलाना *khilānā*, to cause to play  
 खिलाना *khilānā*, to feed XVIII  
 खिलाना *khilānā*, to cause to bloom  
 खींचना *khīncnā*, to pull  
 खुद *khud*, oneself XXV  
 खुलना *khulnā*, to open (intr.)  
 खुशी *khushi*, f., happiness, pleasure  
 IX  
 खेत *khet*, m., field  
 खोना *khonā*, to lose  
 खोलना *kholnā*, to open (tr.)

गंगा *gaṅgā*, f., River Ganges  
 गधा *gadā*, m., donkey, ass  
 गरम *garm*, hot; warm  
 गर्मियों *garmiyān*, f. pl., hot season  
 गरीब *garīb*, poor  
 गली *galī*, f., narrow street, alley  
 गाँव *gāmv*, m., village  
 गाड़ी *gārī*, f., vehicle  
 गाना *gānā*, to sing; m., a song  
 गाय *gāy*, f., cow  
 गिनना *ginnā*, to count  
 गिरना *girnā*, to fall  
 गिलास *gilās*, m., glass (for drinking)  
 गुरुवार *gurunār*, Thursday XI  
 गुंजना *gūnjanā*, to resound  
 गेंद *geṇd*, f., ball

घंटा *ghaṇṭā*, m., an hour; a bell 165  
 घंटी *ghaṇṭī*, f., a small bell 165  
 घटना *ghaṭnā*, f., incident, happen-  
 ing  
 घड़ा *gharā*, m., pot, jar  
 घड़ी *gharī*, f., watch; मेरी घड़ी में *merī*  
*gharī mein*, by my watch  
 घबराना *ghabrānā*, to be perturbed;  
 to make anxious XVIII

घर *ghar*, m., house, home; घर पर  
*ghar par*, at home  
 घास *ghās*, f., grass  
 घिरना *ghirnā*, to be surrounded  
 घुमाना *ghumānā*, to convey about; to  
 turn (tr.)  
 घुसना *ghusnā*, to creep, to slink  
 घूमना *ghūnnā*, to wander, to turn  
 घेरना *ghernā*, to surround  
 घोड़ा *ghoṛā*, m., horse

चतुर्थ *caturth*, fourth XI  
 चम्मच *cammach*, m., spoon  
 चरना *carṇā*, to graze  
 चलना *calnā*, to go, to move; चला  
 जाना *calā jānā*, to move along,  
 to go away XVII 173  
 चाचा *cācā*, m., paternal uncle I  
 चादर *cādar*, f., shawl; sheet  
 चाबी *cābī*, f., key  
 चाय *cāy*, f., tea  
 चार *cār*, four; के चारों ओर/तरफ *ke*  
*cāron or/taṛaf*, on all four sides of,  
 all around  
 चारा *cārā*, m., recourse, course of  
 action  
 चारा *cārā*, m., fodder  
 चाहना *cāhnā*, to wish VI XXI XXII  
 171 176

चाहिए *cāhie*, is wished, is necessary  
 XIII  
 चिट्ठी *ciṭṭhī*, f., letter  
 चिड़िया *ciṛiyā*, f., bird  
 चित्र *citr*, m., picture  
 चिल्लाना *cillānā*, to cry out, to shout  
 चीज *cīz*, f., thing  
 चुकना *cuknā*, to finish (intr.) XV  
 चुप *cup*, silent  
 चुँकि *cūnki*, because, since XX  
 चेहरा *chhrā*, m., face, features

चोट *coṭ*, f., blow, knock  
 चोर *cor*, m., thief  
 चौकना *caunīknā*, to start, to be  
 startled  
 चौथा *cauthā*, fourth  
 चौहरा *cauhrā*, fourfold 169

छक्का *chakkā*, m., squad, detach-  
 ment  
 छठा *chaṭhā*, sixth  
 छड़ी *charī*, f., stick, cane  
 छत *chat*, f., roof  
 छपना *chapnā*, to be printed  
 छह, छः, छै *chah, chaḥ, chai*, six  
 छात्र *chātr*, m., student; छात्रा *chātrā*,  
 f. 164  
 छापना *chāpnā*, to print  
 छिपाना *chipānā*, to hide (trans.)  
 छीलना *chīlnā*, to scrape, to pare  
 छुट्टी *chuffī*, f., holiday, leave, vaca-  
 tion  
 छुड़ाना *churānā*, to cause to leave  
 छुटना *chūṭnā*, to leave (intr.)  
 छुना *chūnā*, to touch V  
 छोटा *choṭā*, small; छोटा भाई *choṭā*  
*bhāī*, m., younger brother; छोटी  
 बहन *choṭī bahn*, f., younger sister  
 छोड़ना *choṛnā*, to leave, to abandon

ज़ख्मी *zakhmī*, wounded  
 जगह *jagah*, f., place  
 जगाना *jagānā*, to waken (tr.)  
 जपना *japnā*, to repeat mechanically  
 (a god's name, an incantation)  
 जब *jab*, (at the time) when; जब भी  
*jab bhī*, whenever; जब से *jab se*,  
 since (the time when); जब तक  
*jab tak*, as long as XIV 183  
 जमीन *zamīn*, f., land  
 जमीनदार *zamīndār*, m., zamindar,

landlord  
जय *jay*, f., victory; . . . की जय हो *ki jay ho*, long live . . .  
जरूर *zarūr*, certainly, by all means  
जरूरत *zarūrat*, f., necessity XIII  
जरूरी *zarūri*, necessary XXI  
जलना *jalnā*, to burn (intr.)  
जलवायु *jalvāyu*, m., climate  
जलाना *jalānā*, to burn (tr.)  
जल्द *jald*, f., haste, speed; जल्द (से) *jald (se)*, quickly; soon  
जल्दी *jaldī*, f., haste, speed; जल्दी (से) *jaldī (se)*, quickly; soon  
जवाब *javāb*, m., answer; चिट्ठी का जवाब देना *ciṭṭhī kā javāb denā*, to answer a letter  
जहाँ *jahām*, (the place) where; जहाँ भी *jahām bhi*, wherever XIV  
जहाज *jahāz*, m., ship  
जागना *jāgnā*, to be awake  
जानना *jānnā*, to know; जान पड़ना *jān pānā*, to seem 174  
जाना *jānā*, to go IV V XVII XIX XXII  
जायदाद *jāyādād*, f., estate (land)  
ज़िंदा *zindā*, alive II  
जितना *jitnā*, as many as, as much as; however many, much XIV  
ज़िला *zilā*, m., administrative district  
जिससे *jisse*, so that XX  
जी *jī*, m., soul, spirit; honorific particle III  
जीना *jīnā*, to live, to be alive V  
जीवन *jīvan*, m., life  
जेब *jeb*, f., pocket  
जो *jo*, the one who, which; जो कोई *jo koī*, whoever, whichever; जो कुछ *jo kuch*, whatever VIII XIV  
जैसा *jaisā*, of such a sort as; that which XIV XXV

जैसे *jaise*, as if; जैसे ही *jaise hī*, as soon as XIV XXI  
ज्ञान *jñān*, m., knowledge  
ज़्यादा *zyādā*, more; many; much, etc. XVI  
ज़्यादातर *zyādātar*, most (of); most commonly, very much XVI  
ज्येष्ठ *jyēsth*, older, eldest XVI  
ज्यों-ज्यों . . . त्यों-त्यों *jyōth-jyōth . . . tyōth-tyōth*, in proportion as . . . so  
ज्योंही *jyōthhī*, as soon as XX  
झगड़ना *jhagarnā*, to quarrel  
झगड़ा *jhagrā*, m., quarrel  
झुकाना *jhukānā*, to lower  
झूमना *jhūmnā*, to sway  
टिकट *ṭikaṭ*, m.f., stamp  
टूटना *ṭūṭnā*, to break (intr.)  
टोपी *ṭopī*, f., hat  
ठंड *ṭhaṇḍ*, f., cold; a cold  
ठंडा *ṭhaṇḍā*, cold; cool  
ठहरना *ṭhaharnā*, to remain, to stay, to wait  
ठीक *ṭhīk*, correct, all right, fine; ठीक वक्त पर *ṭhīk vaqt par*, at the correct time, punctually  
डर *ḍar*, m., fear  
डरना *ḍarnā*, to fear  
डाक *ḍāk*, f., post, postal service  
डाकखाना *ḍākkhānā*, m., post office  
डाकघर *ḍākghar*, m., post office  
डाकिया *ḍākiyā*, m., postman 166  
डाक्टर *ḍākṭar*, m., doctor  
डालना *ḍālānā*, to throw down, to pour XVII  
डिबिया *ḍibiyā*, f., small box I  
डेढ़ *ḍerh*, one and a half; one and a

half times XI  
दफ़ोड़ा *ḍyōṛḥā*, one and a half times the amount of 169  
दाई *dhāī*, two and a half; two and a half times XI  
ढूँढ़ना *ḍhūṛḍhṇā*, to look for, to search out  
तक *tak*, up to; as far as; until, by VI XIV 179  
तकलीफ़ *taklīf*, f., difficulty, inconvenience  
तथा *tathā*, and 182  
तथापि *tathāpi*, nevertheless XX  
तब *tab*, then XIV  
तबीयत *tabiyat*, f., state of health; disposition; तबीयत ठीक होना *tabiyat ṭhīk honā*, to be well  
तभी *tabhī*, at that (particular) time XXIII  
तमिल *tamil*, m., Tamil  
तरकारी *tarkārī*, f., curry  
तरक्की *taraqqī*, f., progress  
तरफ़ *taraf*, f., direction, side; की तरफ़ *ki taraf*, towards; to (see page 50) VI  
तरह *tarah*, f., way, manner; इस तरह (से) *is tarah (se)*, in this way VI  
तलाश *talāś*, f., search; तलाश करना *talāś karnā*, to look for X  
तस्वीर *tasvīr*, f., picture  
तांग *tāngā*, m., tonga  
ताकि *tāki*, so that XX  
ताज़ा *tāzā*, fresh  
तार *tār*, m., wire; telegram  
तारीख़ *tārīkh*, f., date XI  
ताला *tālā*, m., lock  
तालाब *tālāb*, m., tank  
तीखा *ṭīkhā*, sharp, piercing

तीन *ṭīn*, three  
तीसरा *ṭīsra*, third  
टुड़ाना *ṭuṛānā*, to break, to cause to be broken; to get change for (money)  
तुम *tum*, you III 165  
तू *tū*, you III  
तृतीय *ṭṛtiy*, third XI  
तेल *tel*, m., oil  
तेहरा *tehrā*, threefold 169  
तैयार *taiyār*, ready XIX  
तैयारियाँ *taiyāriyām*, f.pl., preparations; तैयारियाँ करना (की) *taiyāriyām karnā (ki)*, to prepare (for)  
तो *to*, conj., then; but, etc. XX XXIII  
तोड़ना *ṭorṇā*, to break (tr.)  
थोड़ा *thorā*, a little; थोड़ा-सा *thorā-sā*, a little XXIV 167-8  
दक्षिण *dakṣiṇ*, south  
दफ़ा *daḥfā*, f., time, occasion I  
दफ़्तर *daḥṭar*, m., office  
दबना *dabnā*, to be pressed down, restrained; दबे पाँव *dabe pāvu*, stealthily  
दरवाज़ा *darvāzā*, m., door; दरवाज़े पर *darvāze par*, at the door  
दर्जी *darzī*, m., tailor  
दर्द *dard*, m., pain  
दस *das*, ten  
दाढ़ी *dāḥhī*, f., beard  
दाता *dātā*, m., a giver I  
दादा *dādā*, m., paternal grandfather I  
दान *dān*, m., donation; दान देना *dān denā*, to donate XIX  
दाहिना *dāhinā*, right (hand); के दाहिनी (दाई) तरफ़ *ke dāhīnī (dāī) taraf*

- taraf*, on the right-hand side of VI  
 दिखना *dikhuā*, to be visible  
 दिखलाना *dikhlanā*, to show XVIII  
 दिखवाना *dikhvānā*, to cause to be shown (by) XVIII  
 दिखाई देना *dikhāi denā*, to be visible XII  
 दिखाना *dikhānā*, to show XVIII  
 दिन *din*, day; दिन भर *din bhar*, all day; दिनबदिन *dinbadin*, day by day; दिनों-दिन *dinon-din*, day by day VI XXII XXIII 179  
 दिल *dil*, m., heart  
 दिलचस्प *dilcasp*, interesting  
 दिलाना *dilānā*, to cause to be given  
 दिल्ली *dillī*, f., Delhi  
 दीखना *dikhuā*, to be visible  
 दीवार *dīvār*, f., wall  
 दुख *dukh*, m., grief  
 दुनिया *duniyā*, f., world I  
 दुपट्टा *dupaṭṭā*, m., shawl  
 दुकान *dukān*, f., shop [दुकान *dukān*]  
 दूध *dūdh*, m., milk  
 दूर *dūr*, f. and adj., distance; distant; कितनी दूर *kitnī dūr*, how far?  
 दूसरा *dūsarā*, second; other; दूसरी बार *dūsarī bār*, f., a second time, again  
 दुल्हा *dūlhā*, m., bridegroom 163  
 देखना *dekhnā*, to see; देख पड़ना *dekh parnā*, to be visible 174  
 देना *denā*, to give V VII XII XVII XXI  
 देर *der*, f., delay, lapse of time; पाँच मिनट देर से आना *pānc minaṭ der se ānā*, to come five minutes late  
 देवता *devatā*, m., deity I  
 देश *deś*, m., country  
 देशद्रोही *deśdrohī*, m., traitor  
 देहात *dehāt*, m., country(side)
- दो *do*, two  
 दोनों *donon*, both II  
 दोस्त *dost*, m., friend  
 दोहरा *doharā*, twofold; fat 169  
 दौड़ना *daūṛnā*, to run  
 द्वितीय *dvitīy* second XI  
 धन्यवाद *dhanyavād*, thank you VII  
 धीरे *dhīre*, slowly (often reduplicated)  
 धुलना *dhulnā*, to be washed  
 धुलवाना *dhulvānā*, to cause to be washed (by) XVIII  
 धुलाना *dhulānā*, to cause to be washed XVIII  
 धूप *dhūp*, f., sun's heat or light  
 धोना *dhonā*, to wash  
 धोबी *dhobī*, m., washerman
- न *na*, not V VII XIV 171 181 183  
 नज़र *nazar*, f., sight; glance  
 नदी *nadī*, f., river  
 नमस्कार *namaskār*, m., 'greetings'  
 नमस्ते *namaste*, m., 'greetings'  
 नया *nayā*, new  
 नहाना *nahānā*, to bathe XII  
 नहीं *nahīn*, no, not; नहीं तो *nahīn to*, otherwise III IV V XXIII 184  
 नाक *nāk*, f., nose  
 नाचना *nācūā*, to dance  
 नाम *nām*, m., name  
 नाला *nālā*, m., stream  
 नाश्ता *nāśtā*, m., breakfast, first light meal of the day  
 निकलना *nikalnā*, to emerge XVII  
 निकालना *nikālnā*, to eject; to take out, to extract; to drive out  
 निरपराध *niraparādh*, innocent, not guilty  
 निर्णय *nirṇay*, m., decision (between

- alternatives)  
 निश्चय *niścay*, m., decision (resolve)  
 नींद *nīnd*, f., sleep  
 नीचा *nīcā*, low; नीचा करना *nīcā karnā*, to lower; के नीचे *ke nīce*, below, underneath  
 नीला *nīlā*, blue; dark blue or green  
 ने *ne*, ppn. XII  
 नोट *not*, m., note (money)  
 नौ *nau*, nine
- पंक्ति *pankti*, f., line, row  
 पकड़ना *pakaṛnā*, to seize  
 पकना *paknā*, to ripen  
 पड़ना *paṛnā*, to fall; to be found; पड़ा *paṛā*, lying, placed flat IV XIII XVII  
 पड़ोसी *paṛosī*, m., neighbour  
 पढ़ना *parhnā*, to read; to study XII  
 पढ़ाना *parhānā*, to teach  
 पता *patā*, m., track, trace; address; मुझे पता नहीं (है) *mujhe patā nahīn (hai)*, I don't know, I have no idea  
 पति *pati*, m., husband  
 पत्ता *patṭā*, m., leaf  
 पत्थर *patthar*, m., stone  
 पत्नी *patnī*, f., wife  
 पत्र *patr*, m., letter  
 पन्ना *pannā*, m., page  
 परंतु *parantu*, but 182  
 परंपरा *paramparā*, f., tradition  
 पर *par*, on; पर का *par kā*, (the one) on VI 178  
 परलोक *parlok*, m., the other world; परलोक सिधारना *parlok sidhārnā*, to depart for the next world  
 परसों *parson*, the day before yesterday, the day after tomorrow
- परस्पर *paraspar*, mutual(ly), reciprocal(ly) XXV  
 परिचय *paricay*, m., acquaintance  
 परेशान (से) *paraśān (se)*, troubled (by)  
 पश्चिम *paścim*, m., west  
 पसंद आना (को) *pasand ānā (ko)*, to be pleasing (to)  
 पहचानना *pahcānnā*, to recognize  
 पहनना *pahnnā*, to put on (clothes); पहन रखना *pahn rakhnā*, to have on, to be wearing XVII XXVI  
 पहर *pahr*, m., 'a watch of the day or night' XI  
 पहला *pahlā*, first  
 के/से पहले *ke/se pahle*, before (time) VI  
 पहाड़ *pahār*, m., mountain, hill  
 पहुँचना *pahunchnā*, to arrive XVII  
 पाँच *pānc*, five; पाँचवाँ *pāncvān*, fifth  
 पाँव *pānv*, m., foot, leg  
 पाजामा *pājāmā*, m., light cotton trousers  
 पाना *pānā*, to get, to obtain; to find XVII XXI  
 पानी *pānī*, m., water  
 पार करना *pār karnā*, to cross (trans.)  
 के पास *ke pās*, beside; near; in the possession of VI IX  
 पिंजरा *piṅjārā*, m., cage  
 पिघलना *piḡhālūā*, to melt (intr.)  
 पिछला *pichlā*, last  
 पिटना *piṭnā*, to be beaten  
 पिता *pitā*, m., father I  
 पिलाना *pilānā*, to give to drink XVIII  
 के पीछे *ke piche*, behind; पीछे से *piche se*, from behind  
 पीटना *piṭna*, to beat  
 पीना *pīnā*, to drink V VII  
 पुत्र *putr*, m., son



पुरस्कार *puraskār*, m., reward  
 पुल *pul*, m., bridge  
 पुलिस *pulis*, f., police  
 पुस्तक *pustak*, f., book  
 पुस्तकालय *pustakālay*, m., library  
 पूछना *pūchnā*, to ask, to inquire IV  
 XII XVI  
 पूर्णतः *pūrṇtaḥ*, fully 179  
 पूर्णतया *pūrṇtayā*, fully 179  
 पूर्व *pūrv*, m., east  
 पूर्वज *pūrvaj*, m., ancestor  
 पेंसिल *pemsil*, f., pencil  
 पेड़ *per*, m., tree  
 पैदल *paidal*, on foot; पैदल चलनेवाला  
*paidal calnevalā*, a pedestrian  
 पैदा *paidā*, born, produced; पैदा करना  
*paidā karnā*, to produce; to give  
 birth to X  
 पैदावार *paidāvār*, f., produce  
 पैसा *paisā*, m., pice; money (often  
 pl.)  
 पौन *paun*, three-quarters of XI  
 पौना *paunā*, three-quarters the a-  
 mount of 169  
 पौने *paune*, less a quarter XI  
 प्यार *pyār*, m., love VI  
 प्याला *pyālā*, m., cup  
 प्यास *pyās*, f., thirst  
 प्रकार *prakār*, m., type, kind; सब  
 प्रकार से *sab prakār se*, in every way  
 प्रगति *pragati*, f., progress  
 प्रतीक्षा करना (की) *pratīkṣā karnā (ki)*,  
 to wait (for) X  
 प्रथम *pratham*, first XI  
 प्रयत्न *prayatn*, m., attempt; प्रयत्न  
 करना (का) *prayatn karnā (kā)*, to  
 try (to)  
 प्रयोग *prayog*, m., use; प्रयोग करना  
 (का) *prayog karnā (kā)*, to use  
 प्रवेश *praveś*, m., entry, entrance;

प्रवेश करना (में) *praveś karnā (meṁ)*,  
 to enter  
 प्रशंसा *praśamsā*, f., praise; प्रशंसा  
 करना (की) *praśamsā karnā (ki)*,  
 to praise X  
 प्रश्न *praśn*, m., question  
 प्रसन्नता *prasannatā*, f., pleasure IX  
 प्रस्ताव *prastāv*, m., suggestion  
 प्रस्तुत *prastut*, ready, prepared XIX  
 प्राप्त *prāpt*, obtained; प्राप्त करना  
*prāpt karnā*, to obtain X  
 प्रिय *priy*, dear, beloved XVI  
 प्रेम *prem*, m., love, affection

फटना *phaṭnā*, to tear (intr.)  
 फर्ज *farz*, m., duty  
 फर्श *farś*, m., floor  
 फसल *fasl*, f., crop  
 फाड़ना *phāṛnā*, to tear (tr.)  
 फिर *phir*, again, then, next; फिर भी  
*phir bhī*, nevertheless XX  
 फूटना *phūṭnā*, to burst (intr.)  
 फूल *phūl*, m., flower  
 फेल होना *fel honā*, to fail (an exami-  
 nation)  
 फोड़ना *phoṛnā*, to burst (trans.)  
 फोन *fon*, m., telephone; मैं उसे फोन  
 करूँगा *maim use fon karūṅgā*, I  
 shall phone him; मेरा फोन आया  
*merā fon āyā*, someone telephoned  
 me

बंद *band*, closed  
 बंदर *bandar*, m., monkey 163  
 बँधना *bandhnā*, to be tied, to be  
 bound  
 बंबई *bambāi*, f., Bombay  
 के बगैर *ke bagair*, without XXIV  
 बचना *bacnā*, to be safe, saved  
 बचाना *bacānā*, to save, to rescue

बच्चा *baccā*, m., child; baby  
 के बजाय *ke bajāy*, instead of XXIV  
 बजे *baje*, o'clock X  
 बड़ा *barā*, large  
 बढ़ना *barhnā*, to advance; to rise  
 बढ़िया *barhiyā*, good, nice II  
 बतलाना *batlānā*, to relate, to inform  
 XVIII  
 बताना (को) *batānā (ko)*, to tell, to  
 inform (one) XVII  
 बदतर *badtar*, worse XVI  
 बदलना *badalnā*, to change XVIII  
 बधाई *badhāi*, f., congratulations  
 बनना *bannā*, to be made; to become  
 I 67  
 बनाना *banānā*, to make, to construct  
 बनारस *banāras*, m., Banaras  
 बरस *baras*, m., year  
 बरसात *barsāt*, f., rainy season  
 बर्फ *barf*, f., ice; snow  
 बलिष्ठ *balisṭh*, strong, sturdy XVI  
 बल्कि *balki*, but rather 183  
 बल्ला *ballā*, m., pole  
 बहन *bahn*, f., sister  
 बहुत *bahut*, adj. and adv., much,  
 many; very; बहुत दिनों से *bahut  
 dinon se*, for (i.e. since) a long  
 time; बहुत-सा *bahut-sā*, much XVI  
 XXIV  
 बाँधना *bāndhnā*, to tie, to bind  
 बाँकी *bāqī*, remaining, left over  
 बाज़ार *bāzār*, m., bazaar; बाज़ार जाना  
*bāzār jānā*, to go to the bazaar,  
 to go shopping  
 बात *bāt*, f., thing said; matter, con-  
 cern; बात करना (से), बातें करना  
 (से) *bāt (se) karnā (se)*, to talk  
 (to) I 66  
 के बाद *ke bād*, after; बाद में *bād meṁ*,  
 afterwards VI

बाध्य *bādhyā*, compelled; बाध्य करना  
 (पर, के लिए) *bādhyā karnā (par,  
 ke lie)*, to compel (to)  
 बायाँ *bāyām*, left (hand); के बाईं तरफ  
*ke bāiṁ taraf*, on the left hand  
 side of II VI  
 बार *bār*, f., time, occasion; एक बार  
*ek bār*, once 166  
 बारिश *bāriś*, f., rain; बारिश होना *bāriś  
 honā*, to rain  
 के बारे में *ke bāre meṁ*, concerning  
 के बावजूद *ke bāvajūd*, in spite of  
 के/से बाहर *ke/se bāhar*, outside VI  
 बिकना *biknā*, to be sold  
 बिखरना *bikharnā*, to be scattered  
 बिखेरना *bikhernā*, to scatter  
 बिछाना *bichānā*, to spread (trans.)  
 बिठाना *bīṭhānā*, to give a seat XVII  
 बिताना *bitānā*, to spend (time)  
 बिदा करना *bidā karnā*, to dispatch;  
 to see off X  
 बिदा होना *bidā honā*, to depart  
 के बिना *ke binā*, without XXIV  
 बिल *bil*, m., bill (account)  
 बिल्कुल *bilkul*, completely, quite  
 बिस्तर *bistar*, m., bedding  
 बीतना *bitnā*, to pass by (of time)  
 बीसी *bīsī*, f., a score XI  
 बुधवार *budhvār*, m., Wednesday XI  
 बुनियादी *buniyādī*, basic; elementary  
 बुरा *burā*, bad, wicked  
 बुराई *burāi*, f., badness, wickedness;  
 बुराई करना (की) *burāi karnā (ki)*,  
 to slander  
 बुलाना *bulānā*, to call, to summon;  
 to invite  
 बूढ़ा *būṛhā*, old (of persons); m., old  
 man  
 बृहस्पतिवार *bṛhaspativār*, m., Thurs-  
 day XI



बेचना *becnā*, to sell  
 बेचारा *becārā*, adj. helpless, 'poor'  
 बेज़ार *bezār*, displeased, bored  
 बेटा *beṭā*, m., son  
 बेटी *beṭī*, f., daughter  
 बेफ़िक्री *befikrī*, f., carefreeness  
 बेवकूफ़ *bevaqūf*, stupid  
 बेवकूफी *bevaqūfī*, f., stupidity  
 बेहतर *behtar*, better XVI  
 बेहतरा *behtarā*, best, choice XVI  
 बैठना *baiṭhnā*, to sit; बैठा *baiṭhā*, seated, sitting IV XVII  
 बैल *bail*, m., ox, bullock  
 बोलना *bolnā*, to speak, to talk IV XII

भरना *bharnā*, to be filled; to fill XVIII 179

भाई *bhāī*, m., brother  
 भाग *bhāg*, m., part  
 भागना *bhāgnā*, to run away, to flee  
 भारत *bhārat*, m., India  
 भारतवर्ष *bhāratvarṣ*, m., India  
 भारतीय *bhārtīy*, adj. and m.f., Indian

भालू *bhālū*, m., bear  
 भाषण *bhāṣaṇ*, m., speech, lecture  
 भाषा *bhāṣā*, f., language  
 भिखारी *bhikhārī*, m., beggar  
 भिगोना *bhigonā*, to make wet XVIII  
 भी *bhī*, emphatic enclitic V 180  
 भीगना *bhignā*, to be wet  
 भीगा *bhīgā*, wet  
 भूख *bhūkh*, f., hunger  
 भूल *bhūl*, f., error  
 भूलना *bhūlnā*, to forget XII  
 भेजना *bhejnā*, to send

मंगलवार *maṅgalvār*, m., Tuesday XI  
 मंत्र *mantra*, m., incantation

मन्त्री *mantrī*, m., secretary, minister  
 मंदिर *mandir*, m., temple  
 मकान *makān*, m., house  
 मगर *maḡar*, but 182  
 मच्छड़दानी *macchāḍdānī*, f., mosquito net

मजबूत *mazbūt*, strong (of objects)  
 मजबूर *majbūr*, compelled; मजबूर करना (पर) *majbūr karnā (par)*, to compel (to)

मज़ाक़ *mazāq*, m., joke; मज़ाक़ करना *mazāq karnā*, to joke

मत *mat*, negative particle VII

मतलब *matlab*, m., intention, purpose

मदद *madad*, f., help; मदद देना (को) *madad denā (ko)*, to help

मन *man*, m., a maund (= 40 seers)

मन *man*, m., mind; heart

मना *manā* (invariable), forbidden

मनुष्य *manuṣya*, m., man, human being

मरना *marnā*, to die

मशीन *maṣīn*, f., machine

महंगा *mahāṅgā*, expensive

महल *mahl*, m., palace

महीना *mahīnā*, m., month VI

माँ *māṁ*, f., mother

माँग *māṅg*, f., request

माता *mātā*, f., mother; माता-पिता

*mātā-pitā*, m.pl., parents

मादा *mādā*, female (adj.) II

मातों *māṁṁ*, as if

मारना *mārnā*, to beat; to kill

के मारे *ke māre*, because of XXV

माल *māl*, m., goods, belongings

मालूम *mālūm*, known; मुझे मालूम

है *mujhe mālūm hai*, I know; मुझे

मालूम होता है *mujhe mālūm hotā*

*hai*, it seems to me IX

मिठाई *miṭhāī*, f., sweet

मित्र *mitr*, m., friend

मिनट *minat*, m., minute

मिर्च *mirch*, f., pepper; chilli

मिलना *milnā*, to accue; to be available; to meet; to resemble;

मिलाना (से) *milnā (se)*, to bring together; to introduce (to), to

cause to meet (with) XV

मिस्त्री *mistrī*, m., mechanic, (skilled) workman

मुनासिब *munāsib*, appropriate XXI

मुल्ज़िम *mulzim*, m., accused person

मुलाक़ात *mulāqāt*, f., meeting, encounter; मुलाक़ात होना (से) *mulāqāt*

*honā (se)*, to meet

मुश्किल *muṣkil*, f. and adj., difficulty; difficult; मुश्किल से *muṣkil*

*se*, with difficulty VI

मुसकराना *muskarānā*, to smile XII

मुसकराहट *muskarāhat*, f., a smile

मुहल्ला *muhallā*, m., suburb

में *meṁ*, in; से *se* *meṁ se*, from among

VI XI 178

मेज़ *mez*, f., table

मेला *melā*, m., festival, fair; माघ मेला

*māgh melā*, bathing festival held

at Allahabad in the month of

Māgh

मेहनत *mehnat*, f., labour, effort

मेहरबानी *mehrbānī*, f., kindness VII

मैं *main*, I

मैला *mailā*, dirty

मोटर *moṭar*, f., car

मोल लेना *mol lenā*, to buy

मौसम *mausam*, m., season, weather

यदि *yadi*, if XX

यद्यपि *yadyapi*, although XX

यमुना *yamunā*, f., River Jumna

यह *yah*, this II III 171

यहाँ *yahāṁ*, here

यहीं *yahīṁ*, at this (particular) place

XXIII

या *yā*, or 182 183

याद *yād*, f., memory XIX

यूनिवर्सिटी *yūniversitī*, f., university

यूरोपीय *yūropīy*, adj. and m.f., European

योजना *yojanā*, f., scheme, plan;

पंचवर्षीय योजना *pañcvarṣīy yojanā*, five-year plan

रखना *rakhnā*, to put, to place; to keep XVII XXI

रचना *racnā*, to create, to produce

रवाना करना *ravānā karnā*, to dis-

patch; to see off X

रवाना होना *ravānā honā*, to depart X

रविवार *rauvār*, m., Sunday XI

रस्ता *rassā*, m., rope

रस्सी *rassī*, f., rope; string 165

रहना *rahnā*, to stay, to remain, to live XXII 171

राजधानी *rājdhānī*, f., capital

राजपूत *rājput*, m. and adj., Rajput

राजा *rājā*, m., rajah I

रात *rāt*, f., night VI

राधा *rādhā*, f., Rādhā (girl's name)

रामचरितमानस *rāmcāritmānas*, m., name of a work by Tulsīdās

राष्ट्र *rāṣṭra*, m., state, nation

राष्ट्रभाषा *rāṣṭrabhāṣā*, f., national language

रास्ता *rāstā*, m., road, street

रिक्शा *rikṣā*, m., rickshaw

रुकना *ruknā*, to stop (intr.)

रुपया *rupayā*, m., rupee; money (usually pl.)

रुलाना *rulānā*, to make weep

रूप *rūp*, m., form; के रूप में *ke rūp meṁ*,

- as, in the capacity of; ... रूप से  
... रूप से, adv. marker 179  
रोकना *roknā*, to stop, to check  
रोज *roz*, m., day; adv., daily  
रोटी *roṭī*, f., bread (chapatti)  
रोना *ronā*, to cry, to weep XII  
रेल *rel*, f., railway train; रेल से *rel se*,  
by train  
रेस्तरेंट *resṭarant*, m., restaurant
- लंदन *landan*, m., London  
लंबा *lambā*, long; tall  
लकड़ी *lakṛī*, f., wood  
लगना *lagnā*, to be applied, attached,  
etc.; to begin XXI  
लजाना *lajānā*, to be ashamed  
XVIII  
लड़का *laṛkā*, m., boy  
लड़की *laṛkī*, f., girl  
लड़ना *laṛnā*, to fight; to quarrel  
लड़ाई *laṛāī*, f., war  
लता *latā*, f., creeper  
लदना *ladnā*, to be laden  
लदवाना *ladvānā*, to cause to be  
loaded (by) XVIII  
लदाना *ladānā*, to cause to be laden  
XVIII  
लाइब्रेरी *lāibrerī*, f., library  
लाख *lākh*, one hundred thousand XI  
लाठी *lāṭhī*, f., staff  
लादना *lādānā*, to load  
लाना *lānā*, to bring XII  
लायक *lāyaq*, suitable (for, के *ke*);  
देखने लायक *dekhne lāyaq*, worth  
seeing  
लाल *lāl*, red  
के लिए *ke lie*, for XIX  
लिखना *likhnā*, to write  
लिटाना *liṭānā*, to put lying down  
XVIII
- लिखाना *livānā*, to cause to be taken,  
brought  
लुटना *luṭnā*, to be looted  
लू *lū*, f., a hot dusty wind which  
blows in north India in May and  
June; लू लगना (को) *lū lagnā (ko)*,  
to get sunstroke  
लूटना *lūṭnā*, to loot  
ले आना *le ānā*, to bring VII XII  
ले चलना *le calnā*, to take away VII  
ले जाना *le jānā*, to take away VII  
XII  
लेकिन *lekin*, but XX 171 182  
लेख *lekh*, m., essay, article  
लेटना *leṭnā*, to lie down  
लेना *lenā*, to take V VII XVII  
लोग *log*, m. pl., people; सब लोग *sab*  
*log*, everyone 165  
लौटना *lauṭnā*, to return
- वकील *vakīl*, m., lawyer  
वक्त *vaqt*, m., time  
वजह *vajah*, f., reason; इस वजह से *for*  
*this reason* XX  
वरन् *varan*, but rather 183  
वरना *varnā*, otherwise 184  
वर्ष *varṣ*, m., year  
वह *vah*, that II III 171  
वहाँ *vahān*, there  
वहीं *vahīn*, at that (particular)  
place XXIII  
वा *vā*, or 182  
वाक्य *vākya*, m., sentence  
वापस करना *vāpaś karnā*, to give back  
X  
-वाला *-vālā* XXV  
विचार *vicār*, m., thought; opinion  
विजय *viṣay*, f., victory, triumph  
विदेशी *videśī*, m.f. and adj., foreign-  
er; foreign

- विद्यार्थी *vidyārthī*, m., student 164  
विशेष *viśeṣ*, particular; विशेष रूप से  
*viśeṣ rūp se*, in particular 179  
विश्वविद्यालय *viśvavidyālay*, m., uni-  
versity  
विश्वास *viśvās*, m., faith, confidence;  
विश्वास करना (पर) *viśvās karnā*  
(*par*), to believe, to believe to be  
true  
विषय *viṣay*, m., subject, matter,  
topic  
वैसा *vaisā*, of that sort  
वैसे *vaise*, adv., well (introductory);  
वैसे ही *vaise hī*, merely, casually  
167  
व्यस्त *vyast*, busy
- शकल *śakl*, f., face, features; form  
शत्रु *śatru*, m., enemy  
शनिवार *śanivār*, m., Saturday XI  
शब्द *śabd*, m., word  
शहर *śahr*, m., city, town  
शाम *śām*, f., evening, late afternoon  
VI XI  
शायद *śāyad*, perhaps; शायद ही *śāyad*  
*hī*, scarcely ever V XXI 171  
शुक्रवार *śukravār*, m., Friday XI  
शुक्रिया *śukriyā*, thank you VII  
शुरू करना *śurū karnā*, to begin  
(trans.) X 176  
शेर *śer*, m., tiger; lion  
शोर *śor*, m., noise  
श्री *śrī*, m., 'Mr.' III  
श्रीमती *śrīmatī*, f., 'Mrs.' III  
श्रेष्ठ *śreṣṭh*, very good, best XVI
- सङ्घटन *saḍyantra*, m., plot
- संकोच *saṅkoc*, m., shyness, em-  
barrassment
- संतुष्ट *santuṣṭ*, satisfied  
संदूक *sandūq*, m., box  
संबंध *sambandh*, m., connection, re-  
lationship  
संभव *sambhav*, possible, probable  
XXI  
संभवतः *sambhavataḥ*, probably, pos-  
sibly XXI 179  
संयोग *saṁyog*, m., chance; संयोग से  
*saṁyog se*, by chance  
संस्कृति *saṁskṛti*, f., culture  
सकना *saknā*, to be able to ... XV  
सच *sac*, m., truth  
सड़क *sarak*, f., street, road  
सफल *saphal*, successful  
सफ़ेद *safed*, white  
सब *sab*, all; सब किताबें *sab kitābēn*, all  
the books  
सभ्यता *sabhyatā*, f., civilization  
समझना *samajhnā*, to understand  
XII  
समझाना *samjhnānā*, to explain  
समय *samay*, m., time; उस समय *us*  
*samay*, at that time  
समाचार *samācār*, m. (sg. and pl.),  
news; समाचारपत्र *samācārpatr*, m.,  
newspaper  
समाप्त *samāpt*, finished; समाप्त करना  
*samāpt karnā*, to finish (trans.)  
समुद्र *samudr*, m., sea, ocean  
समेटना *sameṭnā*, to collect together  
(tr.)  
सरीखा *sarikhā*, like XXIV  
सर्दियाँ *sardiyān*, f. pl., cold season  
सर्वश्रेष्ठ *sarvaśreṣṭh*, foremost, supreme  
XVI  
सवा *savā*, plus a quarter; one and a  
quarter times XI  
सवाया *savāyā*, one and a quarter  
times the amount of 169

सवारी *savārī*, f., passenger; vehicle; fare  
 सवाल *savāl*, m., question  
 सवेरा *saverā*, m., morning VI  
 सस्ता *sastā*, cheap  
 सहनशील *sahnshīl*, tolerant  
 सहसा *sahsā*, suddenly  
 सहस्र *sahasra*, a thousand XI  
 सहायता *sahāyātā*, f., help  
 सा *sā*, 'similar to' XXIV  
 साड़ी *sāṛī*, f., sari  
 साढ़े *sāṛhe*, plus a half XI  
 सात *sāt*, seven  
 के साथ *ke sāth*, together with  
 साधु *sādhu*, m., holy man  
 साफ़ *sāf*, clean; clear  
 के सामने *ke sāmne*, in front of  
 सामान *sāmān*, m., belongings, goods, things  
 सारा *sārā*, entire, all; सारा दिन *sārā din*, all day  
 साल *sāl*, m., year VI  
 सावधान *sāvdhān*, careful  
 सावधानी *sāvdhānī*, f., care; सावधानी से *sāvdhānī se*, carefully  
 सिखलाना *sikhlanā*, to teach XVIII  
 सिखाना *sikhānā*, to teach  
 सिग्रेट *sigret*, f.m., cigarette  
 सिपाही *sipāhī*, m., soldier  
 सिमटना *simatnā*, to contract  
 सिर *sir*, m., head  
 सिर्फ *sirf*, only  
 के सिवा(य) *ke sivā(y)*, except for XXIV  
 सिसकना *sisaknā*, to sob  
 सीखना *sikhnā*, to learn 176  
 सीट *sīt*, f., seat; नीचे की सीट *nīche ki sīt*, lower seat  
 सीता *sītā*, f., Sītā (girl's name)  
 सीधा *sīdhā*, direct, straight VI

सीना *sīnā*, to sew V  
 सुंदर *sundar*, beautiful  
 सुनना *sunnā*, to hear; सुन पड़ना *sun pāṛnā*, to be audible 174  
 सुनाई देना *sunāi denā*, to be audible XII  
 सुनाना *sunānā*, to tell, to relate  
 मुनि *sunie*, excuse me! (in attracting attention)  
 सुबह *subah*, f., morning VI XI  
 सुलाना *sulānā*, to put to sleep, to rock to sleep  
 मुश्री *suśrī*, f., 'Miss' III  
 सुस्ताना *sustānā*, to rest XVIII  
 सूचना *sūcnā*, f., information  
 सूरज *sūraj*, m., sun  
 सूरत *sūrat*, f., face, form  
 से *se*, from; by, with; to; than IV VI XVI XVIII  
 सेर *ser*, m., a seer (approx. 1 kg.)  
 सेवा *sevā*, f., service  
 सैकड़ *saikṛā*, an amount of a hundred, a century XI  
 सोचना *socnā*, to think  
 सोना *sonā*, to sleep V XII  
 सोमवार *somvār*, m., Monday XI  
 स्कूल *skūl*, m., school; स्कूल में *skūl men*, at school  
 स्टेशन *stēšan*, m., station  
 स्त्री *strī*, f., woman  
 स्थिति *sthiti*, f., position I  
 स्नान *snān*, m., bathing; स्नान करना *snān karnā*, to bathe  
 स्याही *syāhī*, f., ink  
 स्वयं *svayam*, oneself XXV  
 स्वाभाविक *svābhāvīk*, natural  
 स्वीकार *svikār*, m., acceptance; स्वीकार करना *svikār karnā*, to accept

हँसना *hanṣnā*, to laugh; to smile XII  
 हजार *hazār*, a thousand XI  
 हटना *haṭnā*, to move away, to withdraw  
 हफ्ता *haftā*, m., week VI  
 हम *ham*, we 165  
 हमेशा *hameśā*, always  
 हर *har*, each, every; हर (एक) दिन *har (ek) din*, every day; हर कोई *har koī*, everyone; हर जगह *har jagah*, everywhere  
 हरा *harā*, green  
 हवा *havā*, f., air, wind I  
 हवाई जहाज *havāi jahāz*, m., aeroplane  
 हवाई पत्र *havāi patr*, m., air letter  
 हाँ *hāh*, yes III

हाथ *hāth*, m., hand  
 हाथी *hāthī*, m., elephant 163  
 हाल *hāl*, m., state, condition  
 हालाँकि *hālānki*, although XX  
 हिंदी *hindī*, f., Hindi  
 हिंदुस्तान *hindustān*, m., India  
 हिंदू *hindū*, m. and adj., Hindu  
 हिरण *hiraṇ*, m., deer  
 हिस्सा *hissā*, m., part  
 ही *hī*, emphatic enclitic V XXIII  
 हैं *hain*, are  
 है *hai*, is  
 हुआ *huā*, became; adv., ago IV XXVI 171  
 होकर *hokar*, 'having been'; via VII  
 होना *honā*, to be, to become IV V XIII

## ENGLISH-HINDI

a, an, एक *ek*  
 abandon, to, छोड़ना *chāṛnā*  
 able to, to be, सकना *saknā*  
 about, (approximately) के करीब *ke qarīb*; (concerning) के बारे में *ke bāre men*  
 above, के ऊपर *ke ūpar*  
 accept, to, स्वीकार करना *svikār karnā*; to accept (a statement, etc.) मानना *mānnā*  
 accompany, to, हो लेना *ho lenā*  
 accrue, to, मिलना *milnā*  
 accused person, मुलजिम *mulzim*, m.  
 acquaintance, परिचय *paricay*, m.  
 act, to, धमल करना *amal karnā*  
 additional, और *aur*  
 address, पता *patā*, m.

advance, to, बढ़ना *bāṛhā*  
 aeroplane, हवाई जहाज *havāi jahāz*, m.  
 affection, प्रेम *prem*, m.  
 after, के बाद *ke bād*  
 afternoon, दो पहर के बाद *do pahr ke bād* (adv.); late afternoon, शाम *śām*, f.  
 again, फिर *phir*  
 ago, हुआ *huā*  
 Agra, आगरा *āgrā*, m.  
 aim (intention), उद्देश्य *uddeśya*, m.  
 air, हवा *havā*, f.; air-letter, हवाई पत्र *havāi patr*, m.  
 all, सब *sab*; (entire) सारा *sārā*; all the books, सब किताबें *sab kitābēn*;  
 all around (sthg.), चारों ओर (के)

- cārom* or (*ke*); all right (= I see),  
अच्छा *acchā*  
Allahabad, इलाहाबाद *ilāhābād*, m.  
alley, गली *galī*, f.  
allow, to, -ने देना *-ne denā*  
although, अगरचे *agarce*; यद्यपि *yadyapi*  
always, हमेशा *hameshā*  
am, हूँ *hūm*  
ancestor, पूर्वज *pūroaj*, m.  
and, और *aur*; etc. (p. 182)  
auna, आना *ānā*, m.  
answer, जवाब *javāb*, m.; to answer  
(a person), जवाब देना (को) *javāb denā (ko)*; (a letter), जवाब देना  
(का) *javāb denā (kā)*  
apart from, के अलावा *ke alāwā*  
appropriate, उचित *ucit*; मुनासिब *munāsib*  
approximately, (के) करीब (*ke*) *qarīb*;  
(के) लगभग (*ke*) *lagbhag*  
April, अप्रैल *aprail*, m.  
are, हैं *haih*  
arrangement(s), इंतजाम *intazām*, m.  
arrive, to, पहुँचना *pahunchnā*  
article (essay), लेख *lekh*, m.  
as, (in the capacity of) के रूप में *ke rūp mein*; as if, जैसे *jaise*  
ask, to (= inquire), पूछना *pūchnā*  
ass, गधा *gadhā*, m.  
attack, आक्रमण *ākraman*, m.; to  
attack, आक्रमण करना (पर) *ākra-  
man karnā (par)*  
attempt, प्रयत्न *prayatn*, m.; to  
attempt, प्रयत्न करना (का) *prayatn  
karnā (kā)*  
audible, to be, सुनाई देना *sunāi denā*  
available, to be, मिलना *milnā*; प्राप्त  
होना *prāpt honā*  
awake, to be, जागना *jāgnā*  
baby, बच्चा *baccā*, m.  
bad, खराब *kharāb*; (wicked) बुरा  
*burā*  
badness (wickedness), बुराई *burāi*, f.  
ball, गेंद *gerhd*, f.  
Banaras, बनारस *banāras*, m.  
bank, किनारा *kinārā*, m.  
basic, बुनियादी *buniyādī*  
bathe, to, नहाना *nahānā*; स्नान करना  
*snān karnā*  
bazaar, बाज़ार *bāzār*, m.  
bear, भालू *bhālū*, m.  
beard, दाढ़ी *dārhī*, f.  
beat, to मारना *mārnā*; पीटना *piṭnā*  
beautiful, सुंदर *sundar*  
because, चूँकि *cūmki*; क्योंकि *kyomki*;  
because of (impelled by) के मारे  
*ke mārē*  
become, to, होना *honā*; बनना *bannā*  
bedding, बिस्तर *bistar*, m.  
before, (time) के/से पहले *ke/se pahle*;  
(time and place) के/से आगे *ke/se  
āge*  
beggar, भिखारी *bhikhārī*, m.  
begin, to, शुरू करना *shurū karnā*;  
आरंभ करना *ārambh karnā*  
beginning, शुरुआत *shurūāt*, f.; आरंभ  
*ārambh*, m.  
behind, के पीछे *ke pīche*; from be-  
hind, पीछे से *pīche se*  
believe (= put faith in), to, विश्वास  
करना (पर) *viśvās karnā (par)*  
belongings, सामान *sāmān*, m.  
below, के नीचे *ke nīche*  
beside, के पास *ke pās*  
best, बेहतरीन *behtarīn*; श्रेष्ठ *śreṣṭh*  
better, बेहतर *behtar*  
bicycle, साइकिल *sāikil*, f.  
bill (account), बिल *bil*, m.  
bind, to, बाँधना *bāndhū*

- bird, चिड़िया *chiriyā*, f.  
bite (of animals), to, काटना *kāṭnā*  
black, काला *kālā*  
blind, अंधा *andhā*  
bloom, to, खिलना *khilnā*  
blow, चोट *cof*, f.  
bluc; dark blue or green, नीला  
*nīlā*  
boat (small), किस्ती *kistī*, f.  
Bombay, बंबई *bambai*, f.  
book, किताब *kitāb*, f., पुस्तक *pustak*, f.  
bored, बेज़ार *bezār*  
born, to be, पैदा होना *paidā honā*  
box, संदूक *sandūk*, m.  
boy, लड़का *laṛkā*, m.  
bread (chapatti), रोटी *roṭī*, f.  
break, to, टूटना *ṭūṭnā* (intr.); तोड़ना  
*ṭoṛnā* (tr.)  
'breakfast', नाश्ता *nāštā*, m.  
bridge, पुल *pul*, m.  
bring, to, ले आना *le ānā*; लाना *lānā*  
broken, to cause to be, टुड़ाना *ṭuṛānā*  
brother, भाई *bhāī*, m.  
building, इमारत *imārat*, f.  
bullock, बैल *baīl*, m.  
burn, to, जलना *jalnā* (intr.); जलाना  
*jalānā* (tr.)  
burst, to, फूटना *phūṭnā* (intr.), फोड़ना  
*phoṛnā* (tr.)  
busy, व्यस्त *vyast*  
but, पर *par*; लेकिन *lekin*; etc. (p.  
182); but rather, बल्कि *balki*  
buy, to, खरीदना *kharīdnā*; मोल लेना  
*mol lenā*  
by, (means or agency) से *se*; (by a  
future time) तक *tak*  
cage, पिंजरा *pinjra*, m.  
Calcutta, कलकत्ता *kalkattā*, m.  
call (summon), to, बुलाना *bulānā*  
camel, ऊँट *ūmṭ*, m.  
cane, छड़ी *charī*, f.  
capital, राजधानी *rājdhānī*, f.  
car, मोटर *moṭar*, f.; कार *kār*, f.; गाड़ी  
*gāṛī*, f.  
carc, सावधानी *sāvdhānī*, f.; carefully,  
सावधानी से *sāvdhānī se*  
carefreeness, बेफिक्री *befikrī*, f.  
careful, सावधान *sāvdhān*  
casually, वैसे ही *vaise hī*  
cause, कारण *kāraṇ*, m.  
certain, a, कोई *koī*  
certainly, जरूर *zarūr*; अवश्य *avaśya*  
chair, कुर्सी *kursī*, f.  
chance, संयोग *saṁyog*, m.; by  
chance संयोग से *saṁyog se*  
change, to, बदलना *badalnā*  
cheap, सस्ता *sastā*  
child, बच्चा *baccā*, m.  
chilli, मिर्च *mirch*, f.  
cigarette, सिग्रेट *sigret*, f.m.  
city, शहर *shahr*, m.  
civilization, सभ्यता *sabhyatā*, f.  
class (school), क्लास *klās*, f.m.  
clean, साफ़ *sāf*  
clear, साफ़ *sāf*  
climate, आबोहवा *ābohavā*, f. (p. 182);  
जलवायु *jalvāyu*, m.  
closed, बंद *band*  
cloth, कपड़ा *kapṛā*, m.  
clothes, कपड़े *kapṛe*, m.pl.  
coat, कोट *koṭ*, m.  
coffee, काफ़ी *kāfī*, f.  
cold, ठंडा *ṭhāṇḍā*; (cold tempera-  
ture) ठंड *ṭhāṇḍ*, f.; a cold, ठंड  
*ṭhāṇḍ*, f.; cold season, सर्दियाँ  
*sardiyān*, f.pl.  
come, to, आना *ānā*  
comfort, आराम *ārām*, m.  
comfortable, आरामदेह *ārāmdeh*

compel, to, मजबूर करना (पर, के लिए) *majbūr karnā* (*par, ke lie*); बाध्य करना (पर, के लिए) *bādhyā karnā* (*par, ke lie*)  
 completely, बिल्कुल *bilkul*  
 concerning, के बारे में *ke bāre meṁ*  
 condition (state), हाल *hāl*, m.  
 confidence, विश्वास *viśvās*, m.  
 congratulations, बधाई *badhāi*, f.  
 connection, संबंध *sambandh*, m.  
 consider (as), to, मानना *mānnā*  
 construct, to, बनाना *banānā*  
 cool, ठंडा *ṭhaṇḍā* (q.v.)  
 correct, ठीक *ṭhik*  
 count, to, गिनना *ginnā*  
 country, देश *deś*, m.  
 course of action, चारा *cārā*, m.  
 courtyard, आँगन *āṅgan*, m.  
 cow, गाय *gāy*, f.  
 create, to, रचना *racnā*  
 creep, to, घुसना *ghusnā*  
 creeper, लता *latā*, f.  
 crop, फसल *fasl*, f.  
 cross, to (tr.), पार करना *pār karnā*  
 crowd, भीड़ *bhīr*, f.  
 cry, to, रोना *ronā*  
 culture, संस्कृति *sanskṛti*, f.  
 cup, प्याला *pyālā*, m.  
 cupboard, अलमारी *almārī*, f.  
 curry, सरकारी *tarkārī*, f.  
 cut, to be, कटना *kaṭnā*  
 cut, to, काटना *kāṭnā*  
 daily, रोज *roz*  
 dance, to, नाचना *nācnā*  
 dark, अँधेरा *aṁdherā*  
 darkness, अँधेरा *aṁdherā*, m.  
 date, तारीख *tārīkh*, f.  
 daughter, बेटी *beṭī*, f.  
 day, दिन *din*, m.; रोज *roz*, m.; all

day, दिन भर *din bhar*; day after tomorrow, परसों *parson*; day before yesterday, परसों *parson*  
 dear (beloved), प्रिय *priy*; dearest, प्रियतम *priyatam*  
 decision, (resolve) निश्चय *niścay*, m.; (between alternatives) निर्णय *nirṇay*, m.  
 deer, हिरण *hiran*, m.  
 delay, देर *der*, f.  
 Delhi, दिल्ली *dillī*, f.  
 depart, to, बिदा होना *bidā honā*; रवाना होना *ravānā honā*  
 descend, to, उतरना *utarnā*  
 detachment (group), छक्का *chakkā*, m.  
 dictionary, कोश *koś*, m.  
 die, to, मरना *marnā*  
 difficult, मुश्किल *muškīl*; कठिन *kāṭhin*  
 difficulty, मुश्किल *muškīl*, f.; (trouble) तकलीफ *taklīf*, f., कष्ट *kaṣṭ*, m.  
 direct, सीधा *sīdhā*  
 direction, तरफ *taraf*; f.; ओर *or*, f.  
 dirty, मैला *maīlā*  
 dispatch, to, बिदा करना *bidā karnā*; रवाना करना *ravānā karnā*  
 dissatisfied, असंतुष्ट *asantuṣṭ*  
 distance, दूर *dūr*, f.; दूरी *dūri*, f.  
 distant, दूर *dūr*  
 district (administrative), जिला *zilā*, m.  
 do, to, करना *karnā*  
 doctor, डाक्टर *ḍāktar*, m.  
 dog, कुत्ता *kuttā*, m.  
 donkey, गधा *gadā*, m.  
 door, दरवाजा *darvāzā*, m.; at the door, दरवाजे पर *darvāze par*  
 drink, to, पीना *pīnā*

drive around (tr.), to, घुमाना *ghu-mānā*  
 duty, फर्ज *farz*, m.  
 each, हर *har*  
 ear, कान *kān*, m.  
 earn, to, कमाना *kamānā*  
 ease, आसानी *āsānī*, f.; easily, आसानी से *āsānī se*  
 east, पूर्व *pūrv*, m.  
 easy, आसान *āsān*  
 eat, to, खाना *khānā*  
 edge, किनारा *kinārā*, m.  
 egg, अंडा *aṇḍā*, m.  
 eight, आठ *āṭh*  
 either . . . or, या . . . या *yā . . . yā*  
 eject, to, निकालना *nikālū*  
 elementary, बुनियादी *buniyādī*; प्रारंभिक *prārambhik*  
 elephant, हाथी *hāthī*, m.  
 embarrassment, संकोच *saṅkoc*, m.  
 emerge, to, निकलना *nikalnā*  
 empty, खाली *khālī*  
 end, अंत *ant*, m.  
 enemy, शत्रु *śatru*, m.f.  
 English, अंग्रेजी *aṅgrezī*; English language, अंग्रेजी *aṅgrezī*, f.; Englishman, Englishwoman, अंग्रेज *aṅgrez*, m.f.  
 entire, सारा *sārā*  
 entrance, प्रवेश *praveś*, m.  
 entry, प्रवेश *praveś*, m.; to enter, प्रवेश करना (में) *praveś karnā (meṁ)*  
 error, भूल *bhūl*, f.  
 estate (land), जायदाद *jāyḍād*, f.  
 European, यूरोपीय *yūropīy*, adj. and m.f.  
 evening, शाम *šām*, f.  
 every, हर *har*; every day, हर (एक) दिन *har (ek) din*; everyone, सब

लोग *sab log*, m.pl., हर कोई *har koi*, sg.; everywhere, हर जगह *har jagah*  
 except for के सिवा (य) *ke sivā(y)*  
 excess (harsh action), अत्याचार *atyācār*, m.  
 excuse me, (in attracting attention) सुनिए *sunie*  
 exercise book, कापी *kāpi*, f.  
 expensive, महंगा *mahāṅgā*  
 explain, to, समझाना *samjhānā*  
 extra, और *aur*  
 extract, to, निकालना *nikālū*  
 eye, आँख *āṁkh*, f.  
 face (features), चेहरा *cehrā*, m.; शकल *śakl*, f.  
 fail (an examination), to, फेल होना *fel honā*  
 fair, मेला *melā*, m.  
 faith, विश्वास *viśvās*, m.  
 fall, to, पड़ना *paṛnā*; गिरना *girnā*  
 far as, as, तक *tak*  
 farmer, किसान *kisān*, m.  
 father, पिता *pitā*, m.  
 fear, डर *dar*, m.  
 fear, to, डरना *ḍarnā*  
 features, चेहरा *cehrā*, m.; शकल *śakl*, f.  
 feed, to, खिलाना *khilānā*  
 festival, मेला *melā*, m.  
 few, कम *kam*; थोड़ा *thoḍā*; a few, कुछ *kuch*, एक आध *ek ādh*  
 field, खेत *khet*, m.  
 fight, to, लड़ना *laṛnā*  
 fill, to, भरना *bharnā*  
 filled, to be, भरना *bharnā*  
 find, to (= succeed in meeting), पाना *pānā*  
 fine, O.K., ठीक *ṭhik*

- finish, to, खत्म करना *khatm karnā*;  
समाप्त करना *samāpt karnā*; चुकना  
*cuknā* (intr., p. 89)  
fire, आग *āg*, f.  
five, पाँच *pāñc*  
floor, फर्श *farś*, m.  
flower, फूल *phūl*, m.  
fodder, चारा *cārā*, m.  
food, खाना *khānā*, m.  
foot, पाँव *pāñv*, m.; on foot, पैदल  
*paidal*  
for, के लिए *ke lie*  
forbidden, मना *manā* (invariable)  
foreign, विदेशी *videśī*  
foreigner, विदेशी *videśī*, m.f.  
foremost (supreme), सर्वश्रेष्ठ *sarv-  
śreṣṭh*  
forget, to, भूलना *bhūlnā*  
forin, रूप *rūp*, m.; शकल *śakl*, f.  
fort, किला *qilā*, m.  
found, to be, पड़ना *paṛnā*; मिलना  
*milnā*  
four, चार *cār*  
free (available), खाली *khālī*; फ्री *frī*  
fresh, ताजा *tāzā*  
Friday, शुक्रवार *śukravār*, m.  
friend, दोस्त *dost*, m.; मित्र *mītr*, m.  
from, से *se*  
front of, in, के सामने *ke sāmne*; (out  
in front of) के आगे *ke āge*  
fully, पूर्णतः *pūrṇtaḥ*  
  
Ganges, गंगा *gaṅgā*, f.  
get up, to, उठना *uṭhnā*  
girl, लड़की *larkī*, f.  
give back, to, वापस करना *vāpas  
karnā*; लौटाना *lauṭānā*  
glance, नज़र *naẓar*, f.; दृष्टि *dr̥ṣṭi*, f.  
glass (drinking), गिलास *gilās*, m.  
go, to, जाना *jānā*; (move) चलना

- calnā*; to go away, चला जाना *calā  
jānā*  
good, अच्छा *acchā*  
goods माल *māl*, m.; (belongings,  
luggage) सामान *sāmān*, m.  
grain, अनाज *anāj*, m.  
grass, घास *ghas*, f.  
graze, to, चरना *carṇā*  
green, हरा *harā*  
'greetings', नमस्ते *namaste*; नमस्कार  
*namaskār*  
grief, दुख *dukh*, m.  
grow, to (intr.), उगना *ugnā*  
  
half, आधा *ādhā*, adj. and m.  
hand, हाथ *hāth*, m.  
happening, घटना *ghaṭnā*, f.  
happiness, खुशी *khushi*, f.; प्रसन्नता  
*prasannatā*, f.  
harvest, to, काटना *kāṭnā*  
hat, टोपी *ṭopī*, f.  
he, वह *vah*  
head, सिर *sir*, m.  
health (state of), तबीयत *tabīyat*, f.  
hear, to, सुनना *sunnā*  
heart, दिल *dil*, m.; मन *man*, m.  
help, मदद *madad*, f.; सहायता *sahāyātā*, f.  
help, to, मदद देना (को) *madad denā  
(ko)*, etc.  
here, यहाँ *yahām*  
hide, to (tr.), छिपाना *chipānā*  
high, ऊँचा *ūncā*  
hill, पहाड़ *pahār*, m.  
Hindi, हिंदी *hindī*, f.  
Hindu, हिंदू *hindū*, m.  
history, इतिहास *itihās*, m.  
holiday, छुट्टी *chuṭṭī*, f.  
holy man, साधु *sādhū*, m.  
home, घर *ghar*, m.; at home, घर पर  
*ghar par*

- hope, आशा *āśā*, f.  
horse, घोड़ा *ghoṛā*, m.  
hot, गरम *garm*; hot season, गरमियाँ  
*garmiyāñ*, f.pl.  
hour, घंटा *ghaṇṭā*, m.  
house, मकान *makān*, m.; घर *ghar*, m.  
how? (adv.) कैसे *kaise*; (adj.) कैसा  
*kaisā*; how far? कितनी दूर *kitnī  
dūr*; how long? कितने दिन *kitne  
din*, कब तक *kab tak*; how many?  
कितना *kitnā*  
however much, जितना *jitnā*; जितना  
भी *jitnā bhi*; कितना ही... क्यों न  
*kitnā hī... kyon na*  
hunger, भूख *bhūkh*, f.  
hungry, to be, भूख लगना (को) *bhūkh  
lagṇā (ko)*  
husband, पति *pati*, m.  
  
I, मैं *maim*  
ice, बर्फ *barf*, f.  
if, अगर *agar*; यदि *yadi*  
ill, बीमार *bīmār*  
in, में *mem*  
incantation, मंत्र *mantra*, m.  
incident, घटना *ghaṭnā*, f.  
inconvenience, असुविधा *asuvidhā*, f.  
India, भारत *bhārat*, m.; भारतवर्ष  
*bhāratvarṣ*, m.; हिंदुस्तान *hindustān*,  
m.  
Indian, adj. and m.f., भारतीय  
*bhārtīy*  
Indra, इंद्र *indra*, m.  
inform, to, बताना *batānā*  
information, खबर *khabar*, f.; सूचना  
*sūcnā*, f.  
inhabitant, रहनेवाला *rahnevālā*, m.;  
निवासी *nivāsī*, m.  
ink, स्याही *syāhī*, f.  
innocent, निरपराध *niraparādh*

- inquire, to, पूछना *pūchnā*  
inside, के अंदर *ke andar*  
instead of, के बजाय *ke bajāy*  
intention, मतलब *matlab*, m.; उद्देश्य  
*uddeśya*, m.  
interesting, दिलचस्प *dilcasp*  
into, में *mem*  
introduce, to, मिलाना (से) *milānā  
(se)*  
invite, to, बुलाना *bulānā*  
is, है *hai*  
it, वह *vah*  
  
jar, घड़ा *gharā*, m.  
joke, मजाक *mazāq*, m.; to joke,  
मजाक करना *mazāq karnā*  
Jumna (Yamuna) यमुना *yamunā*, f.  
jump, to, कूदना *kūdnā*  
just as, जैसे *jaise*  
  
keep, to, रखना *rakhnā*  
key, चाबी *cābī*, f.  
kill, to, मारना *mārnā*  
kind (type), तरह *tarah*; प्रकार *prakār*,  
m.  
know, to, जानना *jānnā*; पता होना  
(को) *patā honā (ko)*; sec known  
knowledge, ज्ञान *jñān*, m.  
known, मालूम *mālūm*; I know, मुझे  
मालूम है *mujhe mālūm hai*; it seems  
to me, मुझे मालूम होता है *mujhe  
mālūm hotā hai*  
  
labour, मेहनत *mehnat*, f.  
lack, कमी *kamī*, f.  
laden, to be, लदना *ladnā*  
land, जमीन *zamin*, f.  
language, भाषा *bhāṣā*, f.  
large, बड़ा *barā*  
last, पिछला *pichlā*

late, देर से *der se* (adv.)  
 laugh, to, हँसना *hamśnā*  
 lawyer, वकील *vakīl*, m.  
 leaf, पत्ता *paṭṭā*, m.  
 leap, to, कूदना *kūdnā*  
 learn, to, सीखना *sikhnā*  
 least, at, कम से कम *kam se kam*  
 leave, छोड़ी *chuffī*, f.  
 leave, to, छूटना *chūṭnā* (intr.); छोड़ना *chorṇā* (tr.)  
 lecture, भाषण *bhāṣaṇ*, m.  
 left (hand) बायाँ *bāyām*; on the left-hand side of, के बाईं तरफ़ *ke bāīṁ taraf*  
 leg, पाँव *pānv*, m.  
 lest, कहीं . . . न *kahīm . . . na*  
 letter, चिट्ठी *ciṭṭhī*, f.; पत्र *patr*, m.  
 library, लाइब्रेरी *lāibrerī*, f.; पुस्तकालय *pustakālay*, m.  
 lie down, to, लेटना *leṭnā*  
 life, जीवन *jīvan*, m.  
 line (row), पंक्ति *paṅkti*, f.  
 lion, शेर *śer*, m.  
 little (of quantity), थोड़ा *thorā*; कम *kam*  
 little, a, थोड़ा *thorā*  
 live, to, जीना *jīnā*; (reside, stay) रहना *rahnā*  
 load, to, लादना *lādnā*  
 lock, ताला *tālā*, m.  
 London, लंदन *landan*, m.  
 long, लंबा *lambā*  
 long as, as, जब तक *jab tak*  
 long live, जय हो (की) *jay ho (ki)*  
 look, to, देखना *dekhnā*; to look at, की ओर देखना *ki or dekhnā*; to look for, ढूँढ़ना *dhūṇṇā*; तलाश करना *talāś karnā* (p. 58)  
 loot, to, लूटना *lūṭnā*  
 lose, to, खोना *khonā*

love, प्रेम *prem*, m.  
 low, नीचा *nīcā*  
 lower, to, नीचा करना *nīcā karnā*; झुकाना *jhukānā*  
 luggage, सामान *sāmān*, m.  
 lying (flat), पड़ा *paṛā*

machine, मशीन *mašīn*, f.  
 make, to, बनाना *banānā*  
 man, आदमी *ādmi*, m.; (human being; mankind) मनुष्य *manuṣya*, m.

manage, to, पाना *pānā* (pp. 104, 134)  
 mango, आम *ām*, m.

many, बहुत *bahut*; ज्यादा *zyādā*; अधिक *adhik*

maund (weight), मन *man*, m.

meal, खाना *khānā*, m.

meaning, मतलब *matlab*, m.; अर्थ *arth*, m.

mechanic, मिस्त्री *mistrī*, m.

meet, to, मिलना *milnā* (se or ko); see next

meeting, मुलाकात *mulāqāt*; to meet, मुलाकात होना (से) *mulāqāt honā (se)*

melt, to (intr.), पिघलना *piḥalnā*

memory, याद *yād*, f.

mentioned, to be, उल्लेख होना (का) *ullekh honā (kā)*

merely (casually), वैसे ही *vaise hi*

milk, दूध *dūdh*, m.

mind (and heart), मन *man*, m.

minute, मिनट *minat*, m.

modern, आधुनिक *ādhunik*

moment, क्षण *kṣaṇ*, m.

Monday, सोमवार *somvār*, m.

money, पैसा *paisā* (sg. or pl.)

monkey, बंदर *bandar*, m.

monsoon, बरसात *barsāt*, f.

month, महीना *mahīnā*, m.

more, ज्यादा *zyādā*; अधिक *adhik*

morning, सबेरा *saverā*, m.; सुबह *subah*, f.

mosquito net, मच्छड़दानी *macchar-dānī*, f.

mostly ज्यादातर *zyādātār*

mother, माता, माँ *mātā*, *māth*, f.

mountain, पहाड़ *pahār*, m.

move, to, चलना *calnā*; to move along, चला जाना *calā jānā*; to move back, हटना *haṭnā* (intr.)

movement (social, political), आंदोलन *āndolan*, m.

much, बहुत *bahut*; ज्यादा *zyādā*; अधिक *adhik*

mutual, आपसी *āpsī*; परस्पर *paraspar*

name, नाम *nām*, m.

national language, राष्ट्रभाषा *rāṣṭra-bhāṣā*, f.

natural, स्वाभाविक *svābhāvik*

near, के पास *ke pās*

necessary, जरूरी *zarūrī*; आवश्यक *āvāśyak*; is necessary, चाहिए *cāhie*

need, जरूरत *zarūrat*, f.

neighbour, पड़ोसी *paṛosī*, f.

neither . . . nor, न . . . न *na . . . na*

never, कभी नहीं *kabhī nahīm*

new, नया *nayā*

news, समाचार *samācār*, m. (sg. and pl.); खबर *khābar*, f.

newspaper, अखबार *akhbār*, m.

next, अगला *agla*

nice (good), बढ़िया *baṛhiyā*

night, रात *rāt*, f.

nine, नौ *nau*

no, नहीं *nahīm*

noise, शोर *śor*, m.

north, उत्तर *uttar*, m.

nose, नाक *nāk*, f.

not, नहीं *nahīm*; न *na*; मत *mat*

note (money), नोट *not*, m.

now, अब *ab*

nowadays, आजकल *ājkal*

obey (a command, etc.), to, मानना *mānnā*

obtain, to, पाना *pānā*; प्राप्त करना *prāpt karnā*

occasion, बार *bār*, f.; (opportunity) अवसर *avasār*, m.

ocean, समुद्र *samudr*, m.

o'clock, बजे *baje*; at nine o'clock, नौ बजे *nau baje*

of, का *kā*

office, दफ़्तर *daftar*, m.

oh! अरे *are*

oil, तेल *tel*, m.

old (of persons), बूढ़ा *būṛhā*

on, पर *par*

once, एक बार *ek bār*

one, एक *ek*; one and a half, डेढ़ *deṛh*; one and a quarter, सवा *savā* (invariable)

oneself, आप *ap*; खुद *khud*; स्वयं *svayam*

only, सिर्फ *sirf*; केवल *keval*

open, to, खुलना *khulnā* (intr.); खोलना *kholnā* (tr.)

opinion, विचार *vicār*, m.; खयाल *khayāl*, m.

opportunity, अवसर *avasār*, m.

or, या *yā*

ordinary, आम *ām*

other, दूसरा *dūsra*

otherwise, नहीं तो *nahīm to*

outside, के/से बाहर *ke/se bāhar*

own, one's, अपना *apnā*

ox, बैल *baīl*, m.



page, पन्ना *pannā*, m.  
 pain, दर्द *dard*, m.  
 palace, महल *mahl*, m.  
 paper, कागज *kāgaz*, m.  
 pare, to, छीलना *chilnā*  
 parents, माता-पिता *mātā-pitā*, m. pl.  
 part, भाग *bhāg*, m.; हिस्सा *hissā*, m.  
 pass by (time), to, बीतना *bitnā*  
 passenger, सवारी *savārī*, f.  
 pedestrian, पैदल चलनेवाला *paidal calnevālā*, m.  
 pen, कलम *qalam*, f. m.  
 pencil, पेंसिल *pensil*, f.  
 people, लोग *log*, m. pl.  
 pepper, मिर्च *mirc*, f.  
 perhaps, शायद *šayad*; कदाचित् *kadācit*  
 photograph, तस्वीर *tasvir*, f.; फोटो *foto*, f.  
 piece, पैसा *paisā*, m.  
 picture, तस्वीर *tasvir*, f.; चित्र *citr*, m.  
 piercing, तीखा *tikhā*  
 place, जगह *jagah*, f.  
 place, to, रखना *rakhnā*  
 plan (scheme), योजना *yojanā*, f.  
 pleasing, to be, पसंद आना (को) *pasand ānā (ko)*  
 pleasure, खुशी *khushi*, f.; प्रसन्नता *prasannatā*, f.  
 plot, षडयंत्र *ṣaḍyantra*, m.; साजिश *sāziś*, f.  
 pocket, जेब *jeb*, f.  
 poem, कविता *kaviatā*, f.  
 poet, कवि *kavi*, m.  
 pole, बरला *ballā*, m.  
 police, पुलिस *pulis*, f.  
 poor, गरीब *garib*  
 population, आबादी *ābādī*, f.  
 possibly, संभवतः *sambhavataḥ*  
 post (mail), डाक *ḍāk*, f.; post office, डाकघर *ḍākghar*, m., डाकखाना *ḍāk-*

*khānā*, m.; postman, डाकिया *ḍākiyā*, m.  
 pot, घड़ा *ghaḍā*, m.  
 pour, to, डालना *ḍālṇā*  
 practice, अभ्यास *abhyās*, m.; to practise, अभ्यास करना (का) *abhyās karnā (kā)*  
 praise, to, प्रशंसा करना (की) *praśamsā karnā (kī)*  
 preparations, तैयारियाँ *taiyāriyāḥ*; to prepare (for), तैयारियाँ करना (की) *taiyāriyāḥ karnā (kī)*  
 prepared, प्रस्तुत *prastut*  
 print, to, छापना *chāpnā*  
 printed, to be, छपना *chāpnā*  
 probably, संभवतः *sambhavataḥ*  
 produce पैदावार *paidāvār*, f.  
 produce, to, पैदा करना *paidā karnā*  
 progress, तरक्की *taraqqī*, f.; प्रगति *pragati*, f.  
 proportion: in proportion as . . . so, ज्यों-ज्यों . . . त्यों-त्यों *jiyom-jyom . . . tyom-tyom*  
 pull, to, खींचना *khīncnā*  
 punctually, ठीक वक्त पर *thik vaqt par*  
 put, to, रखना *rakhnā*  
 put on (clothes), to, पहनना *pahnnā*; to have on, to be wearing, पहन रखना *pahn rakhnā*, पहने होना *pahne honā*  
 quarrel, झगड़ा *jhagṛā*, m.  
 quarrel, to, झगड़ना *jhagṛnā*; लड़ना *laṛnā*  
 quarter, a, चौथाई *cauthāī*, f.  
 question, सवाल *savāl*, m.; प्रश्न *praśn*, m.  
 quickly, जल्दी (से) *jaldī (se)*  
 quite, (absolutely) बिल्कुल *bilkul*; (to a large extent) काफी *kāfi*

rain, बारिश *bārīś*, f.; to rain, बारिश होना *bārīś honā*; rainy season, बरसात *barsāt*, f.  
 raise, to, उठाना *uṭhānā*  
 rajah, राजा *rājā*, m.  
 read, to, पढ़ना *parhnā*  
 ready, तैयार *taiyār*; प्रस्तुत *prastut*  
 recognise, to, पहचानना *pahcānnā*  
 red, लाल *lāl*  
 refusal, इनकार *inkār*, m.; to refuse, इनकार करना (से) *inkār karnā (se)*  
 regret, अफसोस *afsos*, m.  
 relationship, संबंध *sambandh*, m.  
 remain, to, रहना *rahnā*; (stay) ठहरना *ṭhaharnā*  
 remaining, बाकी *bāqī*  
 remember, to, याद रखना *yād rakhnā*; etc. (see pp. 118-9)  
 repeat (a god's name, etc.), to, जपना *japnā*  
 request, माँग *māṅg*, f.  
 rescue, to, बचाना *bacānā*  
 resemble, to, मिलना (से) *milnā (se)*  
 resident, रहनेवाला *rahnevālā*  
 resound, to, गूँजना *gūmjnā*  
 rest, आराम *ārām*, m.  
 restaurant, रेस्टोरेंट *restorant*, m.  
 return, to, लौटना *lauṭnā* (intr.)  
 reward, पुरस्कार *puraskār*, m.  
 rich, अमीर *amir*  
 rickshaw, रिक्शा *riksā*, m.  
 right (hand), दाहिना *dāhinā*; on the right hand side of, के दाहिनी (दाईं) तरफ *ke dāhinī (dāīn) taraf*  
 Rigveda, ऋग्वेद *ṛgved*, m.  
 ripen, to, पकना *paknā*  
 rise, to, उठना *uṭhnā*; (advance) बढ़ना *bāṭhnā*  
 river, नदी *nadī*, f.  
 road, सड़क *saṛak*, f.; रास्ता *rasā*, m.

roof, छत *chat*, f.  
 room, कमरा *kamrā*, m.  
 rope, रस्सी *rassi*, f.; रस्ता *rassā*, m.  
 run, to, दौड़ना *daṛnā*; to run away, भागना *bhāgnā*  
 rupee, रुपया *ruṇyā*, m.  
 safe, to be, बचना *bacnā*  
 sari, साड़ी *sārī*, f.  
 satisfied, संतुष्ट *santust*  
 Saturday, शनिवार *śanivār*, m.  
 save, to, बचाना *bacānā*  
 saved, to be, बचना *bacnā*  
 say, to, कहना (से) *kahnā (se)*  
 scarcely ever, शायद ही *šayad hī*  
 school, स्कूल *skūl*, m.; at school, स्कूल में *skūl men*  
 score, बीसी *bisī*, f.  
 scrape, to, छीलना *chilnā*  
 sea, समुद्र *samudr*, m.  
 season, मौसम *mausam*, m.  
 seat, सीट *sīt*, f.; lower seat, नीचे की सीट *nice kī sīt*  
 scat, to, बिठाना *biṭhānā* (see p. 108)  
 scated, बैठा *baiṭhā*  
 second, दूसरा *dūsrā*  
 secretary (minister), मंत्री *mantri*, m.  
 see, to, देखना *dekhnā*; to see off, बिदा करना *bidā karnā*, खाना करना *khānā karnā*; to see to (attend to), देखना *dekhnā*  
 seem, to, मालूम होना *mālūm honā* (p. 51), जान पड़ना *jān paṛnā*  
 seer (weight), सेर *ser*, m.  
 seize, to, पकड़ना *pakṛnā*  
 sell, to, बेचना *becnā*  
 send, to, भेजना *bhejnā*  
 sentence, वाक्य *vākya*, m.  
 service, सेवा *sevā*, f.  
 seven, सात *sāt*



sharp, तीखा *tikhā*  
shawl, दुपट्टा *dupaṭṭā*, m.; चादर *cādar*, f.  
she, वह *vah*  
sheet, चादर *cādar*, f.  
ship, जहाज *jahāz*, m.  
shirt, कमीज *gamīz*, f.; collarless shirt, कुरता *kurtā*, m.  
shop, दुकान *dūkān*, f.  
shopping, to go, बाज़ार जाना *bāzār jānā*  
shortage, कमी *kamī*, f.  
shout, to, चिल्लाना *cillānā*  
slow, to, दिखाना *dikhānā*  
shyness, संकोच *saṅkoc*, m.  
side (direction), तरफ *taraf*, f.  
sight, नज़र *nazar*, f.; दृष्टि *dr̥ṣṭi*, f.  
silent, चुप *cup*  
since, (of time) जब से *jab se*, conj.; से *se*, p.p.m.; (because) चूँकि *cūhki*, क्योंकि *kyonki*  
sing, to, गाना *gānā*  
sister, बहन *bahn*, f.  
sit, to, बैठना *baiṭhnā*  
sitting, बैठा *baiṭhā*  
six, छह, छः, छै *chah, chah, chai*  
slander, to, बुराई करना (की) *burāi karnā (kī)*  
sleep, नींद *nīnd*, f.  
sleep, to, सोना *sonā*  
slink, to, घुसना *ghusnā*  
slowly, आहिस्ता *āhistā*, आहिस्ते *āhiste*; धीरे *dhire*: often reduplicated  
small, छोटा *choṭā*  
smile, मुसकराहट *muskarāhaṭ*, f.  
smile, to, मुसकराना *muskarānā*; हँसना *haṁsnā*  
snow, बर्फ *barf*, f.  
so that, जिससे *jisse*; ताकि *tāki*  
sob, to, सिसकना *sisaknā*

soldier, सिपाही *siṭhāhī*, m.; जवान *javān*, m. (p. 165)  
someone, some (particular thing or person), कोई *koī*  
something, some (indefinite), कुछ *kuch*  
sometimes, कभी *kabhī* (often reduplicated)  
somewhere, कहीं *kahīn*  
son, बेटा *beṭā*, m.  
song, गाना *gānā*, m.  
soon, जल्दी (से) *jaldī (se)*; as soon as, जैसे ही *jaise hī*, ज्योंही *jyōhī* (see also pp. 144-5)  
south, दक्खिन *dakkhin*, m.; दक्षिण *dakṣiṇ*, m.  
speak, to, बोलना (से) *bolnā (se)*  
speech (lecture), भाषण *bhāṣaṇ*, m.  
speed, जल्दी *jaldī*, f.  
spend (time), to, बिताना *bitānā*  
spite of, in, के बावजूद *ke bāvajūd*  
spoiled, खराब *kharāb*  
spoon, चम्मच *cammac*, m.  
spread, to, बिछाना *bichānā*  
squad, छक्का *chakkā*, m.  
staff (stave), लाठी *lāṭhī*, f.  
stamp (postage), टिकट *ṭikat*, m.f.  
standing, खड़ा *kharā*  
startled, to be, चौंकना *cauṅknā*  
state, (condition) हाल *hāl*, m.; (nation) राष्ट्र *rāṣṭra*, m.  
station, स्टेशन *stēṣan*, m.  
stay, to, रहना *rahnā*; ठहरना *ṭhaharnā*  
stealthily, दबे पाँव *dabe pāvu*  
stick (cane), छड़ी *charī*, f.  
stone, पत्थर *paṭṭhar*, m.  
stop, to, रुकना *rukṇā* (intr.); रोकना *rokuṇā* (tr.)  
story, कहानी *kahānī*, f.  
straight, सीधा *sīdhā*

stream, नाला *nālā*, m.  
street, रास्ता *rāstā*, m.; सड़क *ṣarak*, f.  
string, रस्ती *rassī*, f.  
strong (objects), मजबूत *mazbūt*  
student, विद्यार्थी *vidyārthī*, छात्र *chātr*, m.; छात्रा *chātrā*, विद्यार्थिनी *vidyārthini*, f.  
study, अध्ययन *adhyayan*, m.; to study, पढ़ना *paṛhnā*, अध्ययन करना (का) *adhyayan karnā (kā)*  
stupid, बेवकूफ *bevaqūf*  
stupidity, बेवकूफी *bevaqūfī*, f.  
subject, विषय *viṣay*, m.  
suburb, मुहल्ला *muhallā*, m.  
successful, सफल *saphal*  
such, (of this sort) ऐसा *aisā*; (of that sort) वैसा *vaisā*  
suddenly, अचानक *acānak*; सहसा *sahsā*  
suggestion, प्रस्ताव *prastāv*, m.  
suitable, उपयुक्त *upayukt*; suitable for, के लायक *ke lāyak*; worth seeing, देखने लायक *dekhne lāyak*  
sun, सूरज *sūraj*, m.; sun's heat or light, धूप *dhūp*, f.  
Sunday, रविवार *ravivār*, m.; इतवार *itvār*, m.  
suppressed, to be, दबना *dabnā*  
surround, to, घेरना *ghernā*  
sway, to, झूमना *jhūmnā*  
sweet, मिठाई *mīṭhāi*, f.  
table, मेज़ *mez*, f.  
tailor, दर्जी *darzī*, m.  
take, to, लेना *lenā*; to take away, ले जाना *le jānā*; to take off, take down, उतारना *utārnā*  
talk to, बोलना *bolnā (se)*, बात (बातें) करना (से) *bāt(erh) karnā (se)*  
tall, लंबा *lambā*  
Tamil, तमिल *lamil*, m.

tank (reservoir, etc.), तालाब *tālāb*, m.  
tea, चाय *cāy*, f.  
teach, to, पढ़ाना *paṛhānā*; सिखाना *sikhānā*  
teacher, अध्यापक *adhyāpak*, m.  
tear, to, फटना *phaṭnā* (intr.); फाड़ना *phāṛnā* (tr.)  
telegram, तार *tār*, m.  
telephone, फोन *fon*, m.; to telephone, फोन करना (को) *fon karnā (ko)*; someone telephoned me, मेरा फोन आया *merā fon āyā*  
tell, to, कहना (से) *kahnā (se)*; (relate) सुनाना (को) *sunānā (ko)*  
temple, मंदिर *mandir*, m.  
ten, दस *das*  
than, से *se* (p. 92)  
that (pron. and adj.) वह *vah*; as many/much as that, उतना *utnā*; of that sort, वैसा *vaisā*; (conj.) कि *ki*  
then (= next) फिर *phir*  
there, वहाँ *vahān*  
they, वे *ve*  
thief, चोर *cor*, m.  
thing (matter), बात *bāt*, f.  
thing, चीज़ *ciz*, f.  
think, to, सोचना *sochnā*  
third, a, तिहाई *tihāi*, f.  
thirst, प्यास *pyās*, f.  
thirsty, to be, प्यास लगना (को) *pyās lagnā (ko)*  
this, यह *yah*; as many/as much as this, इतना *itnā*; of this sort, ऐसा *aisā*  
thought, विचार *vicār*, m.; खयाल *khayāl*, m.  
three, तीन *tin*; three-quarters of, पीन *paun*

throw down, to, डालना *dālā*  
 Thursday, बृहस्पतिवार *brhaspativār*,  
 गुरुवार *gurvār*, m.  
 tie, to, बाँधना *bāndhnā*  
 tied, to be, बँधना *banḍhnā*  
 tiger, शेर *śer*, m.  
 time, समय *samay*, m.; वक्त *vaqt*, m.;  
 (occasion) बार *bār*, f., दफ़ा *dafā*,  
 f.; at that time, उस समय *us samay*;  
 for a long time, बहुत दिनों से *bahut*  
*dinon se*; for some time, कुछ समय  
*kuch samay*  
 to, को *ko*; से *se*; की तरफ *kī taraf*; के  
 पास *ke pās*  
 today, आज *āj*  
 tolerant, सहनशील *sahnśil*  
 tomorrow, कल *kal*  
 tonga, तांगा *tāngā*, m.  
 topic, विषय *viṣay*, m.; बात *bāt*, f.  
 towards, की तरफ *kī taraf*; की ओर *kī*  
*or*  
 town, शहर *śahr*, m.  
 trace, पता *patā*, m.  
 tradition, परंपरा *paramparā*, f.  
 train, रेल *rel*, f.; by train, रेल से *rel se*  
 traitor, देशद्रोही *deśdrohī*, m.  
 tree, पेड़ *peṛ*, m.  
 troubled, परेशान *pareśān*  
 trousers (cotton) पाजामा *pājāmā*, m.  
 truth, सच *sac*, m.  
 try, to, कोशिश करना (की) *kośiś*  
*karnā (kī)*  
 Tuesday, मंगलवार *maṅgalvār*, m.  
 two, दो *do*; two and a half, ढाई *dhāī*  
 type, प्रकार *prakār*, m.  
 underneath, के नीचे *ke nīche*  
 understand, to, समझना *samajhnā*  
 university, यूनिवर्सिटी *yūnivarsiṭī*;  
 विश्वविद्यालय *viśvavidyālay*

until, जब तक . . . न *jab tak . . . na*  
 up to, तक *tak*  
 use, to, इस्तेमाल करना *istemāl karnā*  
 (p. 58); प्रयोग करना (का) *prayog*  
*karnā (kā)*  
 usually, अक्सर *aksar*; प्रायः *prāyaḥ*;  
 ज्यादातर *zyādātar*; आम तौर पर/से  
*ām taur par/se*  
 vacation, छुट्टी *chuffī*, f.  
 vehicle, गाड़ी *gāṛī*, f.; सवारी *savārī*, f.  
 very, बहुत *bahut*  
 via, होकर *hokar*  
 victory, विजय *viṣay*, f.  
 village, गाँव *gāhv*, m.  
 villager, गाँववाला *gāmvvālā*, m.  
 visible, to be, दिखाई देना *dikhāī denā*;  
 दीखना *dikhnā*; दिखना *dikhnā*  
 voice, आवाज़ *āvāz*, f.  
 wait, to, ठहरना *ṭhaharnā*; to wait  
 for, इंतज़ार करना (का) *intazār*  
*karnā (kā)*; प्रतीक्षा करना (की)  
*pratīkṣā karnā (kī)*  
 waken, to, जागना *jāgnā* (intr.);  
 जगाना *jagānā* (tr.)  
 wall, दीवार *dīvār*, f.  
 wander, to, घूमना *ghūmnā*  
 war, लड़ाई *larāī*, f.  
 warm, गरम *garm*  
 wash, to, धोना *dhonā*  
 washerman, धोबी *dhoḍī*, m.  
 watch, to, की ओर देkhना *kī or dekhnā*  
 watch, घड़ी *ghaṛī*, f.; by my watch,  
 मेरी घड़ी में *merī ghaṛī meṁ*  
 water, पानी *pānī*, m.  
 way (manner), तरह *tarah*, f.; प्रकार  
*prakār*, m.; in every way, सब  
 प्रकार से *sab prakār se*  
 we, हम *ham*

wear, to, पहने होना *palne honā*; to  
 give to wear, पहनाना (को) *pahnaū*  
*(ko)*  
 weather, मौसम *mausam*, m.  
 Wednesday, बुधवार *budhvār*, m.  
 week, हफ़्ता *haftā*, m.  
 well, कुआँ *kuān*, m.  
 well, adv. अच्छा *acchā*; अच्छी तरह  
 (से) *acchī tarah (se)*; (all right)  
 ठीक *thik*; to be well, तबीयत ठीक  
 होना *tabīyat thik honā*  
 west, पश्चिम *paścim*, m.  
 wet, भीगा *bhīgā*  
 what? क्या *kyā*; what sort of? कैसा  
*kaisā*  
 when? कब *kab*  
 whenever, जब भी *jab bhī*  
 where? कहाँ *kahān*  
 wherever, जहाँ भी *jahān bhī*  
 whether . . . or, चाहे . . . चाहे *cāhe*  
 . . . *cāhe*  
 which (particular thing or person)?  
 कौन *kaun*  
 white, सफ़ेद *saḍed*  
 who, (interrogative) कौन *kaun*; the  
 one who, जो *jo*  
 whoever, जो कोई *jo koī*  
 why? क्यों *kyon*  
 wickedness, बुराई *burāī*, f.  
 wife, पत्नी *patnī*, f.  
 wind, हवा *havā*, f.

window, खिड़की *khirkī*, f.  
 wire, तार *tār*, m.  
 wish, to, चाहना *cāhnā*  
 with (together with), के साथ *ke sāth*  
 withdraw, to, हटना *haṭnā*  
 without, के बिना *ke binā*; के बग़ैर *ke*  
*bagair*  
 woman, स्त्री *strī*, f.; औरत *aurat*, f.  
 wood, लकड़ी *lakṛī*, f.  
 word, शब्द *śabd*, m.  
 work, काम *kām*, m.  
 workman (skilled), मिस्त्री *mistrī*, m.  
 world, दुनिया *duniyā*, f.; संसार *saṁsār*,  
 m.; the next world, परलोक  
*parlok*, m.  
 worse, बदतर *badtar*  
 wounded, ज़ख्मी *zakhmī*  
 wrap, to, ओढ़ना *oṛhnā*  
 write, to, लिखना *likhnā*  
 year, बरस *baras*, m.; साल *sāl*, m.;  
 वर्ष *vars*, m.  
 yes, हाँ *hām*  
 yesterday, कल *kal*  
 you, आप *āp*; तुम *tum*; तू *tū*  
 younger, छोटा *choṭā*; younger  
 brother, छोटा भाई *choṭā bhāī*, m.;  
 younger sister, छोटी बहन *choṭī*  
*bahn*, f.  
 zamindar, ज़मीनदार *zamindār*, m.